



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# Galen On the natural faculties

Galen, Arthur John  
Brock

84

sb  
Sohle



**LELAND • STANFORD • JUNIOR • UNIVERSITY**





**THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY**

**EDITED BY**

**E. APPS, PH.D., LL.D. T. E. PAGE, LITT.D. W. H. D. ROUSE, LITT.D.**

**GALEN**

**ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES**



# G A L E N

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY  
ARTHUR JOHN BROCK, M.D.

EDINBURGH



LONDON : WILLIAM HEINEMANN  
NEW YORK : G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS  
MCMXVI

234498  
VAKARU CROONIAT&

## PREFACE

THE text used is (with a few unimportant modifications) that of Kühn (Vol. II), as edited by Georg Helmreich ; Teubner, Leipzig, 1893. The numbers of the pages of Kühn's edition are printed at the side of the Greek text, a parallel mark (||) in the line indicating the exact point of division between Kühn's pages.

Words in the English text which are enclosed in square brackets are supplementary or explanatory ; practically all explanations, however, are relegated to the footnotes or introduction. In the footnotes, also, attention is drawn to words which are of particular philological interest from the point of view of modern medicine.

I have made the translation directly from the Greek ; where passages of special difficulty occurred, I have been able to compare my own version with Linacre's Latin translation (1523) and the French rendering of Charles Daremberg (1854-56) ; in this respect I am also peculiarly fortunate in having had the help of Mr. A. W. Pickard Cambridge of Balliol College, Oxford, who most kindly went through the

## PREFACE

proofs and made many valuable suggestions from the point of view of exact scholarship.

My best thanks are due to the Editors for their courtesy and for the kindly interest they have taken in the work. I have also gratefully acknowledged the receipt of much assistance and encouragement from Sir William Osler, Regius Professor of Medicine at Oxford, and from Dr. J. D. Comrie, first lecturer on the History of Medicine at Edinburgh University. Professor D'Arcy W. Thompson of University College, Dundee, and Sir W. T. Thiselton-Dyer, late director of the Royal Botanic Gardens at Kew, have very kindly helped me to identify several animals and plants mentioned by Galen.

I cannot conclude without expressing a word of gratitude to my former biological teachers, Professors Patrick Geddes and J. Arthur Thomson. The experience reared on the foundation of their teaching has gone far to help me in interpreting the great medical biologist of Greece.

I should be glad to think that the present work might help, however little, to hasten the coming reunion between the "humanities" and modern biological science; their present separation I believe to be against the best interest of both.

A. J. B.

22ND STATIONARY HOSPITAL, ALDERSHOT.

*March, 1916.*

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	v
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	ix
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	xli
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS . . . . .	xlili
BOOK I . . . . .	1
BOOK II . . . . .	115
BOOK III . . . . .	221
INDEX AND GLOSSARY . . . . .	333



## INTRODUCTION

IF the work of Hippocrates be taken as representing the foundation upon which the edifice of historical Greek medicine was reared, then the work of Galen, who lived some six hundred years later, may be looked upon as the summit or apex of the same edifice.<sup>1</sup> Galen's merit is to have crystallised or brought to a focus all the best work of the Greek medical schools which had preceded his own time. It is essentially in the form of Galenism that Greek medicine was transmitted to after ages.

The ancient Greeks referred the origins of medicine to a god Asklepios (called in Latin Aesculapius), thereby testifying to their appreciation of the truly divine function of the healing art. The emblem of Aesculapius, familiar in medical symbolism at the present day, was a staff with a serpent coiled round it, the animal typifying wisdom in general, and more particularly the wisdom of the medicine-man, with his semi-miraculous powers over life and death.

*“Be ye therefore wise as serpents and harmless as doves.”*

## INTRODUCTION

The Ascle-  
piea or  
Health-  
temples.

The temples of Aesculapius were scattered over the ancient Hellenic world. To them the sick and ailing resorted in crowds. The treatment, which was in the hands of an hereditary priesthood, combined the best of the methods carried on at our present-day health-resorts, our hydropathics, sanatoriums, and nursing-homes. Fresh air, water-cures, massage, gymnastics, psychotherapy, and natural methods in general were chiefly relied on.

Hippocrates  
and the  
Unity of the  
Organism.

Hippocrates, the "Father of Medicine" (5th to 4th centuries, B.C.) was associated with the Asclepium of Cos, an island off the south-west coast of Asia Minor, near Rhodes. He apparently revitalized the work of the health-temples, which had before his time been showing a certain decline in vigour, coupled with a corresponding excessive tendency towards sophistry and priestcraft.

Celsus says : "*Hippocrates Cous primus quidem ex omnibus memoria dignis ab studio sapientiae disciplinam hanc separavit.*" He means that Hippocrates first gave the physician an independent standing, separating him from the cosmological speculator. Hippocrates confined the medical man to medicine. He did with medical thought what Socrates did with thought in general—he "brought it down from heaven to earth." His watchword was "Back to Nature!"

At the same time, while assigning the physician his post, Hippocrates would not let him regard that post as sacrosanct. He set his face against any

## INTRODUCTION

tendency to mystery-mongering, to exclusiveness, to sacerdotalism. He was, in fact, opposed to the spirit of trade-unionism in medicine. His concern was rather with the physician's duties than his "rights."

At the dawn of recorded medical history Hippocrates stands for the fundamental and primary importance of *seeing clearly*—that is of *clinical observation*. And what he observed was that the human organism, when exposed to certain abnormal conditions—certain stresses—tends to behave in a certain way: that in other words, each "disease" tends to run a certain definite course. To him a disease was essentially a process, one and indivisible, and thus his practical problem was essentially one of *prognosis*—"what will be the natural course of this disease, if left to itself?" Here he found himself to no small extent in opposition with the teaching of the neighbouring medical school of Cnidus, where a more static view-point laid special emphasis upon the minutiae of *diagnosis*.

Observation taught Hippocrates to place unbounded faith in the recuperative powers of the living organism—in what we sometimes call nowadays the *vis medicatrix Naturae*. His observation was that even with a very considerable "abnormality" of environmental stress the organism, in the large majority of cases, manages eventually by its own inherent powers to adjust itself to the new conditions. "Merely give Nature a chance," said the father of medicine in effect, "and most

## INTRODUCTION

diseases will cure themselves." And accordingly his treatment was mainly directed towards "giving Nature a chance."

His keen sense of the solidarity (or rather, of the constant interplay) between the organism and its environment (the "conditions" to which it is exposed) is instanced in his book, "Airs, Waters, and Places." As we recognise, in our popular everyday psychology, that "it takes two to make a quarrel," so Hippocrates recognised that in pathology, it takes two (organism and environment) to make a disease.

As an outstanding example of his power of clinical observation we may recall the *facies Hippocratica*, an accurate study of the countenance of a dying man.

His ideals for the profession are embodied in the "Hippocratic oath."

**Anatomy.** Impressed by this view of the organism as a unity, the Hippocratic school tended in some degree to overlook the importance of its constituent *parts*. The balance was re-adjusted later on by the labours of the anatomical school of Alexandria, which, under the aegis of the enlightened Ptolemies, arose in the 3rd century B.C. Two prominent exponents of anatomy belonging to this school were Herophilus and Erasistratus, the latter of whom we shall frequently meet with in the following pages (*v. p. 95 et seq.*).

## INTRODUCTION

After the death of the Master, the Hippocratic school tended, as so often happens with the best of cultural movements, to show signs itself of diminishing vitality: the letter began to obscure and hamper the spirit. The comparatively small element of theory which existed in the Hippocratic physiology was made the groundwork of a somewhat over-elaborated "system." Against this tendency on the part of the "Dogmatic" or "Rationalist" school there arose, also at Alexandria, the sect of the Empiricists. "It is not," they said, "the cause but the cure of diseases that concerns us; not how we digest, but what is digestible."

Horace said "*Graecia capta ferum victorem cepit.*" Political domination, the occupation of territory by armies, does not necessarily mean real conquest. Horace's statement applied to medicine as to other branches of culture.

The introducer of Greek medicine into Rome was Asclepiades (1st century B.C.). A man of forceful personality, and equipped with a fully developed philosophic system of health and disease which commended itself to the Roman *savants* of the day, he soon attained to the pinnacle of professional success in the Latin capital: he is indeed to all time the type of the fashionable (and somewhat "faddy") West-end physician. His system was a purely mechanistic one, being based upon

## INTRODUCTION

the atomic doctrine of Leucippus and Democritus, which had been completed by Epicurus and recently introduced to the Roman public in Lucretius's great poem "*De Rerum Natura.*" The disbelief of Asclepiades in the self-maintaining powers of the living organism are exposed and refuted at considerable length by Galen in the volume before us.

The  
Methodists.

Out of the teaching of Asclepiades that physiological processes depend upon the particular way in which the ultimate indivisible molecules come together (*ἐν τῇ ποιά συνόδῳ τῶν πρώτων ἐκείνων συμάτων τῶν ἀπαθῶν*) there was developed by his pupil, Themison of Laodicea, a system of medicine characterised by the most engaging simplicity both of diagnosis and treatment. This so-called "Methodic" system was intended to strike a balance between the excessive leaning to apriorism shown by the Rationalist (Hippocratic) school and the opposite tendency of the Empiricists. "A pathological theory we must have," said the Methodists in effect, "but let it be simple." They held that the molecular groups constituting the tissues were traversed by minute channels (*πόροι*, "pores"); all diseases belonged to one or other of two classes; if the channels were constricted the disease was one of *stasis* (*στέγνωσις*), and if they were dilated the disease was one of *flux* (*ῥύσις*). Flux and stasis were indicated respectively by increase and diminution of the natural secretions;

## INTRODUCTION

treatment was of opposites by opposites—of stasis by methods causing dilatation of the channels, and conversely.

Wild as it may seem, this pathological theory of the Methodists contained an element of truth; in various guises it has cropped up once and again at different epochs of medical history; even to-day there are pathologists who tend to describe certain classes of disease in terms of vaso-constriction and vaso-dilatation. The vice of the Methodist teaching was that it looked on a disease too much as something fixed and finite, an independent *entity*, to be considered entirely apart from its particular setting. The Methodists illustrate for us the tyranny of *names*. In its defects as in its virtues this school has analogues at the present day; we are all acquainted with the medical man to whom a name (such, let us say, as "tuberculosis," "gout," or "intestinal auto-intoxication") stands for an entity, one and indivisible, to be treated by a definite and unvarying formula.

To such an individual the old German saying "*Jedermann hat am Ende ein Bischen Tuberkulose*" is simply—incomprehensible.

\* \* \* \* \*

All the medical schools which I have mentioned Galen. were still holding their ground in the 2nd century A.D., with more or less popular acceptance, when the great Galen made his entry into the world of Graeco-Roman medicine.

## INTRODUCTION

His Nature  
and  
Nurture.

Claudius Galenus was born at Pergamos in Asia Minor in the year 131 A.D. His father was one Nicon, a well-to-do architect of that city. "I had the great good fortune," says Galen,<sup>1</sup> "to have as a father a highly amiable, just, good, and benevolent man. My mother, on the other hand, possessed a very bad temper; she used sometimes to bite her serving-maids, and she was perpetually shouting at my father and quarrelling with him—worse than Xanthippe with Socrates. When, therefore, I compared the excellence of my father's disposition with the disgraceful passions of my mother, I resolved to embrace and love the former qualities, and to avoid and hate the latter."

Nicon called his son Γαληνός, which means *quiet*, *peaceable*, and although the physician eventually turned out to be a man of elevated character, it is possible that his somewhat excessive leaning towards controversy (exemplified in the following pages) may have resulted from the fact that he was never quite able to throw off the worst side of the maternal inheritance.

His father, a man well schooled in mathematics and philosophy, saw to it that his son should not lack a liberal education. Pergamos itself was an ancient centre of civilisation, containing, among other culture-institutions, a library only second in importance to that of Alexandria itself; it also contained an Asclepieum.

<sup>1</sup> *On the Affections of the Mind*, p. 41 (Kühn's ed.).  
xvi

## INTRODUCTION

Galen's training was essentially eclectic: he studied all the chief philosophical systems of the time—Platonic, Aristotelian, Stoic, and Epicurean—and then, at the age of seventeen, entered on a course of medical studies; these he pursued under the best teachers at his own city, and afterwards, during a period of *Wanderjahre*, at Smyrna, Alexandria, and other leading medical centres.

Returning to Pergamos, he received his first professional appointment—that of surgeon to the gladiators. After four years here he was drawn by ambition to Rome, being at that time about thirty-one years of age. At Rome the young Pergamene attained a brilliant reputation both as a practitioner and as a public demonstrator of anatomy; among his patients he finally numbered even the Emperor Marcus Aurelius himself.

Medical practice in Rome at this time was at a low ebb, and Galen took no pains to conceal his contempt for the ignorance, charlatanism, and venality of his fellow-practitioners. Eventually, in spite of his social popularity, he raised up such odium against himself in medical circles, that he was forced to flee the city. This he did hurriedly and secretly in the year 168 A.D., when thirty-six years of age. He betook himself to his old home at Pergamos, where he settled down once more to a literary life.

His respite was short, however, for within a year he was summoned back to Italy by imperial mandate. Marcus Aurelius was about to undertake an

## INTRODUCTION

expedition against the Germans, who at that time were threatening the northern frontiers of the Empire, and he was anxious that his consulting physician should accompany him to the front. "Patriotism" in this sense, however, seems to have had no charms for the Pergamene, and he pleaded vigorously to be excused. Eventually, the Emperor gave him permission to remain at home, entrusting to his care the young prince Commodus.

Thereafter we know little of Galen's history, beyond the fact that he now entered upon a period of great literary activity. Probably he died about the end of the century.

Subsequent  
History of  
Galen's  
Works.

Galen wrote extensively, not only on anatomy, physiology, and medicine in general, but also on logic; his logical proclivities, as will be shown later, are well exemplified in his medical writings. A considerable number of undoubtedly genuine works of his have come down to us. The full importance of his contributions to medicine does not appear to have been recognized till some time after his death, but eventually, as already pointed out, the terms Galenism and Greek medicine became practically synonymous.

A few words may be devoted to the subsequent history of his writings.

Byzantine  
Medicine.

During and after the final break-up of the Roman Empire came times of confusion and of social re-

## INTRODUCTION

construction, which left little opportunity for scientific thought and research. The Byzantine Empire, from the 4th century onwards, was the scene of much internal turmoil, in which the militant activities of the now State-established Christian church played a not inconsiderable part. The Byzantine medical scholars were at best compilers, and a typical compiler was Oribasius, body-physician to the Emperor Julian (4th century, A.D.); his excellent *Synopsis* was written in order to make the huge mass of the Galenic writings available for the ordinary practitioner.

Greek medicine spread, with general Greek culture, throughout Syria, and from thence was carried by the Nestorians, a persecuted heretical sect, into Persia; here it became implanted, and hence eventually spread to the Mohammedan world. Several of the Prophet's successors (such as the Caliphs Harun-al-Rashid and Abdul-Rahman III) were great patrons of Greek learning, and especially of medicine. The Arabian scholars imbibed Aristotle and Galen with avidity. A partial assimilation, however, was the farthest stage to which they could attain; with the exception of pharmacology, the Arabians made practically no independent additions to medicine. They were essentially systematizers and commentators. "*Averrois che il gran comento feo*"<sup>1</sup>

Arabian  
Medicine.

<sup>1</sup> "Averrhoës who made the great Commentary" (Dante). It was Averrhoës (Ebn Roshd) who, in the 12th century, introduced Aristotle to the Mohammedan world, and the "Commentary" referred to was on Aristotle.

## INTRODUCTION

may stand as the type *par excellence* of the Moslem sage.

Avicenna (Ebn Sina), (10th to 11th century) is the foremost name in Arabian medicine : his "Book of the Canon in Medicine," when translated into Latin, even overshadowed the authority of Galen himself for some four centuries. Of this work the medical historian Max Neuburger says : "Avicenna, according to his lights, imparted to contemporary medical science the appearance of almost mathematical accuracy, whilst the art of therapeutics, although empiricism did not wholly lack recognition, was deduced as a logical sequence from theoretical (Galenic and Aristotelian) premises."

Introduction  
of  
Arabian  
Medicine  
to the West.  
Arabo-  
Scholastic  
Period.

Having arrived at such a condition in the hands of the Mohammedans, Galenism was now destined to pass once more to the West. From the 11th century onwards Latin translations of this "Arabian" Medicine (being Greek medicine in oriental trappings) began to make their way into Europe ; here they helped to undermine the authority of the one medical school of native growth which the West produced during the Middle Ages—namely the School of Salerno.

Blending with the Scholastic philosophy at the universities of Naples and Montpellier, the teachings of Aristotle and Galen now assumed a position of supreme authority : from their word, in matters

## INTRODUCTION

scientific and medical, there was no appeal. In reference to this period the Pergamene was referred to in later times as the "Medical Pope of the Middle Ages."

It was of course the logical side of Galenism which chiefly commended it to the mediaeval Schoolmen, as to the essentially speculative Moslems.

The year 1453, when Constantinople fell into the hands of the Turks, is often taken as marking the commencement of the Renascence. Among the many factors which tended to stimulate and awaken men's minds during these spacious times was the re-discovery of the Greek classics, which were brought to Europe by, among others, the scholars who fled from Byzantium. The Arabo-Scholastic versions of Aristotle and Galen were now confronted by their Greek originals. A passion for Greek learning was aroused. The freshness and truth of these old writings helped to awaken men to a renewed sense of their own dignity and worth, and to brace them in their own struggle for self-expression.

Prominent in this "Humanist" movement was the English physician, Thomas Linacre (c. 1460-1524) who, having gained in Italy an extraordinary zeal for the New Learning, devoted the rest of his life, after returning to England, to the promotion of the *litterae humaniores*, and especially to making Galen accessible to readers of Latin. Thus the "*De Naturalibus Facultatibus*" appeared in London in

## INTRODUCTION

1523, and was preceded and followed by several other translations, all marked by minute accuracy and elegant Latinity.

Two new parties now arose in the medical world—the so-called “Greeks” and the more conservative “Arabists.”

**Paracelsus.** But the swing of the pendulum did not cease with the creation of the liberal “Greek” party; the dazzling vision of freedom was to drive some to a yet more anarchical position. Paracelsus, who flourished in the first half of the 16th century, may be taken as typifying this extremist tendency. His one cry was, “Let us away with all authority whatsoever, and get back to Nature!” At his first lecture as professor at the medical school of Basle he symbolically burned the works of Galen and of his chief Arabian exponent, Avicenna.

**The Renascence Anatomists.** But the final collapse of authority in medicine could not be brought about by mere negativism. It was the constructive work of the Renascence anatomists, particularly those of the Italian school, which finally brought Galenism to the ground.

Vesalius (1514-64), the modern “Father of Anatomy,” for dissecting human bodies, was fiercely assailed by the hosts of orthodoxy, including that stout Galenist, his old teacher Jacques Dubois (Jacobus Sylvius). Vesalius held on his way, however, proving, *inter alia*, that Galen had been wrong

## INTRODUCTION

in saying that the interventricular septum of the heart was permeable (*cf.* present volume, p. 321).

Michael Servetus (1509-53) suggested that the blood, in order to get from the right to the left side of the heart, might have to pass through the lungs. For his heterodox opinions he was burned at the stake.

Another 16th-century anatomist, Andrea Cesalpino, is considered by the Italians to have been a discoverer of the circulation of the blood before Harvey; he certainly had a more or less clear idea of the circulation, but, as in the case of the "organic evolutionists before Darwin," he failed to prove his point by conclusive demonstration.

William Harvey, the great Englishman who founded modern experimental physiology and was the first to establish not only the fact of the circulation but also the physical laws governing it, is commonly reckoned the Father of Modern Medicine. He owed his interest in the movements of the blood to Fabricio of Acquapendente, his tutor at Padua, who drew his attention to the valves in the veins, thus suggesting the idea of a circular as opposed to a to-and-fro motion. Harvey's great generalisation, based upon a long series of experiments *in vivo*, was considered to have given the *coup de grâce* to the Galenic physiology, and hence threw temporary discredit upon the whole system of medicine associated therewith.

Modern medicine, based upon a painstaking

## INTRODUCTION

research into the details of physiological function, had begun.

Back to Galen !

While we cannot sufficiently commend the results of the long modern period of research-work to which the labours of the Renaissance anatomists from Vesalius to Harvey form a fitting prelude, we yet by no means allow that Galen's general medical outlook was so entirely invalidated as many imagine by the conclusive demonstration of his anatomical errors. It is time for us now to turn to Galen again after three hundred years of virtual neglect : it may be that he will help us to see something fundamentally important for medical practice which is beyond the power even of our microscopes and X-rays to reveal. While the value of his work undoubtedly lies mainly in its enabling us to envisage one of the greatest of the early steps attained by man in medical knowledge, it also has a very definite intrinsic value of its own.

Galen's  
Debt to his  
Precursors.

No attempt can be made here to determine how much of Galen's work is, in the true sense of the word, original, and how much is drawn from the labours of his predecessors. In any case, there is no doubt that he was much more than a mere compiler and systematizer of other men's work : he was great enough to be able not merely to collect, to digest, and to assimilate all the best of the work done before his time, but, adding to this the outcome of his own observations, experiments, and reflections, to present

## INTRODUCTION

the whole in an articulated “system” showing that perfect balance of parts which is the essential criterion of a work of art. Constantly, however, in his writings we shall come across traces of the influence of, among others, Plato, Aristotle, and writers of the Stoic school.

Although Galen is an eclectic in the best sense of the term, there is one name to which he pays a very special tribute—that of his illustrious forerunner Hippocrates. Him on quite a number of occasions he actually calls “divine” (*cf.* p. 293).

“Hippocrates,” he says, “was the first known to us of all who have been both physicians and philosophers, in that *he was the first to recognise what nature does.*” Here is struck the keynote of the teaching of both Hippocrates and Galen; this is shown in the volume before us, which deals with “the natural faculties”—that is with the faculties of this same “Nature” or vital principle referred to in the quotation.

If Galen be looked on as a crystallisation of Greek medicine, then this book may be looked on as a <sup>“The Natural Faculties.”</sup> crystallisation of Galen. Within its comparatively short compass we meet with instances illustrating perhaps most of the sides of this many-sided writer. The “Natural Faculties” therefore forms an excellent prelude to the study of his larger and more specialised works.

## INTRODUCTION

Galen's  
"Physiology."

What, now, is this "Nature" or biological principle upon which Galen, like Hippocrates, bases the whole of his medical teaching, and which, we may add, is constantly overlooked—if indeed ever properly apprehended—by many physiologists of the present day? By using this term Galen meant simply that, when we deal with a living thing, we are dealing primarily with a unity, which, *quā* living, is not further divisible; all its parts can only be understood and dealt with as being *in relation to* this principle of unity. Galen was thus led to criticise with considerable severity many of the medical and surgical specialists of his time, who acted on the assumption (implicit if not explicit) that the whole was merely the sum of its parts, and that if, in an ailing organism, these parts were treated each in and for itself, the health of the whole organism could in this way be eventually restored.

Galen expressed this idea of the unity of the organism by saying that it was governed by a *Physis* or Nature (*ἡ φύσις ἡπερ διοικεῖ τὸ ζῷον*), with whose "faculties" or powers it was the province of *φυσιολογία* (physi-ology, Nature-lore) to deal. It was because Hippocrates had a clear sense of this principle that Galen called him master. "Greatest," say the Moslems, "is Allah, and Mohammed is his prophet." "Greatest," said Galen, "is the Physis, and Hippocrates is its prophet." Never did Mohammed more zealously maintain the unity of the Godhead than Hippocrates and Galen the unity of the organism.

## INTRODUCTION

But we shall not have read far before we discover Galen's *Physics*. that the term *Physiology*, as used by Galen, stands not merely for what we understand by it nowadays, but also for a large part of *Physics* as well. This is one of the chief sources of confusion in his writings. Having grasped, for example, the uniqueness of the process of *specific selection* ( $\delta\lambdaκη\tauο\bar{u}\;o\bar{i}κeio\bar{v}$ ), by which the tissues nourish themselves, he proceeds to apply this principle in explanation of entirely different classes of phenomena ; thus he mixes it up with the physical phenomenon of the attraction of the lodestone for iron, of dry grain for moisture, etc. It is noteworthy, however, in these latter instances, that he does not venture to follow out his comparison to its logical conclusion ; he certainly stops short of hinting that the lodestone (like a living organ or tissue) *assimilates* the metal which it has attracted !

Setting aside, however, these occasional half-hearted attempts to apply his principle of a  $\phi\bar{u}\sigma\bar{v}$  in regions where it has no natural standing, we shall find that in the field of biology Galen moves with an assurance bred of first-hand experience.

Against his attempt to "biologize" physics may be set the converse attempt of the mechanical <sup>The Mechanical Physicists.</sup> Atomist school. Thus in Asclepiades he found a doughty defender of the view that physiology was "merely" physics. Galen's ire being roused, he is not content with driving the enemy out of the biological camp, but must needs attempt also to

## INTRODUCTION

dislodge him from that of physics, in which he has every right to be.

The  
Anatomists.

In defence of the universal validity of his principle, Galen also tends to excessive disparagement of morphological factors ; witness his objection to the view of the anatomist Erasistratus that the calibre of vessels played a part in determining the secretion of fluids (p. 123), that digestion was caused by the mechanical action of the stomach walls (p. 243), and dropsy by induration of the liver (p. 171).

Character-  
istics of the  
Living  
Organism.

While combating the atomic explanation of physical processes, Galen of course realised that there were many of these which could only be explained according to what we should now call "mechanical laws." For example, non-living things could be subjected to *φορά* (passive motion), they answered to the laws of gravity (*ταῦς τῶν οὐλῶν οἰλακιζόμενα ροπαῖς*, p. 126). Furthermore, Galen did not fail to see that living things also were not entirely exempted from the operation of these laws ; they too may be at least partly subject to gravity (*loc. cit.*) ; a hollow organ exerts, by virtue of its cavity, an attraction similar to that of dilating bellows, as well as, by virtue of the living tissue of its walls, a specifically "vital" or selective kind of attraction (p. 325).

As a type of characteristically vital action we may take *nutrition*, in which occurs a phenomenon

## INTRODUCTION

which Galen calls *active motion* (*δραστικὴ κίνησις*) or, more technically, *alteration* (*ἀλλοίωσις*). This active type of motion cannot be adequately stated in terms of the passive movements (groupings and re-groupings) of its constituent parts according to certain empirical "laws." Alteration involves *self-movement*, a self-determination of the organism or organic part. Galen does not attempt to explain this fundamental characteristic of *alteration* any further; he contents himself with referring his opponents to Aristotle's work on the "Complete Alteration of Substance" (p. 9).

The most important characteristic of the *Physis* or Nature is its *τέχνη*—its artistic creativeness. In other words, the living organism is a creative artist. This feature may be observed typically in its primary functions of *growth* and *nutrition*; these are dependent on the characteristic *faculties* or powers, by virtue of which each part draws to itself what is proper or appropriate to it (*τὸ οἰκεῖον*) and rejects what is foreign (*τὸ ἀλλότριον*), thereafter appropriating or assimilating the attracted material; this assimilation is an example of the *alteration* (or qualitative change) already alluded to; thus the food eaten is "altered" into the various tissues of the body, each of these having been provided by "Nature" with its own specific faculties of attraction and repulsion.

Any of the operations of the living part may be looked on in three ways, either (a) as a *δύναμις*, The Three Categories.

## INTRODUCTION

faculty, potentiality ; (b) as an *ἐνέργεια*, which is this *δύναμις* in operation ; or (c) as an *ἔργον*, the product or effect of the *ἐνέργεια*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> What appear to me to be certain resemblances between the Galenical and the modern vitalistic views of Henri Bergson may perhaps be alluded to here. Galen's vital principle, *ἡ τεχνικὴ φύσις* ("creative growth"), presents analogies with *l'Evolution créatrice*: both manifest their activity in producing qualitative change (*ἀλλοίωσις, changement*) : in both, the creative change cannot be analysed into a series of static states, but is one and continuous. In Galen, however, it comes to an end with the *development of the individual*, whereas in Bergson it continues indefinitely as the *evolution of life*. The three aspects of organic life may be tabulated thus :—

<i>δύναμις</i>	<i>ἐνέργεια</i>	<i>ἔργον</i>
Work to be done. Future aspect.	Work being done. Present aspect. Function. The <i>élan vital</i> .	Work done, finished. Past aspect. Structure. A "thing."
Bergson's "teleological" aspect.	A changing which cannot be under- stood as a sum of static parts ; a constant be- coming, never stopping — at least till the <i>ἔρ-</i> <i>γον</i> is reached.	Bergson's "philosophical" aspect.
		Bergson's "out- look of physical science."

Galen recognized "creativity" (*τέχνη*) in the *development* of the individual and its parts (ontogeny) and in the maintenance of these, but he failed to appreciate the creative *evolution* of species (phylogeny), which is, of course, part of the same process. To the teleologist the possibilities (*δυνάμεις*) of the Physis are limited, to Bergson they are un-

## INTRODUCTION

Like his master Hippocrates, Galen attached fundamental importance to clinical observation—to the evidence of the senses as the indispensable groundwork of all medical knowledge. He had also, however, a forte for rapid generalisation from observations, and his logical proclivities disposed him

limited. Galen and Bergson agree in attaching most practical importance to the middle category—that of Function.

While it must be conceded that Galen, following Aristotle, had never seriously questioned the fixity of species, the following quotation from his work *On Habits* (chap. ii.) will show that he must have at least had occasional glimmerings of our modern point of view on the matter. Referring to assimilation, he says: "Just as everything we eat or drink becomes altered in quality, so of course also does the altering factor itself become altered. . . . A clear proof of the assimilation of things which are being nourished to that which is nourishing them is the change which occurs in plants and seeds; this often goes so far that what is highly noxious in one soil becomes, when transplanted into another soil, not merely harmless, but actually useful. This has been largely put to the test by those who compose memoirs on farming and on plants, as also by zoological authors who have written on the changes which occur according to the countries in which animals live. Since, therefore, not only is the nourishment altered by the creature nourished, but the latter itself also undergoes some slight alteration, *this slight alteration must necessarily become considerable in the course of time*, and thus properties resulting from prolonged habit must come to be on a par with natural properties."

Galen fails to see the possibility that the "natural" properties themselves originated in this way, as activities which gradually became habitual—that is to say, that the effects of nurture may become a "second nature," and so eventually *nature* itself.

The whole passage, however, may be commended to modern biologists—particularly, might one say, to those bacteriologists who have not yet realised how extraordinarily relative is the term "specificity" when applied to the subject-matter of their science.

## INTRODUCTION

particularly to deductive reasoning. Examples of an almost Euclidean method of argument may be found in the *Natural Faculties* (e.g. Book III. chap. i.). While this method undoubtedly gave him much help in his search for truth, it also not unfrequently led him astray. This is evidenced by his attempt, already noted, to apply the biological principle of the φύσις in physics. Characteristic examples of attempts to force facts to fit premises will be found in Book II. chap. ix., where our author demonstrates that yellow bile is "virtually" dry, and also, by a process of exclusion, assigns to the spleen the function of clearing away black bile. Strangest of all is his attempt to prove that the same principle of specific attraction by which the ultimate tissues nourish themselves (and the lodestone attracts iron!) accounts for the reception of food into the stomach, of urine into the kidneys, of bile into the gall-bladder, and of semen into the uterus.

These instances are given, however, without prejudice to the system of generalisation and deduction which, in Galen's hands, often proved exceedingly fruitful. He is said to have tried "to unite professional and scientific medicine with a philosophic link." He objected, however, to such extreme attempts at simplification of medical science as that of the Methodists, to whom diseases were isolated entities, without any relationships in time or space (*v. p. xv. supra*).

He based much of his pathological reasoning upon

## INTRODUCTION

the “humoral theory” of Hippocrates, according to which certain diseases were caused by one or more of the four humours (blood, phlegm, black and yellow bile) being in excess—that is, by various *dyscrasiae*. Our modern conception of “hormone” action shows certain resemblances with this theory.

Besides observation and reasoning, Galen took his stand on *experiment*; he was one of the first of experimental physiologists, as is illustrated in the present book by his researches into the function of the kidneys (p. 59 *et seq.*). He also conducted a long series of experiments into the physiology of the spinal cord, to determine what parts controlled movement and what sensibility.

As a practitioner he modelled his work largely on the broad and simple lines laid down by Hippocrates. He had also at his disposal all the acquisitions of biological science dating from the time of Aristotle five hundred years earlier, and reinforced by the discoveries in anatomy made by the Alexandrian school. To these he added a large series of researches of his own.

Galen never confined himself to what one might call the academic or strictly orthodox sources of information; he roamed the world over for answers to his queries. For example, we find him on his journeys between Pergamos and Rome twice visiting the island of Lemnos in order to procure some of the *terra sigillata*, a kind of earth which had a reputation for healing the bites of serpents and

xxxiii

GALEN

c

## INTRODUCTION

other wounds. At other times he visited the copper-mines of Cyprus in search for copper, and Palestine for the resin called Balm of Gilead.

By inclination and training Galen was the reverse of a "party-man." In the *Natural Faculties* (p. 55) he speaks of the bane of sectarian partizanship, "harder to heal than any itch." He pours scorn upon the ignorant "Erasistrateans" and "Asclepiadeans," who attempted to hide their own incompetence under the shield of some great man's name (*cf.* p. 141).

Of the two chief objects of his censure in the *Natural Faculties*, Galen deals perhaps less rigorously with Erasistratus than with Asclepiades. Erasistratus did at least recognize the existence of a vital principle in the organism, albeit, with his eye on the structures which the scalpel displayed he tended frequently to forget it. The researches of the anatomical school of Alexandria had been naturally of the greatest service to surgery, but in medicine they sometimes had a tendency to check progress by diverting attention from the whole to the part.

The  
Pneuma  
or Spirit.

Another novel conception frequently occurring in Galen's writings is that of the *Pneuma* (*i.e.* the breath, *spiritus*). This word is used in two senses, as meaning (1) the inspired air, which was drawn into the left side of the heart and thence carried all over the body by the arteries; this has not a few analogies with oxygen, particularly as its action in the tissues

## INTRODUCTION

is attended with the appearance of the so-called “innate heat.” (2) A vital principle, conceived as being made up of matter in the most subtle imaginable state (*i.e.* air). This vital principle became resolved into three kinds: (*a*) *πνεῦμα φυσικόν* or *spiritus naturalis*, carried by the veins, and presiding over the subconscious vegetative life; this “natural spirit” is therefore practically equivalent to the *φύσις* or “nature” itself. (*b*) The *πνεῦμα ζωτικόν* or *spiritus vitalis*; here particularly is a source of error, since the air already alluded to as being carried by the arteries tends to be confused with this principle of “individuality” or relative autonomy in the circulatory (including, perhaps, the vasomotor) system. (*c*) The *πνεῦμα ψυχικόν* or *spiritus animalis* (*anima* = *ψυχή*), carried by longitudinal canals in the nerves; this corresponds to the *ψυχή*.

This view of a “vital principle” as necessarily consisting of matter in a finely divided, fluid, or “etheric” state is not unknown even in our day. Belief in the fundamental importance of the Pneuma formed the basis of the teaching of another vitalist school in ancient Greece, that of the Pneumatists.

It is unnecessary to detail here the various ways in which Galen's physiological views differ from those of the Moderns, as most of these are noticed in footnotes to the text of the present translation. His ignorance of the circulation of the blood does not lessen the force of his general physiological conclu-

Galen and  
the Circula-  
tion of the  
Blood.

## INTRODUCTION

sions to the extent that might be anticipated. In his opinion, the great bulk of the blood travelled with a to-and-fro motion in the veins, while a little of it, mixed with inspired air, moved in the same way along the arteries ; whereas we now know that all the blood goes outward by the arteries and returns by the veins ; in either case blood is carried to the tissues by blood-vessels, and Galen's ideas of tissue-nutrition were wonderfully sound. The ingenious method by which (in ignorance of the pulmonary circulation) he makes blood pass from the right to the left ventricle, may be read in the present work (p. 321). As will be seen, he was conversant with the "anastomoses" between the ultimate branches of arteries and veins, although he imagined that they were not used under "normal" conditions.

Galen's  
Character.

Galen was not only a man of great intellectual gifts, but one also of strong moral fibre. In his short treatise "That the best Physician is also a Philosopher" he outlines his professional ideals. It is necessary for the efficient healer to be versed in the three branches of "philosophy," viz.: (a) *logic*, the science of how to think ; (b) *physics*, the science of what is—*i.e.* of "Nature" in the widest sense ; (c) *ethics*, the science of what to do. The amount of toil which he who wishes to be a physician must undergo—firstly, in mastering the work of his predecessors and afterwards in studying disease at first hand—makes it absolutely necessary that he should

## INTRODUCTION

possess perfect self-control, that he should scorn money and the weak pleasures of the senses, and should live laborious days.

Readers of the following pages will notice that Galen uses what we should call distinctly immoderate language towards those who ventured to differ from the views of his master Hippocrates (which were also his own). The employment of such language was one of the few weaknesses of his age which he did not transcend. Possibly also his mother's choleric temper may have predisposed him to it.

The fact, too, that his vivisection experiments (*e.g.* pp. 59, 273) were carried out apparently without any kind of anaesthetisation being even thought of is abhorrent to the feelings of to-day, but must be excused also on the ground that callousness towards animals was then customary, men having probably never thought much about the subject.

Galen is a master of language, using a highly polished variety of Attic prose with a precision which can be only very imperfectly reproduced in another tongue. Every word he uses has an exact and definite meaning attached to it. Translation is particularly difficult when a word stands for a physiological conception which is not now held; instances are the words *anadosis*, *prosthesis*, and *prosphysis*, indicating certain steps in the process by which nutriment is conveyed from the alimentary canal to the tissues.

Galen's  
Greek Style.

## INTRODUCTION

Readers will be surprised to find how many words are used by Galen which they would have thought had been expressly coined to fit modern conceptions ; thus our author employs not merely such terms as *physiology*, *phthisis*, *atrophy*, *anastomosis*, but also *haematopoietic*, *anaesthesia*, and even *aseptic* ! It is only fair, however, to remark that these terms, particularly the last, were not used by Galen in quite their modern significance.

**Summary.** To resume, then : What contribution can Galen bring to the art of healing at the present day ? It was not, surely, for nothing that the great Pergamene gave laws to the medical world for over a thousand years !

Let us draw attention once more to :

(1) The high ideal which he set before the profession.

(2) His insistence on immediate contact with nature as the primary condition for arriving at an understanding of disease ; on the need for due consideration of previous authorities ; on the need also for reflection—for employment of the mind's eye (*ἡ λογικὴ θεωρία*) as an aid to the physical eye.

(3) His essentially broad outlook, which often helped him in the comprehension of a phenomenon through his knowledge of an analogous phenomenon in another field of nature.

## INTRODUCTION

(4) His keen appreciation of the unity of the organism, and of the inter-dependence of its parts ; his realisation that the vital phenomena (physiological and pathological) in a living organism can only be understood when considered in relation to the *environment* of that organism or part. This is the foundation for the war that Galen waged *à outrance* on the Methodists, to whom diseases were things without relation to anything. This dispute is, unfortunately, not touched upon in the present volume. What Galen combated was the tendency, familiar enough in our own day, to reduce medicine to the science of finding a label for each patient, and then treating not the patient, but the label. (This tendency, we may remark in parenthesis, is one which is obviously well suited for the *standardising* purposes of a State medical service, and is therefore one which all who have the weal of the profession at heart must most jealously watch in the difficult days that lie ahead.)

(5) His realisation of the inappropriateness and inadequacy of physical formulae in explaining physiological activities. Galen's disputes with Asclepiades over *τὰ πρῶτα ἐκεῖνα σώματα τὰ ἀπάθη*, over the *ἀναρμα στοιχεῖα καὶ ληρώδεις ὅγκοι*, is but another aspect of his quarrel with the Methodists regarding their pathological "units," whose primary characteristic was just this same *ἀπάθεια* (impassiveness to environment, "unimpressionability"). We have of course

## INTRODUCTION

our Physiatric or Iatromechanical school at the present day, to whom such processes as absorption from the alimentary canal, the respiratory interchange of gases, and the action of the renal epithelium are susceptible of a purely physical explanation.<sup>1</sup>

(6) His quarrel with the Anatomists, which was in essence the same as that with the Atomists, and which arose from his clear realisation that that primary and indispensable desideratum, a view of the whole, could never be obtained by a mere summation of partial views; hence, also, his sense of the dangers which would beset the medical art if it were allowed to fall into the hands of a mere crowd of competing specialists without any organising head to guide them.

<sup>1</sup> In terms of filtration, diffusion, and osmosis.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### CODICES

Bibliothèque Nationale. Paris. No. 2267.  
Library of St. Mark. Venice. No. 275.

### TRANSLATIONS

Arabic translations by Honain in the Escurial Library, and in the Library at Leyden. Hebrew translation in the Library at Bonn. Latin translations in the Library of Gonville and Caius College (MSS.), No. 947; also by Linacre in editions published, London, 1523; Paris, 1528; Leyden, 1540, 1548, and 1550; also by C. G. Kühn, Leipzig, 1821.

### COMMENTARIES AND APPRECIATIONS

Nic. de Anglia in Bib. Nat. Paris (MSS.), No. 7015; J. Rochon, *ibidem*, No. 7025; J. Segarra, 1528; J. Sylvius, 1550, 1560; L. Joubert, 1599; M. Sebitz, 1644, 1645; J. B. Pacuvius, 1554; J. C. G. Ackermann, 1821, in the introduction to Kühn's translation, p. lxxx; Ilberg in articles on "Die Schriftstellerei des Klaudios Galenos," in *Rhein. Mus.*, Nos. 44, 47, 51, and 52 (years 1889, 1892, 1896 and 1897); I. von Mueller in *Quæstiones Criticae de Galeni libris*, Erlangen, 1871; Steinschneider in Virchow's *Archiv*, No. cxxiv. for 1891; Wenrich in *De auctorum graecorum versionibus et commentariis syriacis, arabicis, armiacis, persisque*, Leipzig, 1842.



# SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

## BOOK I

### CHAPTER I

Distinction between the effects of (a) the organism's *psyche* or soul (b) its *physis* or nature. The author proposes to confine himself to a consideration of the latter—the vegetative—aspect of life.

### CHAPTER II

Definition of terms. Different kinds of *motion*. *Alteration* or qualitative change. Refutation of the Sophists' objection that such change is only apparent, not real. The four fundamental qualities of Hippocrates (later Aristotle). Distinction between *faculty*, *activity* (function), and *effect* (work or product).

### CHAPTER III

It is by virtue of the *four qualities* that each part functions. Some authorities subordinate the dry and the moist principles to the hot and the cold. Aristotle inconsistent here.

### CHAPTER IV

We must suppose that there are *faculties* corresponding in number to the visible *effects* (or products) with which we are familiar.

### CHAPTER V

Genesis, growth, and nutrition. Genesis (embryogeny) subdivided into histogenesis and organogenesis. Growth is a tridimensional expansion of the solid parts formed during genesis. Nutrition.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER VI

The process of genesis (embryogeny) from insemination onwards. Each of the simple, elementary, homogeneous parts (tissues) is produced by a special blend of the four primary alternative faculties (such secondary alternative faculties being *ostopoietic*, *neuropoietic*, etc.). A special function and use also corresponds to each of these special tissues. The bringing of these tissues together into organs and the disposal of these organs is performed by another faculty called *diaplastic*, *moulding*, or *formative*.

### CHAPTER VII

We now pass from genesis to growth. Growth essentially a post-natal process; it involves two factors, expansion and nutrition, explained by analogy of a familiar child's game.

### CHAPTER VIII

Nutrition.

### CHAPTER IX

These three primary faculties (genesis, growth, nutrition) have various others subservient to them.

### CHAPTER X

Nutrition not a simple process. (1) Need of subsidiary organs for the various stages of alteration, e.g., of bread into blood, of that into bone, etc. (2) Need also of organs for excreting the non-utilizable portions of the food, e.g., much vegetable matter is superfluous. (3) Need of organs of a third kind, for distributing the pabulum through the body.

### CHAPTER XI

Nutrition analysed into the stages of application (*prosthesis*), adhesion (*prosphyisis*), and assimilation. The stages illustrated by certain pathological conditions. Different shades of meaning of the term *nutriment*.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER XII

The two chief medico-philosophical schools—Atomist and Vitalist. Hippocrates an adherent of the latter school—his doctrine of an original principle or “nature” in every living thing (doctrine of the unity of the organism).

### CHAPTER XIII

Failure of Asclepiades to understand the functions of kidneys and ureters. His hypothesis of vaporization of imbibed fluids is here refuted. A demonstration of urinary secretion in the living animal; the forethought and artistic skill of Nature vindicated. Refutation also of Asclepiades's disbelief in the special selective action of purgative drugs.

### CHAPTER XIV

While Asclepiades denies *in toto* the obvious fact of specific attraction, Epicurus grants the fact, although his attempt to explain it by the atomic hypothesis breaks down. Refutation of the Epicurean theory of magnetic attraction. Instances of specific attraction of thorns and animal poisons by medicaments, of moisture by corn, etc.

### CHAPTER XV

It now being granted that the urine is secreted by the kidneys, the *rationale* of this secretion is enquired into. The kidneys are not mechanical filters, but are by virtue of their *nature* possessed of a specific faculty of attraction.

### CHAPTER XVI

Erasistratus, again, by his favourite principle of *horror vacui* could never explain the secretion of urine by the kidneys. While, however, he acknowledged that the kidneys do secrete urine, he makes no attempt to explain this; he ignores, but does not attempt to refute, the Hippocratic doctrine of specific attraction. “Servile” position taken up by Asclepiades and Erasistratus in regard to this function of urinary secretion.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER XVII

Three other attempts (by adherents of the Erasistratean school and by Lycus of Macedonia) to explain how the kidneys come to separate out urine from the blood. All these ignore the obvious principle of attraction.

## BOOK II

### CHAPTER I

In order to explain dispersal of food from alimentary canal *via* the veins (*anadosis*) there is no need to invoke with Erasistratus, the *horror vacui*, since here again the principle of specific attraction is operative ; moreover, blood is also driven forward by the compressing action of the stomach and the contractions of the veins. Possibility, however, of Erasistratus's factor playing a certain minor rôle.

### CHAPTER II

The Erasistratean idea that bile becomes separated out from the blood in the liver because, being the thinner fluid, it alone can enter the narrow stomata of the bile-ducts, while the thicker blood can only enter the wider mouths of the hepatic venules.

### CHAPTER III

The morphological factors suggested by Erasistratus are quite inadequate to explain biological happenings. Erasistratus inconsistent with his own statements. The immanence of the *physis* or nature ; her shaping is not merely external like that of a statuary, but involves the entire substance. In genesis (embryogeny) the semen is the active, and the menstrual blood the passive, principle. Attractive, alterative, and formative faculties of the semen. Embryogeny is naturally followed by growth ; these two functions distinguished.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER IV

Unjustified claim by Erasistrateans that their founder had associations with the Peripatetic (Aristotelian) school. The characteristic physiological tenets of that school (which were all anticipated by Hippocrates) in no way agree with those of Erasistratus, save that both recognize the purposefulness of Nature; in practice, however, Erasistratus assumed numerous exceptions to this principle. Difficulty of understanding why he rejected the biological principle of attraction in favour of anatomical factors.

### CHAPTER V

A further difficulty raised by Erasistratus's statement regarding secretion of bile in the liver.

### CHAPTER VI

The same holds with nutrition. Even if we grant that veins may obtain their nutrient blood by virtue of the *horror vacui* (chap. i.), how could this explain the nutrition of nerves? Erasistratus's hypothesis of minute elementary nerves and vessels within the ordinary visible nerves simply throws the difficulty further back. And is Erasistratus's minute "simple" nerve susceptible of further analysis, as the Atomists would assume? If so, this is opposed to the conception of a constructive and artistic Nature which Erasistratus himself shares with Hippocrates and the writer. And if his minute nerve is really elementary and not further divisible, then it cannot, according to his own showing, contain a cavity; therefore the *horror vacui* does not apply to it. And how could this principle apply to the restoration to its original bulk of a part which had become thin through disease, where more matter must become attached than runs away? A quotation from Erasistratus shows that he did acknowledge an "attraction," although not exactly in the Hippocratic sense.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER VII

In the last resort, the ultimate living elements (Erasistratus's *simple vessels*) must draw in their food by virtue of an inherent attractive faculty like that which the lodestone exerts on iron. Thus the process of anadosis, from beginning to end, can be explained without assuming a *horror vacui*

### CHAPTER VIII

Erasistratus's disregard for the humours. In respect to excessive formation of bile, however, prevention is better than cure ; accordingly we must consider its pathology. Does blood pre-exist in the food, or does it come into existence in the body ? Erasistratus's purely anatomical explanation of *dropsy*. He entirely avoids the question of the four qualities (*e.g.* the importance of innate heat) in the generation of the humours, etc. Yet the problem of blood-production is no less important than that of gastric digestion. Proof that bile does not pre-exist in the food. The four fundamental qualities of Hippocrates and Aristotle. How the humours are formed from food taken into the veins : when heat is in proportionate amount, blood results ; when in excess, bile ; when deficient, phlegm. Various conditions determining cold or warm temperaments. The four primary diseases result each from excess of one of the four qualities. Erasistratus unwillingly acknowledges this when he ascribes the indigestion occurring in fever to *impaired function* of the stomach. For what causes this *functio laesa* ? Proof that it is the fever (excess of innate heat).

If, then, heat plays so important a part in abnormal functioning, so must it also in normal (*i.e.* causes of eucrasia involved in those of dyscrasia, of physiology in those of pathology). A like argument explains the *genesis of the humours*. Addition of warmth to things already warm makes them bitter ; thus honey turns to bile in people who are already warm ; where warmth deficient, as in old people, it turns to useful blood. This is a proof that bile does not pre-exist, as such, in the food.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER IX

The *functions of organs* also depend on the way in which the four qualities are mixed—*e.g.* the contracting function of the stomach. Treatment only possible when we know the *causes* of errors of function. The Erasistrateans practically Empiricists in this respect. On an appreciation of the meaning of a *dyscrasia* follows naturally the Hippocratic principle of treating opposites by opposites (*e.g.* cooling the overheated stomach, warming it when chilled, etc.). Useless in treatment to know merely the function of each organ; we must know the *bodily condition* which upsets this function. Blood is warm and moist. Yellow bile is warm and (virtually, though not apparently) dry. Phlegm is cold and moist. The fourth possible combination (cold and dry) is represented by *black bile*. For the clearing out of this humour from the blood, Nature has provided the spleen—an organ which, according to Erasistratus, fulfils no purpose. Proof of the importance of the spleen is the jaundice, toxæmia, etc., occurring when it is diseased. Erasistratus's failure to mention the views of leading authorities on this organ shows the hopelessness of his position. The Hippocratic view has now been demonstrated deductively and inductively. The classical view as to the generation of the humours. Normal and pathological forms of yellow and black bile. Part played by the *innate heat* in their production. Other kinds of bile are merely transition-stages between these extreme types. Abnormal forms removed by liver and spleen respectively. Phlegm, however, does not need a special excretory organ, as it can undergo entire metabolism in the body.

Need for studying the works of the Ancients carefully, in order to reach a proper understanding of this subject.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### BOOK III

#### CHAPTER I

A recapitulation of certain points previously demonstrated. Every part of the animal has an attractive and an alterative (assimilative) faculty ; it attracts the nutrient juice which is proper to it. Assimilation is preceded by adhesion (*prosphysis*) and that again, by application (*prosthesis*). Application the goal of attraction. It would not, however, be followed by adhesion and assimilation if each part did not also possess a faculty for *retaining in position* the nutriment which has been applied. *A priori* necessity for this *retentive* faculty.

#### CHAPTER II

The same faculty to be proved *a posteriori*. Its corresponding function (*i.e.* the activation of this faculty or potentiality) well seen in the large hollow organs, notably the uterus and stomach.

#### CHAPTER III

Exercise of the retentive faculty particularly well seen in the uterus. Its object is to allow the embryo to attain full development ; this being completed, a new faculty—the expulsive—hitherto quiescent, comes into play. Characteristic signs and symptoms of pregnancy. Tight grip of uterus on growing embryo, and accurate closure of os uteri during operation of the retentive faculty. Dilatation of os and expulsive activities of uterus at full term, or when foetus dies. Prolapse from undue exercise of this faculty. *Rôle* of the midwife. Accessory muscles in parturition.

#### CHAPTER IV

Same two faculties seen in stomach. *Gurglings* or *borborygmi* show that this organ is weak and is not gripping its contents tightly enough. Undue delay of food in a weak

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

stomach proved not to be due to narrowness of pylorus : length of stay depends on whether *digestion* (another instance of the characteristically vital process of *alteration*) has taken place or not. Erasistratus wrong in attributing digestion merely to the mechanical action of the stomach walls. When digestion completed, then pylorus opens and allows contents to pass downwards, just as os uteri when development of embryo completed.

### CHAPTER V

If attraction and elimination always proceeded *pari passu*, the content of these hollow organs (including gall-bladder and urinary bladder) would never vary in amount. A *retentive* faculty, therefore, also logically needed. Its existence demonstrated. Expulsion determined by qualitative and quantitative changes of contents. "Diarrhoea" of stomach. Vomiting.

### CHAPTER VI

Every organic part has an *appetite* and *aversion* for the qualities which are appropriate and foreign to it respectively. Attraction necessarily leads to a certain *benefit* received. This again necessitates *retention*.

### CHAPTER VII

Interaction between two bodies ; the stronger masters the weaker ; a deleterious drug masters the forces of the body, whereas food is mastered by them ; this mastery is an *alteration*, and the amount of alteration varies with the different organs ; thus a partial alteration is effected in mouth by saliva, but much greater in stomach, where not only gastric juice, but also bile, pneuma, innate heat (*i.e.* oxidation ?), and other powerful factors are brought to bear on it ; need of considerable alteration in stomach

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

as a transition-stage between food and blood ; appearance of faeces in intestine another proof of great alteration effected in stomach. Asclepiades's denial of real qualitative change in stomach rebutted. Erasistratus's denial that digestion in any way resembles a *boiling* process comes from his taking words too literally.

### CHAPTER VIII

Erasistratus denies that the stomach exerts any pull in the act of swallowing. That he is wrong, however, is proved by the anatomical structure of the stomach—its inner coat with longitudinal fibres obviously acts as a *vis a fronte* (attraction), whilst its outer coat exercises through the contraction of its circular fibres a *vis a tergo* (propulsion) ; the latter also comes into play in vomiting. The stomach uses the oesophagus as a kind of hand, to draw in its food with. The functions of the two coats proved also by vivisection. Swallowing cannot be attributed merely to the force of gravity.

### CHAPTER IX

These four faculties which subserve nutrition are thus apparent in many different parts of the body.

### CHAPTER X

Need for elaborating the statements of the ancient physicians. Superiority of Ancients to Moderns. This state of affairs can only be rectified by a really efficient education of youth. The chief requisites of such an education.

### CHAPTER XI

For the sake of the few who really wish truth, the argument will be continued. A third kind of fibre—the *oblique*—suberves *retention* ; the way in which this fibre is disposed in different coats.

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

### CHAPTER XII

The factor which brings the explosive faculty into action is essentially a condition of the organ or its contents which is the reverse of that which determined attraction. Analogy between abortion and normal parturition. Whatever produces *discomfort* must be expelled. That discomfort also determines expulsion of contents from gall-bladder is not so evident as in the case of stomach, uterus, urinary bladder, etc., but can be logically demonstrated.

### CHAPTER XIII

Expulsion takes place through the same channel as attraction (*e.g.*, in stomach, gall-bladder, uterus). Similarly the delivery (*anadosis*) of nutriment to the liver from the food-canal *via* the mesenteric veins may have its direction reversed. Continuous give-and-take between different parts of the body; superior strength of certain parts is natural, of others acquired. When liver contains abundant food and stomach depleted, latter may draw on former; this occurs when animal can get nothing to eat, and so prevents starvation. Similarly, when one part becomes over-distended, it tends to deposit its excess in some weaker part near it; this passes it on to some still weaker part, which cannot get rid of it; hence *deposits* of various kinds. Further instances of reversal of the normal direction of anadosis from the food canal through the veins. Such reversal of functions would in any case be expected *a priori*. In the vomiting of intestinal obstruction, matter may be carried backwards all the way from the intestine to the mouth; not surprising, therefore, that, under certain circumstances, food-material might be driven right back from the skin-surface to the alimentary canal (*e.g.* in excessive chilling of surface); not much needed to determine this reversal of direction. Action of purgative drugs upon terminals of veins; one part draws from another until whole body participates; similarly in intestinal obstruction, each part passes on the irritating substance to its weaker

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

neighbour. Reversal of direction of flow occurs not merely on occasion but also constantly (as in arteries, lungs, heart, etc.). The various stages of normal nutrition described. Why the stomach sometimes draws back the nutriment it had passed on to portal veins and liver. A similar ebb and flow in relation to the spleen. Comparison of the parts of the body to a lot of animals at a feast. The valves of the heart are a provision of Nature to prevent this otherwise inevitable regurgitation, though even they are not quite efficient.

### CHAPTER XIV

The superficial arteries, when they dilate, draw in air from the atmosphere, and the deeper ones a fine, vaporous blood from the veins and heart. Lighter matter such as air will always be drawn in in preference to heavier ; this is why the arteries in the food-canal draw in practically none of the nutrient matter contained in it.

### CHAPTER XV

The two kinds of attraction—the mechanical attraction of dilating bellows and the “physical” (vital) attraction by living tissue of nutrient matter which is specifically allied or appropriate to it. The former kind—that resulting from *horror vacui*—acts primarily on light matter, whereas vital attraction has no essential concern with such mechanical factors. A hollow organ exercises, by virtue of its cavity, the former kind of attraction, and by virtue of the living tissue of its walls, the second kind. Application of this to question of contents of arteries ; *anastomoses of arteries and veins*. *Foramina in interventricular septum of heart*, allowing some blood to pass from right to left ventricle. Large size of aorta probably due to fact that it not merely carries the pneuma received from the lungs, but also some of the blood which percolates through septum from right ventricle. Thus arteries carry not merely pneuma, but also some light vaporous blood, which certain parts need more

## SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

than the ordinary thick blood of the veins. The organic parts must have their blood-supply sufficiently near to allow them to absorb it ; comparison with an irrigation system in a garden. Details of the process of nutrition in the ultimate specific tissues ; some are nourished from the blood directly ; in others a series of intermediate stages must precede complete assimilation ; for example, marrow is an intermediate stage between blood and bone.

From the generalisations arrived at in the present work we can deduce the explanation of all kinds of particular phenomena ; an instance is given, showing the co-operation of various factors previously discussed.



**GALEN**  
**ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES**  
**BOOK I**

# ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ

## ΠΕΡΙ ΦΤΣΙΚΩΝ ΔΤΝΑΜΕΩΝ

A

I

Κ. II. <sup>1</sup>Ἐπειδὴ τὸ μὲν αἰσθάνεσθαι τε καὶ κινεῖσθαι  
κατὰ προαιρεσιν ἔδια τῶν ζώων ἐστί, τὸ δ'  
αὐξάνεσθαι τε καὶ τρέφεσθαι κοινὰ καὶ τοῖς  
φυτοῖς, εἴη ἀν τὰ μὲν πρότερα τῆς ψυχῆς, τὰ δὲ  
δεύτερα τῆς φύσεως ἔργα. εἰ δέ τις καὶ τοῖς  
φυτοῖς ψυχῆς μεταδίδωσι καὶ διαιρούμενος αὐτὰς  
ὄνομάζει φυτικὴν μὲν ταύτην, αἰσθητικὴν δὲ τὴν  
ἔτεραν, λέγει μὲν οὐδὲ οὔτος ἄλλα, τῇ λέξει δ'  
οὐ πάνυ τῇ συνήθει κέχρηται. ἄλλ' ίμεις γε  
μεγίστην λέξεως ἀρετὴν σαφήνειαν είναι πε-  
2 πεισμένοι καὶ ταύτην εἰδότες || ὑπ' οὐδενὸς οὕτως  
ώς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀσυνήθων ὄνομάτων διαφθειρομένην,  
ώς τοῖς πολλοῖς ἔθος, οὕτως ὄνομάζοντες ὑπὸ μὲν  
ψυχῆς θ' ἄμα καὶ φύσεως τὰ ζῷα διοικεῖσθαι  
φαμεν, ὑπὸ δὲ φύσεως μόνης τὰ φυτὰ καὶ τό γ'  
αὐξάνεσθαι τε καὶ τρέφεσθαι φύσεως ἔργα φαμέν,  
οὐ ψυχῆς.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, "On the Natural Powers," the powers of the *Physis* or Nature. By that Galen practically means what we should call the physiological or biological powers, the characteristic faculties of the living organism; his *Physis* is the subconscious vital principle of the animal or plant.

GALEN

ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES<sup>1</sup>

BOOK I .

I

SINCE feeling and voluntary motion are peculiar to animals, whilst growth and nutrition are common to plants as well, we may look on the former as effects<sup>2</sup> of the *soul*<sup>3</sup> and the latter as effects of the *nature*.<sup>4</sup> And if there be anyone who allows a share in soul to plants as well, and separates the two kinds of soul, naming the kind in question *vegetative*, and the other *sensory*, this person is not saying anything else, although his language is somewhat unusual. We, however, for our part, are convinced that the chief merit of language is clearness, and we know that nothing detracts so much from this as do unfamiliar terms; accordingly we employ those terms which the bulk of people are accustomed to use, and we say that animals are governed at once by their soul and by their nature, and plants by their nature alone, and that growth and nutrition are the effects of nature, not of soul.

Like Aristotle, however, he also ascribes quasi-vital properties to inanimate things, cf. Introduction, p. xxvii.

<sup>2</sup> *Ergon*, here rendered an *effect*, is literally a *work* or *deed*; strictly speaking, it is something *done*, *completed*, as distinguished from *energeia*, which is the actual *doing*, the *activity* which produces this *ergon*. cf. p. 13, and Introduction, p. xxx.

<sup>3</sup> Gk. *psyche*, Lat. *anima*.

<sup>4</sup> Gk. *physis*, Lat. *natura*.

Καὶ ζητήσομεν κατὰ τόνδε τὸν λόγον, ὑπὸ τίνων γίγνεται δυνάμεων αὐτὰ δὴ ταῦτα καὶ εἰ δὴ τι ἄλλο φύσεως ἔργον ἐστίν.

Ἄλλὰ πρότερόν γε διελέσθαι τε χρὴ καὶ μηνῦσαι σαφῶς ἔκαστον τῶν ὀνομάτων, οἵς χρησόμεθα κατὰ τόνδε τὸν λόγον, καὶ ἐφ' ὅ τι φέρομεν πρᾶγμα. γενήσεται δὲ τοῦτ' εὐθὺς ἔργων φυσικῶν διδασκαλία σὺν ταῖς τῶν ὀνομάτων ἔξιγγήσεσιν.

"Οταν οὖν τι σῶμα κατὰ μηδὲν ἔξαλλάττηται τῶν προϋπαρχόντων, ἡσυχάζειν αὐτό φαμεν· εἰ δὲ ἔξισται τό πη, κατ' ἐκεῖνο κινεῖσθαι. καὶ τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πολυειδῶς ἔξισταται, πολυειδῶς καὶ κινηθήσεται. καὶ γὰρ εἰ λευκὸν ὑπάρχον μελαίνοιτο καὶ εἰ μέλαν λευκαίνοιτο, κινεῖται κατὰ χρόαν, 3 καὶ εἰ γλυκὺ τέως ὑπάρχον αὐθις || αὐστηρὸν ἥ ἔμπαλιν ἔξι αὐστηροῦ γλυκὺ γένοιτο, καὶ τοῦτ' ἀν κινεῖσθαι λέγοιτο κατὰ τὸν χυμόν. ἄμφω δε ταῦτά τε καὶ τὰ προειρημένα κατὰ τὴν ποιότητα κινεῖσθαι λεχθήσεται καὶ οὐ μόνον γε τὰ κατὰ τὴν χρόαν ἥ τὸν χυμὸν ἔξαλλαττόμενα κινεῖσθαι φαμεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ θερμότερον ἐκ ψυχροτέρου γενόμενον ἥ ψυχρότερον ἐκ θερμοτέρου κινεῖσθαι καὶ τοῦτο λέγομεν, ὥσπερ γε καὶ εἴ τι ξηρὸν ἔξ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II

### II

THUS we shall enquire, in the course of this treatise, from what *faculties* these effects themselves, as well as any other effects of nature which there may be, take their origin.

First, however, we must distinguish and explain clearly the various terms which we are going to use in this treatise, and to what things we apply them; and this will prove to be not merely an explanation of terms but at the same time a demonstration of the effects of nature.

When, therefore, such and such a body undergoes no change from its existing state, we say that it is *at rest*; but, if it departs from this in any respect we then say that in this respect it *undergoes motion*.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, when it departs in various ways from its pre-existing state, it will be said to undergo various kinds of motion. Thus, if that which is white becomes black, or what is black becomes white, it undergoes motion in respect to *colour*; or if what was previously sweet now becomes bitter, or, conversely, from being bitter now becomes sweet, it will be said to undergo motion in respect to *flavour*; to both of these instances, as well as to those previously mentioned, we shall apply the term *qualitative motion*. And further, it is not only things which are altered in regard to colour and flavour which, we say, undergo motion; when a warm thing becomes cold, and a cold warm, here too we speak of its undergoing motion; similarly also when any-

<sup>1</sup> *Motion* (*kinesis*) is Aristotle's general term for what we would rather call *change*. It includes various kinds of change, as well as movement proper. *c.f.* Introduction, p. xxix.

ύγροῦ ἡ ύγρὸν ἐκ ξηροῦ γίγνοιτο. κοινὸν δὲ κατὰ τούτων ἀπάντων ὄνομα φέρομεν τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν.

"Ἐν τι τοῦτο γένος κινησεως. ἔτερον δὲ γένος ἐπὶ τοῖς τὰς χώρας ἀμείβουσι σώμασι καὶ τόπον ἐκ τόπου μεταλλάττειν λεγομένοις, ὄνομα δὲ καὶ τούτῳ φορά.

Ἄνται μὲν οὖν αἱ δύο κινήσεις ἀπλαῖ καὶ πρῶται, σύνθετοι δ' ἐξ αὐτῶν αὐξησίς τε καὶ φθίσις, ὅταν ἐξ ἐλάττονός τι μεῖζον ἡ ἐκ μείζονος ἔλαττον γένηται φυλάττον τὸ οἰκεῖον εἶδος. ἔτεραι δὲ δύο κινήσεις γένεσις καὶ φθορά, γένεσις μὲν ἡ εἰς οὐσίαν ἀγωγή, φθορὰ δ' ἡ ἐναντία.

Πάσαις δὲ ταῖς κινήσεσι κοινὸν ἐξάλλαξις  
<sup>4</sup> τοῦ προϋπάρχοντος, ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ ταῖς ήσυχίαις ἡ φυλακὴ τῶν προϋπαρχόντων. ἀλλ' ὅτι μὲν ἐξαλλάττεται καὶ πρὸς τὴν ὄψιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν γεῦσιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀφὴν αἷμα γιγνόμενα τὰ σιτία, συγχωροῦσιν ὅτι δὲ καὶ κατ' ἀλήθειαν, οὐκέτι τοῦθ' ὁμολογοῦσιν οἱ σοφισταί. οἱ μὲν γάρ τινες αὐτῶν ἀπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἡμετέρων αἰσθήσεων ἀπάτας τινὰς καὶ παραγωγὰς νομίζουσιν ἄλλοτ' ἄλλως πασχουσῶν, τῆς ὑποκειμένης οὐσίας μηδὲν τούτων, οἵς ἐπονομάζεται, δεχομένης· οἱ δέ τινες εἶναι μὲν ἐν αὐτῇ βούλονται τὰς ποιότητας, ἀμεταβλήτους δὲ καὶ ἀτρέπτους

<sup>1</sup> "Conveyance," "transport," "transit"; purely mechanical or passive motion, as distinguished from *alteration* (qualitative change).

<sup>2</sup> "Waxing and waning," the latter literally *phthisis*, a wasting or "decline;" cf. Scotch *dwining*, Dutch *verdwijnen*.

<sup>3</sup> Becoming and perishing: Latin, *generatio et corruptio*.

<sup>4</sup> "Ad substantiam productio seu ad formam processus" (Linacre).

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II

thing moist becomes dry, or dry moist. Now, the common term which we apply to all these cases is *alteration*.

This is one kind of motion. But there is another kind which occurs in bodies which change their position, or as we say, pass from one place to another; the name of this is *transference*.<sup>1</sup>

These two kinds of motion, then, are simple and primary, while compounded from them we have *growth* and *decay*,<sup>2</sup> as when a small thing becomes bigger, or a big thing smaller, each retaining at the same time its particular form. And two other kinds of motion are *genesis* and *destruction*,<sup>3</sup> *genesis* being a coming into existence,<sup>4</sup> and *destruction* being the opposite.

Now, common to all kinds of motion is *change from the pre-existing state*, while common to all conditions of rest is *retention of the pre-existing state*. The Sophists, however, while allowing that bread in turning into blood becomes changed as regards sight, taste, and touch, will not agree that this change occurs in reality. Thus some of them hold that all such phenomena are tricks and illusions of our senses; the senses, they say, are affected now in one way, now in another, whereas the underlying substance does not admit of any of these changes to which the names are given. Others (such as Anaxagoras)<sup>5</sup> will have it that the qualities do exist in it, but that they

<sup>5</sup> "Preformationist" doctrine of Anaxagoras. To him the apparent alteration in qualities took place when a number of minute pre-existing bodies, all bearing the same quality, came together in sufficient numbers to impress that quality on the senses. The factor which united the minute quality-bearers was *Nous*. "In the beginning," says Anaxagoras, "all things existed together—then came *Nous* and brought them into order."

έξι αἰώνος εἰς αἰώνα καὶ τὰς φαινομένας ταύτας ἀλλοιώσεις τῇ διακρίσει τε καὶ συγκρίσει γίγνεσθαι φασιν ὡς Ἀναξαγόρας.

Εἴ δὴ τούτους ἐκτραπομένος ἔξελέγχοιμι, μεῖζον ἂν μοι τὸ πάρεργον τοῦ ἔργου γένοιτο. εἰ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἵσασιν, ὅσα περὶ τῆς καθ' ὅλην τὴν οὐσίαν ἀλλοιώσεως Ἀριστοτέλει τε καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν Χρυσίππῳ γέγραπται, παρακαλέσαι χρὴ τοῖς ἐκείνων αὐτοὺς ὄμιλῆσαι γράμμασιν· εἰ δὲ γιγνώσκοντες ἔπειθ' ἔκόντες τὰ χείρω πρὸ τῶν

5 βελτιόνων || αἴρονται, μάταια δήπου καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα νομιοῦσιν. ὅτι δὲ καὶ Ἰπποκράτης οὗτος ἐγίγνωσκεν Ἀριστοτέλους ἔτι πρότερος ὡν, ἐν ἑτέροις ἡμῖν ἀποδέδεικται. πρῶτος γὰρ οὗτος ἀπάντων ὡν ἵσμεν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων ἀποδεικνύειν ἐπεχείρησε τέτταρας εἶναι τὰς πάσας δραστικὰς εἰς ἀλλήλας ποιότητας, ὑφ' ὧν γίγνεται τε καὶ φθείρεται πάνθ<sup>1</sup>, ὅσα γέρεσίν τε καὶ φθορὰν ἐπιδέχεται. καὶ μέντοι καὶ τὸ κεράννυσθαι δι' ἀλλήλων αὐτὰς ὅλας δι' ὅλων Ἰπποκράτης ἀπάντων πρῶτος ἔγνω· καὶ τὰς ἀρχάς γε τῶν ἀποδείξεων, ὡν ὕστερον Ἀριστοτέλης μετεχειρίσατο, παρ' ἐκείνῳ πρώτῳ γεγραμμένας ἔστιν εὑρεῖν.

Εἴ δ' ὥσπερ τὰς ποιότητας οὕτω καὶ τὰς οὐσίας δι' ὅλων κεράννυσθαι χρὴ νομίζειν, ὡς ὕστερον ἀπεφήνατο Ζήνων ὁ Κιττιεύς, οὐχ ἡγοῦμαι δεῖν ἔτι περὶ τούτου κατὰ τόνδε τὸν λόγον ἐπεξιέναι. μόνην γὰρ εἰς τὰ παρόντα δέομαι γιγνώσκεσθαι

<sup>1</sup> “De ea alteratione quae per totam fit substantiam” (Linacre). <sup>2</sup> The systematizer of Stoicism and successor of Zeno.

<sup>3</sup> Note characteristic impatience with metaphysics. To Galen, as to Hippocrates and Aristotle, it sufficed to look on

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II

are unchangeable and immutable from eternity to eternity, and that these apparent alterations are brought about by *separation* and *combination*.

Now, if I were to go out of my way to confute these people, my subsidiary task would be greater than my main one. Thus, if they do not know all that has been written, "On Complete Alteration of Substance"<sup>1</sup> by Aristotle, and after him by Chrysippus,<sup>2</sup> I must beg of them to make themselves familiar with these men's writings. If, however, they know these, and yet willingly prefer the worse views to the better, they will doubtless consider my arguments foolish also. I have shown elsewhere that these opinions were shared by Hippocrates, who lived much earlier than Aristotle. In fact, of all those known to us who have been both physicians and philosophers Hippocrates was the first who took in hand to demonstrate that there are, in all, four mutually interacting *qualities*, and that to the operation of these is due the genesis and destruction of all things that come into and pass out of being. Nay, more; Hippocrates was also the first to recognise that all these qualities undergo an intimate mingling with one another; and at least the beginnings of the proofs to which Aristotle later set his hand are to be found first in the writings of Hippocrates.

As to whether we are to suppose that the *substances* as well as their *qualities* undergo this intimate mingling, as Zeno of Citium afterwards declared, I do not think it necessary to go further into this question in the present treatise;<sup>3</sup> for immediate purposes we only the qualitative differences apprehended by the senses as fundamental. Zeno of Citium was the founder of the Stoic school; on the further analysis by this school of the *qualities* into *bodies* cf. p. 144, note 3.

τὴν δι' ὅλης τῆς οὐσίας ἀλλοίωσιν, ἵνα μή τις  
δόστοῦ καὶ σαρκὸς καὶ νεύρου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
ἐκάστου μορίων οίονεὶ μισγάγκειάν τινα τῷ ἄρτῳ  
6 νομίσῃ περιέχεσθαι κάπειτ<sup>1</sup> ἐν || τῷ σώματι δια-  
κρινόμενον ὡς τὸ ὁμόφυλον ἔκαστον ἴέναι. καίτοι  
πρό γε τῆς διακρίσεως αἷμα φαίνεται γιγνόμενος  
ό πᾶς ἄρτος. εἰ γοῦν παμπόλλῳ τις χρόνῳ μηδὲν  
ἄλλ' εἴη σιτίον προσφερόμενος, οὐδέν ήττον ἐν  
ταῖς φλεψὶν αἷμα περιεχόμενον ἔξει. καὶ φανερῶς  
τούτο τὴν τῶν ἀμετάβλητα τὰ στοιχεῖα τιθεμένων  
ἔξελέγχει δόξαν, ὥσπερ οἵμαι καὶ τοῦλαιον εἰς  
τὴν τοῦ λύχνου φλόγα καταναλισκόμενον ἄπαν  
καὶ τὰ ἔύλα πῦρ μικρὸν ὕστερον γιγνόμενα.

Καίτοι τό γ' ἀντιλέγειν αὐτοῖς ἡρησάμην, ἀλλ'  
ἐπεὶ τῆς ἰατρικῆς ὕλης. ἦν τὸ παράδειγμα καὶ  
χρῆστος πρὸς τὸν παρόντα λόγον αὐτοῦ, διὰ τοῦτο  
ἐμνημόνευσα. καταλιπόντες οὖν, ὡς ἔφην, τὴν  
πρὸς τούτους ἀντιλογίαν, <ἐνὸν> τοὺς βουλομένους  
τὰ τῶν παλαιῶν ἐκμανθάνειν κὰξ ὃν ἡμεῖς ἴδιᾳ  
περὶ αὐτῶν ἐπεσκέμμεθα.

Τὸν ἐφεξῆς λόγον ἄπαντα ποιησόμεθα ζητοῦντες  
ὑπὲρ ὃν ἔξι ἀρχῆς προύθέμεθα, πόσαι τε καὶ τίνες  
εἰσὶν αἱ τῆς φύσεως δυνάμεις καὶ τί ποιεῖν ἔργον

<sup>1</sup> A rallying-ground: lit. a place where two glens meet.

<sup>2</sup> Thus according to Gomperz (*Greek Thinkers*), the hypothesis of Anaxagoras was that “the bread . . . already contained the countless forms of matter as such which the human body displays. Their minuteness of size would withdraw them from our perception. For the defect or ‘weakness’ of the senses is the narrowness of their receptive area.



## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II

need to recognize the *complete alteration of substance*. In this way, nobody will suppose that bread represents a kind of meeting-place<sup>1</sup> for bone, flesh, nerve, and all the other parts, and that each of these subsequently becomes separated in the body and goes to join its own kind ;<sup>2</sup> before any separation takes place, the whole of the bread obviously becomes blood ; (at any rate, if a man takes no other food for a prolonged period, he will have blood enclosed in his veins all the same).<sup>3</sup> And clearly this disproves the view of those who consider the elements<sup>4</sup> unchangeable, as also, for that matter, does the oil which is entirely used up in the flame of the lamp, or the faggots which, in a somewhat longer time, turn into fire.

I said, however, that I was not going to enter into an argument with these people, and it was only because the example was drawn from the subject-matter of medicine, and because I need it for the present treatise, that I have mentioned it. We shall then, as I said, renounce our controversy with them, since those who wish may get a good grasp of the views of the ancients from our own personal investigations into these matters.

The discussion which follows we shall devote entirely, as we originally proposed, to an enquiry into the number and character of the *faculties* of Nature, and what is the effect which each naturally  
These elusive particles are rendered visible and tangible by the process of *nutrition*, which combines them."

<sup>3</sup> Therefore the blood must have come from the bread. The food from the alimentary canal was supposed by Galen to be converted into blood in and by the portal veins. cf. p. 17.

<sup>4</sup> By "elements" is meant all homogeneous, amorphous substances, such as metals, &c., as well as the elementary *tissues*.

έκάστη πέφυκεν. ἔργον δὲ δηλονότι καλῶ τὸ  
7 γεγονὸς ἥδη καὶ συμπεπληρωμένου ὑπὸ τῆς ἐνεργίας αὐτῶν, οἷον τὸ αἷμα, τὴν σάρκα, τὸ νεῦρον· ἐνέργειαν δὲ τὴν δραστικὴν ὄνομάζω κίνησιν καὶ τὴν ταύτης αἰτίαν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἐν τῷ τὸ σιτίον αἷμα γίγνεσθαι παθητικὴ μὲν ἡ τοῦ σιτίου, δραστικὴ δ' ἡ τῆς φλεβὸς γίγνεται κίνησις, ὡσαύτως δὲ κάν τῷ μεταφέρειν τὰ κῶλα κινεῖ μὲν ὁ μῦς, κινεῖται δὲ τὰ ὄστα, τὴν μὲν τῆς φλεβὸς καὶ τῶν μυῶν κίνησιν ἐνέργειαν εἶναι φημι, τὴν δὲ τῶν σιτίων τε καὶ τῶν ὄστων σύμπτωμά τε καὶ πάθημα· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοιοῦται, τὰ δὲ φέρεται. τὴν μὲν οὖν ἐνέργειαν ἐγχωρεῖ καλεῖν καὶ ἔργον τῆς φύσεως, οἷον τὴν πέψιν, τὴν ἀνάδοσιν, τὴν αἵματωσιν, οὐ μὴν τό γ' ἔργον ἐξ ἅπαντος ἐνέργειαν· ἡ γάρ τοι σὰρξ ἔργον μέν ἐστι τῆς φύσεως, οὐ μὴν ἐνέργειά γε. δῆλον οὖν, ὡς θάτερον μὲν τῶν ὄνομάτων διχῶς λέγεται, θάτερον δ' οὔ.

## III

Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ ἡ φλὲψ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ἔκαστον διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιὰν

<sup>1</sup> Work or product. Lat. *opus*. cf. p. 3, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> Operation, activation, or functioning. Lat. *actio*. cf. loc. cit.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. a concomitant (secondary) or passive affection. Galen is contrasting active and passive "motion." cf. p. 6, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> As already indicated, there is no exact English equivalent for the Greek term *physis*, which is a principle immanent

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II.-III

produces. Now, of course, I mean by an effect<sup>1</sup> that which has already come into existence and has been completed by the *activity*<sup>2</sup> of these faculties—for example, blood, flesh, or nerve. And *activity* is the name I give to the active change or *motion*, and the *cause* of this I call a *faculty*. Thus, when food turns into blood, the motion of the food is passive, and that of the vein active. Similarly, when the limbs have their position altered, it is the muscle which produces, and the bones which undergo the motion. In these cases I call the motion of the vein and of the muscle an *activity*, and that of the food and the bones a *symptom* or *affection*,<sup>3</sup> since the first group undergoes *alteration* and the second group is merely *transported*. One might, therefore, also speak of the *activity* as an *effect* of Nature<sup>4</sup>—for example, digestion, absorption,<sup>5</sup> blood-production; one could not, however, in every case call the effect an activity; thus flesh is an effect of Nature, but it is, of course, not an activity. It is, therefore, clear that one of these terms is used in two senses, but not the other.

### III

It appears to me, then, that the vein, as well as each of the other parts, functions in such and such a way according to the manner in which *the four qualities* in the animal itself, whereas our term “Nature” suggests something more transcendent; we are forced often, however, to employ it in default of a better word. cf. p. 2, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> In Greek *anadosis*. This process includes two stages: (1) transmission of food from alimentary canal to liver (rather more than our “absorption”); (2) further transmission from liver to tissues. *Anadosis* is lit. a yielding-up, a “delivery”; it may sometimes be rendered “dispersal.” “Distribution” (*diadosis*) is a further stage; cf. p. 163, note 4.

## GALEN

κράσιν ὡδί πως ἐνεργεῖν δοκεῖ. εἰσὶ δέ γε μὴν οὐκ  
 8 ὄλιγοι τινὲς ἄνδρες || οὐδέ ἄδοξοι, φιλόσοφοί τε  
 καὶ ἰατροί, τῷ μὲν θερμῷ καὶ τῷ ψυχρῷ τὸ δρᾶν  
 ἀναφέροντες, ὑποβάλλοντες δ' αὐτοῖς παθητικὰ  
 τὸ ξηρόν τε καὶ τὸ ύγρόν. καὶ πρῶτος γ' Ἀριστο-  
 τέλης τὰς τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἀπάντων αἰτίας εἰς  
 ταύτας ἀνάγειν πειρᾶται τὰς ἀρχάς, ἵκολούθησε  
 δ' ὕστερον αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀπὸ τῆς στοᾶς χορός. καί-  
 τοι τούτοις μέν, ώς ἀν καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν στοιχείων  
 τὴν εἰς ἄλληλα μεταβολὴν χύσεσί τέ τισι καὶ  
 πιλήσεσιν ἀναφέρουσιν, εὐλογον ἥν ὑρχὰς δρα-  
 στικὰς ποιήσασθαι τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρόν,  
 Ἀριστοτέλει δ' οὐχ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ ταῖς τέτταρσι  
 ποιότησιν εἰς τὴν τῶν στοιχείων γένεσιν χρωμένῳ  
 βέλτιον ἥν καὶ τὰς τῶν κατὰ μέρος αἰτίας ἀπάσας  
 εἰς ταύτας ἀνάγειν. τί δήποτ' οὖν ἐν μὲν τοῖς περὶ  
 γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς ταῖς τέτταρσι χρῆται, ἐν δὲ  
 τοῖς μετεωρολογικοῖς καὶ τοῖς προβλήμασι καὶ  
 ἄλλοθι πολλαχόθι ταῖς δύο μόναις; εἰ μὲν γὰρ  
 ώς ἐν τοῖς ζῷοις τε καὶ τοῖς φυτοῖς μᾶλλον μὲν  
 δρᾶ τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρόν, ἥττον δὲ τὸ ξηρὸν  
 καὶ τὸ ύγρὸν ἀποφαίνοιτο τις, ἵσως ἀν ἔχοι καὶ  
 τὸν Ἰπποκράτην σύμψηφον· εἰ δ' ὠσαύτως ἐν ||  
 9 ἄπασιν, οὐκέτ' οἵμαι συγχωρήσειν τοῦτο μὴ ὅτι  
 τὸν Ἰπποκράτην ἀλλὰ μηδ' αὐτὸν τὸν Ἀριστοτέ-  
 λην μεμνῆσθαί γε βουλόμενον ὃν ἐν τοῖς περὶ  
 γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς οὐχ ἀπλῶς ἀλλὰ μετ' ἀπο-  
 δείξεως αὐτὸς ἡμᾶς ἐδίδαξεν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν  
 τούτων κάν τοῖς περὶ κράσεων, εἰς ὅσον ἰατρῷ  
 χρήσιμον, ἐπεσκεψάμεθα.

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 9.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. III

*ties*<sup>1</sup> are mixed. There are, however, a considerable number of not undistinguished men—philosophers and physicians—who refer action to the Warm and the Cold, and who subordinate to these, as passive, the Dry and the Moist; Aristotle, in fact, was the first who attempted to bring back the causes of the various special activities to these principles, and he was followed later by the Stoic school. These latter, of course, could logically make active principles of the Warm and Cold, since they refer the change of the elements themselves into one another to certain *diffusions* and *condensations*.<sup>2</sup> This does not hold of Aristotle, however; seeing that he employed the four qualities to explain the genesis of the elements, he ought properly to have also referred the causes of all the special activities to these. How is it that he uses the four qualities in his book “On Genesis and Destruction,” whilst in his “Meteorology,” his “Problems,” and many other works he uses the two only? Of course, if anyone were to maintain that in the case of animals and plants the Warm and Cold are *more active*, the Dry and Moist *less* so, he might perhaps have even Hippocrates on his side; but if he were to say that this happens in all cases, he would, I imagine, lack support, not merely from Hippocrates, but even from Aristotle himself—if, at least, Aristotle chose to remember what he himself taught us in his work “On Genesis and Destruction,” not as a matter of simple statement, but with an accompanying demonstration. I have, however, also investigated these questions, in so far as they are of value to a physician, in my work “On Temperaments.”

<sup>2</sup> Since heat and cold tend to cause diffusion and condensation respectively.

## IV

‘Η δ’ οὖν δύναμις ή ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ή αίματο-  
ποιητικὴ προσαγορευομένη καὶ πᾶσα δ’ ἄλλη  
δύναμις ἐν τῷ πρός τι νευόηται· πρώτως μὲν  
γὰρ τῆς ἐνεργείας αἰτία, ἥδη δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἔργου  
κατὰ συμβεβηκός. ἀλλ’ εἴπερ η̄ αἰτία πρός  
τι, τοῦ γὰρ ὑπ’ αὐτῆς γενομένου μόνου, τῶν δ’  
ἄλλων οὐδενός, εὑδηλον, ὅτι καὶ η̄ δύναμις ἐν τῷ  
πρός τι. καὶ μέχρι γ’ ἀν ἀγνοῶμεν τὴν οὐσίαν  
τῆς ἐνεργούσης αἰτίας, δύναμιν αὐτὴν ὀνομάζομεν,  
εἴναι τινα λέγοντες ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν αίματοποιητι-  
κήν, ὡσαύτως δὲ κάν τη̄ κοιλίᾳ πεπτικήν κάν τη̄  
καρδίᾳ σφυγμικήν καὶ καθ’ ἔκαστον τῶν ἄλλων  
10 ιδίαν τινὰ τῆς || κατὰ τὸ μόριον ἐνεργείας. εἴπερ  
οὖν μεθόδῳ μέλλοιμεν ἔξευρήσειν, ὅπόσαι τε καὶ  
όποιαι τινες αἱ δυνάμεις εἰσίν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἔργων  
αὐτῶν ἀρκτέον· ἔκαστον γὰρ αὐτῶν ὑπό τινος  
ἐνεργείας γίγνεται καὶ τούτων ἐκάστης προηγεῖται  
τις αἰτία.

## V

“Ἐργα τοίνυν τῆς φύσεως ἔτι μὲν κυουμένου τε  
καὶ διαπλαττομένου τοῦ ζώου τὰ σύμπαντ’ ἐστὶ  
τοῦ σώματος μόρια, γεννηθέντος δὲ κοινὸν ἐφ’  
ἄπασιν ἔργον η̄ εἰς τὸ τέλειον ἐκάστῳ μέγεθος  
ἀγωγὴ καὶ μετὰ ταῦθ’ η̄ μέχρι τοῦ δυνατοῦ  
διαμονῆ.

‘Ἐνέργειαι δ’ ἐπὶ τρισὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις ἔργοις  
τρεῖς ἔξ ἀνάγκης, ἐφ’ ἐκάστῳ μίᾳ, γένεσίς τε καὶ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. iv.-v

### IV

THE so-called *blood-making*<sup>1</sup> faculty in the veins, then, as well as all the other faculties, fall within the category of relative concepts; primarily because the faculty is the cause of the activity, but also, accidentally, because it is the cause of the effect. But, if the cause is relative to something—for it is the cause of what results from it, and of nothing else—it is obvious that the faculty also falls into the category of the relative; and so long as we are ignorant of the true essence of the cause which is operating, we call it a *faculty*. Thus we say that there exists in the veins a blood-making faculty, as also a digestive<sup>2</sup> faculty in the stomach, a pulsatile<sup>3</sup> faculty in the heart, and in each of the other parts a special faculty corresponding to the function or activity of that part. If, therefore, we are to investigate methodically the number and kinds of faculties, we must begin with the effects; for each of these effects comes from a certain activity, and each of these again is preceded by a cause.

### V

THE effects of Nature, then, while the animal is still being formed in the womb, are all the different *parts* of its body; and after it has been born, an effect in which all parts share is the progress of each to its full size, and thereafter its maintenance of itself as long as possible.

The activities corresponding to the three effects mentioned are necessarily three—one to each—

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *haematopoietic*. cf. p. 11, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *peptic*.

<sup>3</sup> Lit. *sphygmic*.

## GALEN

αὔξησις καὶ θρέψις. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν γένεσις οὐχ ἀπλῆ τις ἐνέργεια τῆς φύσεως, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀλλοιώσεως τε καὶ διαπλάσεώς ἐστι σύνθετος. ἵνα μὲν γὰρ ὅστοῦν γένηται καὶ νεῦρον καὶ φλὲψ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκαστον, ἀλλοιούσθαι χρὴ τὴν ὑποβεβλημένην οὐσίαν, ἐξ ἣς γίγνεται τὸ ζῷον. ἵνα δὲ καὶ σχῆμα τὸ δέον καὶ θέσιν καὶ κοιλότητάς τινας  
11 καὶ ἀποφύσεις καὶ συμφύσεις καὶ τάλλα || τὰ τοιαῦτα κτήσηται, διαπλάττεσθαι χρὴ τὴν ἀλλοιουμένην οὐσίαν, ἦν δὴ καὶ ὑλην τοῦ ζῷου καλῶν, ὡς τῆς νεώς τὰ ξύλα καὶ τῆς εἰκόνος τὸν κηρόν, οὐκ ἀν ἀμάρτοις.

'Η δ' αὔξησις ἐπίδοσίς ἐστι καὶ διάστασις κατὰ μῆκος καὶ πλάτος καὶ βάθος τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ ζῷου μορίων, ὧνπερ καὶ ἡ διάπλασις ἦν, ἡ δὲ θρέψις πρόσθεσις τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἄνευ διαστάσεως.

## VI

Περὶ πρώτης οὖν τῆς γενέσεως εἴπωμεν, ἦν ἐξ ἀλλοιώσεώς θ' ἄμα καὶ διαπλάσεως ἐλέγομεν γίγνεσθαι.

Καταβληθέντος δὴ τοῦ σπέρματος εἰς τὴν μήτραν ἡ εἰς τὴν γῆν, οὐδὲν γὰρ διαφέρει, χρόνοις τισὶν ὠρισμένοις πάμπολλα συνίσταται μόρια τῆς γεννωμένης οὐσίας ὑγρότητι καὶ ξηρότητι καὶ ψυχρότητι καὶ θερμότητι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἄπασιν,

<sup>1</sup> *Genesis corresponds to the intrauterine life, or what we may call embryogeny. Alteration here means histogenesis or tissue-production; shaping or moulding (in Greek *diaplasia*) means the ordering of these tissues into organs (organogenesis).*

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. v.-vi

namely, Genesis, Growth, and Nutrition. Genesis, however, is not a simple activity of Nature, but is compounded of *alteration* and of *shaping*.<sup>1</sup> That is to say, in order that bone, nerve, veins, and all other [tissues] may come into existence, the *underlying substance* from which the animal springs must be *altered*; and in order that the substance so altered may acquire its appropriate shape and position, its cavities, out-growths, attachments, and so forth, it has to undergo a *shaping* or *formative* process.<sup>2</sup> One would be justified in calling this substance which undergoes alteration the *material* of the animal, just as wood is the material of a ship, and wax of an image.

*Growth* is an increase and expansion in length, breadth, and thickness of the solid parts of the animal (those which have been subjected to the moulding or shaping process). *Nutrition* is an addition to these, without expansion.

## VI

LET us speak then, in the first place, of Genesis, which, as we have said, results from *alteration* together with *shaping*.

The seed having been cast into the womb or into the earth (for there is no difference),<sup>3</sup> then, after a certain definite period, a great number of parts become constituted in the substance which is being generated; these differ as regards moisture, dryness, coldness and warmth,<sup>4</sup> and in all the other qualities

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 25, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> Note inadequate analogy of semen with fertilised seeds of plants (*i.e.* of gamete with zygote). Strictly speaking, of course, semen corresponds to pollen. cf. p. 130, note 2.

<sup>4</sup> *i.e.* the four primary qualities; cf. chap. iii. *supra.* 19

- ὅσα τούτοις ἔπεται, διαφέροντα. τὰ δ' ἐπόμενα γιγνώσκεις, εἴπερ ὅλως ἐφιλοσόφησάς τι περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς· αἱ λοιπαὶ γὰρ τῶν ἀπτῶν ὄνομαζομένων διαφορῶν ταῖς εἰρημέναις ἔπονται
- 12 πρῶται καὶ μάλιστα, μετὰ δὲ ταύτας αἱ γευσταί τε καὶ ὀσφρηταὶ καὶ ὄραται. σκληρότης μὲν οὖν καὶ μαλακότης καὶ γλισχρότης καὶ κραυρότης καὶ κουφότης καὶ βαρύτης καὶ πυκνότης καὶ ἀραιότης καὶ λειότης καὶ τραχύτης καὶ παχύτης καὶ λεπτότης ἀπταὶ διαφοραὶ καὶ εἴρηται περὶ πασῶν 'Αριστοτέλει καλῶς. οἰσθα δὲ δῆπου καὶ τὰς γευστάς τε καὶ ὀσφρητὰς καὶ ὄρατὰς διαφοράς. ὥστ', εἰ μὲν τὰς πρώτας τε καὶ στοιχειώδεις ἀλλοιωτικὰς δυνάμεις ζητοίης, ὑγρότης ἔστι καὶ ξηρότης καὶ ψυχρότης καὶ θερμότης· εἰ δὲ τὰς ἐκ τῆς τούτων κράσεως γενομένας, τοσαῦται καθ' ἕκαστον ἔσονται ζῷον, ὅσαπερ ἀν αὐτοῦ τὰ αἰσθητὰ στοιχεῖα ὑπάρχῃ· καλεῖται δ' αἰσθητὰ στοιχεῖα τὰ ὁμοιομερή πάντα τοῦ σώματος μόρια· καὶ ταῦτ' οὐκ ἐκ μεθόδου τινὸς ἀλλ' αὐτόπτην γενόμενον ἐκμαθεῖν χρὴ διὰ τῶν ἀνατομῶν.
- 'Οστοῦν δὴ καὶ χόνδρον καὶ νεῦρον καὶ ύμένα καὶ σύνδεσμον καὶ φλέβα καὶ πάνθ' ὅσα τοιαῦτα κατὰ τὴν πρώτην τοῦ ζῴου γένεσιν ἡ φύσις ἀπεργάζεται δυνάμει χρωμένη καθόλου μὲν εἰπεῖν τῇ γεννητικῇ τε καὶ ἀλλοιωτικῇ, κατὰ μέρος δὲ θερμαντικῇ τε καὶ ψυκτικῇ καὶ ξηρα-

<sup>1</sup> Various secondary or derivative differences in the tissues.  
Note pre-eminence of sense of touch.

<sup>2</sup> *De Anima*, ii. et seq.

<sup>3</sup> Lit. *homoeomerous*=of similar parts throughout, "the same all through." He refers to the elementary tissues, conceived as not being susceptible of further analysis.

which naturally derive therefrom.<sup>1</sup> These derivative qualities, you are acquainted with, if you have given any sort of scientific consideration to the question of genesis and destruction. For, first and foremost after the qualities mentioned come the other so-called *tangible* distinctions, and after them those which appeal to taste, smell, and sight. Now, tangible distinctions are hardness and softness, viscosity, friability, lightness, heaviness, density, rarity, smoothness, roughness, thickness and thinness ; all of these have been duly mentioned by Aristotle.<sup>2</sup> And of course you know those which appeal to taste, smell, and sight. Therefore, if you wish to know which alterative faculties are primary and elementary, they are moisture, dryness, coldness, and warmth, and if you wish to know which ones arise from the combination of these, they will be found to be in each animal of a number corresponding to its *sensible elements*. The name *sensible elements* is given to all the *homogeneous*<sup>3</sup> parts of the body, and these are to be detected not by any system, but by personal observation of dissections.<sup>4</sup>

Now Nature constructs bone, cartilage, nerve, membrane, ligament, vein, and so forth, at the first stage of the animal's genesis,<sup>5</sup> employing at this task a faculty which is, in general terms, generative and alterative, and, in more detail, warming, chilling, drying, or moistening ; or such as spring from the

<sup>1</sup> That is, by the bodily eye, and not by the mind's eye. The observer is here called an *autoptes* or "eye-witness." Our medical term *autopsy* thus means literally a *persona inspection* of internal parts, ordinarily hidden.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. "alteration" is the earlier of the two stages which constitute embryogeny or "genesis." cf. p. 18, note 1.

τική καὶ ὑγραντική καὶ ταῖς ἐκ τῆς τούτων κράσεως γενομέναις, οἷον ὀστοποιητική τε καὶ νευροποιητική καὶ χονδροποιητική<sup>1</sup> σαφηνείας γὰρ ἔνεκα καὶ τούτοις τοῖς ὄνόμασι χρηστέον.

Ἐστι γοῦν καὶ ἡ ἴδια σάρξ τοῦ ἥπατος ἐκ τούτου τοῦ γένους καὶ ἡ τοῦ σπληνὸς καὶ ἡ τῶν νεφρῶν καὶ ἡ τοῦ πνεύμονος καὶ ἡ τῆς καρδίας οὕτω δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου τὸ ἴδιον σῶμα καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς καὶ τοῦ στομάχου καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων καὶ τῶν ὑστερῶν αἰσθητὸν στοιχεῖόν ἐστιν ὁμοιομερές τε καὶ ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἀσυνθετον<sup>ν</sup> ἐὰν γὰρ ἔξελης ἐκάστου τῶν εἱρημένων τὰς ἀρτηρίας τε καὶ τὰς φλέβας καὶ τὰ νεύρα, τὸ ὑπόλοιπον σῶμα τὸ καθ' ἔκαστον ὄργανον ἀπλοῦν ἐστι καὶ στοιχειώδες ὡς πρὸς αἰσθησιν. ὅσα δὲ τῶν τοιούτων ὄργάνων ἐκ δυοῖν σύγκειται χιτώνων οὐχ ὁμοίων μὲν ἀλλήλοις, ἀπλοῦ δ' ἐκατέρου, τούτων οἵ χιτῶνές εἰσι τὰ στοιχεῖα καθάπερ τῆς τε γαστρὸς καὶ τοῦ στομάχου καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων καὶ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν, καὶ καθ' ἐκάτερον γε τῶν χιτώνων ἴδιος ἡ ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμις ἡ ἐκ τοῦ

- 14 παρὰ τῆς || μητρὸς ἐπιμηνίου γεννήσασα τὸ μόριον, ὥστε τὰς κατὰ μέρος ἀλλοιωτικὰς δυνάμεις τοσαύτας εἶναι καθ' ἔκαστον ζῷον, ὅσα περ ἀν ἔχῃ τὰ στοιχειώδη μόρια. καὶ μέν γε καὶ τὰς ἐνεργείας ἴδιας ἐκάστῳ τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἀναγκαῖον ὑπάρχειν ὥσπερ καὶ τὰς χρείας, οἷον καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν εἰς τὴν κύστιν διηκόντων πόρων, οἱ δὴ καὶ οὐρητῆρες καλοῦνται. οὗτοι

<sup>1</sup> The terms Galen actually uses are: *ostopoietic*, *neuro-poietic*, *chondropoietic*.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. vi

blending of these, for example, the bone-producing, nerve-producing, and cartilage-producing faculties<sup>1</sup> (since for the sake of clearness these names must be used as well).

Now the peculiar<sup>2</sup> flesh of the liver is of this kind as well, also that of the spleen, that of the kidneys, that of the lungs, and that of the heart; so also the proper substance of the brain, stomach, gullet, intestines, and uterus is a *sensible element*, of similar parts all through, simple, and uncompounded. That is to say, if you remove from each of the organs mentioned its arteries, veins, and nerves,<sup>3</sup> the substance remaining in each organ is, from the point of view of the senses, simple and elementary. As regards those organs consisting of two dissimilar coats,<sup>4</sup> of which each is simple, of these organs the coats are the elements—for example, the coats of the stomach, oesophagus, intestines, and arteries; each of these two coats has an alterative faculty peculiar to it, which has engendered it from the menstrual blood of the mother. Thus the *special* alterative faculties in each animal are of the same number as the elementary parts<sup>5</sup>; and further, the *activities* must necessarily correspond each to one of the special parts, just as each part has its special *use*—for example, those ducts which extend from the kidneys into the bladder, and which are called *ureters*; for these are not arteries, since they do not pulsate nor do they consist of two coats; and they

<sup>2</sup> As we should say, *parenchyma* (a term used by Erastistratus).

<sup>3</sup> These were all the elementary tissues that Aristotle, for example, had recognized; other tissues (*e.g.* flesh or muscle) he believed to be complexes of these.

<sup>4</sup> Or *tunics*.

<sup>5</sup> *i.e.* tissues.

γὰρ οὗτ' ἀρτηρίαι εἰσίν, ὅτι μήτε σφύζουσι μήτ' ἐκ δυοῖν χιτώνων συνεστήκασιν, οὔτε φλέβες, ὅτι μήθ' αἷμα περιέχουσι μήτ' ἔοικεν αὐτῶν ὁ χιτὼν κατά τι τῷ τῆς φλεβός ἀλλὰ καὶ νεύρων ἐπὶ πλέον ἀφεστήκασιν ἢ τῶν εἰρημένων.

Τί ποτ' οὖν εἰσιν; ἐρωτᾷ τις, ὥσπερ ἀναγκαῖον ὃν ἄπαν μόριον ἢ ἀρτηρίαν ἢ φλέβα ἢ νεύρον ὑπάρχειν ἢ ἐκ τούτων πεπλέχθαι καὶ μὴ τοῦτ' αὐτὸ τὸ οὐν λεγόμενον, ὡς ἴδιος ἐκάστῳ τῶν κατὰ μέρος ὀργάνων ἐστὶν ἢ οὐσία. καὶ γὰρ καὶ αἱ κύστεις ἐκάτεραι ἢ τε τὸ οὐρον ὑποδεχομένη καὶ ἡ τὴν ξανθὴν χολὴν οὐ μόνον τῶν ἀλλων ἀπάντων ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀλλήλων διαφέρουσι καὶ οἱ εἰς τὸ ἡπαρ

15 ἀποφιγμένοι || πόροι, καθάπερ στόμαχοί τινες ἀπὸ τῆς χοληδόχου κύστεως, οὐδὲν οὕτ' ἀρτηρίαις οὔτε φλεψὶν οὔτε νεύροις ἐοίκασιν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν ἀλλοις τέ τισι κάν τοῖς περὶ τῆς Ἰπποκράτους ἀνατομῆς εἴρηται.

Αἱ δὲ κατὰ μέρος ἄπασαι δυνάμεις τῆς φύσεως αἱ ἀλλοιωτικαὶ αὐτὴν μὲν τὴν οὐσίαν τῶν χιτώνων τῆς κοιλίας καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων καὶ τῶν ὑστερῶν ἀπετέλεσαν, οἵαπέρ ἐστι· τὴν δὲ σύνθεσιν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἐμφυομένων πλοκὴν καὶ τὴν εἰς τὸ ἔντερον ἔκφυσιν καὶ τὴν τῆς ἔνδον κοιλότητος ἴδεαν καὶ τάλλ' ὅσα τοιαῦτα δύναμίς τις ἔτέρα διέπλασεν, ἦν διαπλαστικὴν ὄνομάζομεν, ἦν δὲ καὶ τεχνικὴν εἶναι λέγομεν, μᾶλλον δὲ ἀρίστην καὶ ἄκραν τέχνην καὶ πάντα τινὸς ἔνεκα ποιοῦσαν, ὡς μηδὲν ἀργὸν εἶναι μηδὲ περιττὸν μηδὲ δλως

<sup>1</sup> As, for example, Aristotle had held; cf. p. 23, note 3. Galen added many new tissues to those described by Aristotle.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. vi

are not veins, since they neither contain blood, nor do their coats in any way resemble those of veins; from nerves they differ still more than from the structures mentioned.

"What, then, are they?" someone asks—as though every part must necessarily be either an artery, a vein, a nerve, or a complex of these,<sup>1</sup> and as though the truth were not what I am now stating, namely, that every one of the various organs has its own particular substance. For in fact the two bladders—that which receives the urine, and that which receives the yellow bile—not only differ from all other organs, but also from one another. Further, the ducts which spring out like kinds of conduits from the gall-bladder and which pass into the liver have no resemblance either to arteries, veins or nerves. But these parts have been treated at a greater length in my work "On the Anatomy of Hippocrates," as well as elsewhere.

As for the actual substance of the coats of the stomach, intestine, and uterus, each of these has been rendered what it is by a special alterative faculty of Nature; while the bringing of these together,<sup>2</sup> the combination therewith of the structures which are inserted into them, the outgrowth into the intestine,<sup>3</sup> the shape of the inner cavities, and the like, have all been determined by a faculty which we call the shaping or formative faculty<sup>4</sup>; this faculty we also state to be *artistic*—nay, the best and highest art—doing everything for some purpose, so that

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *synthesis*.

<sup>3</sup> By this is meant the *duodenum*, considered as an out-growth or prolongation of the stomach towards the intestines.

<sup>4</sup> cf. p. 19, note 2.

## GALEN

οῦτως ἔχον, ὡς δύνασθαι βέλτιον ἐτέρως ἔχειν.  
ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων  
ἀποδείξομεν. ||

## VII

- 16     Ἐπὶ δὲ τὴν αὐξητικὴν ἥδη μεταβάντες δύναμιν  
αὐτὸ τοῦθ<sup>1</sup> ὑπομνήσωμεν πρῶτον, ὡς ὑπάρχει  
μὲν καὶ αὐτὴ τοῖς κυουμένοις ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ θρεπ-  
τική· ἀλλ' οἶον ὑπηρέτιδές τινές εἰσι τηνικαῦτα  
τῶν προειρημένων δυνάμεων, οὐκ ἐν αὐταῖς  
ἔχουσαι τὸ πᾶν κῦρος. ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ τέλειον  
ἀπολάβῃ μέγεθος τὸ ζῷον, ἐν τῷ μετὰ τὴν  
ἀποκύησιν χρόνῳ παντὶ μέχρι τῆς ἀκμῆς ἡ μὲν  
αὐξητικὴ τηνικαῦτα κρατεῖ· βοηθοὶ δ' αὐτῆς καὶ  
οἶον ὑπηρέτιδες ἡ τ' ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμίς ἐστι  
καὶ ἡ θρεπτική. τί οὖν τὸ ἴδιον ἐστι τῆς αὐ-  
ξητικῆς δυνάμεως; εἰς πᾶν μέρος ἐκτεῖναι τὰ  
πεφυκότα. καλεῖται δ' οὕτω τὰ στερεὰ μόρια  
τοῦ σώματος, ἀρτηρίαι καὶ φλέβες καὶ νεῦρα καὶ  
όστα καὶ χόνδροι καὶ ὑμένες καὶ σύνδεσμοι καὶ οἱ  
χιτῶνες ἅπαντες, οὓς στοιχειώδεις τε καὶ ὁμοιο-  
μερεῖς καὶ ἀπλοῦς ὀλίγον ἔμπροσθεν ἐκαλούμεν.   
ὅτῳ δὲ τρόπῳ τὴν εἰς πᾶν μέρος ἕκτασιν ἵσχουσιν,  
ἐγὼ φράσω παράδειγμά τι πρότερον εἰπὼν ἔνεκα  
τοῦ σαφοῦς. ||
- 17     Τὰς κύστεις τῶν ὑῶν λαβόντες οἱ παιδεῖς  
πληροῦσί τε πνεύματος καὶ τρίβουσιν ἐπὶ τῆς  
τέφρας πλησίον τοῦ πυρός, ὡς ἀλεαίνεσθαι μέν,  
βλάπτεσθαι δὲ μηδέν· καὶ πολλή γ' αὗτη ἡ

---

<sup>1</sup> Lit. the auxetic or incremental faculty.

there is nothing ineffective or superfluous, or capable of being better disposed. This, however, I shall demonstrate in my work "On the Use of Parts."

## VII

PASSING now to the faculty of Growth<sup>1</sup> let us first mention that this, too, is present in the foetus *in utero* as is also the nutritive faculty, but that at that stage these two faculties are, as it were, *handmaids* to those already mentioned,<sup>2</sup> and do not possess in themselves supreme authority. When, however, the animal<sup>3</sup> has attained its complete size, then, during the whole period following its birth and until the acme is reached, the faculty of growth is predominant, while the alterative and nutritive faculties are accessory—in fact, act as its handmaids. What, then, is the property of this faculty of growth? To extend in every direction that which has already come into existence—that is to say, the solid parts of the body, the arteries, veins, nerves, bones, cartilages, membranes, ligaments, and the various *coats* which we have just called elementary, homogeneous, and simple. And I shall state in what way they gain this extension in every direction, first giving an illustration for the sake of clearness.

Children take the bladders of pigs, fill them with air, and then rub them on ashes near the fire, so as to warm, but not to injure them. This is a common

<sup>2</sup> i.e. to the alterative and shaping faculties (histogenetic and organogenetic).

<sup>3</sup> If the reading is correct we can only suppose that Galen meant *the embryo*.

παιδιὰ περί τε τὴν Ἰωνίαν καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις ἔθνεσιν οὐκ ὀλίγοις ἐστίν. ἐπὶ λέγουσι δὲ δὴ καὶ τιν' ἐπη τρίβοντες ἐν μέτρῳ τέ τινι καὶ μέλει καὶ ρύθμῳ καὶ ἔστι πάντα τὰ ρήματα ταῦτα παρακέλευσις τῇ κύστει πρὸς τὴν αὐξῆσιν. ἐπειδὰν δὲ ίκανῶς αὐτοῖς διατετάσθαι δοκῆ, πάλιν ἐμφυσώσι τε καὶ ἐπιδιατείνουσι καὶ αὐθις τρίβονται καὶ τοῦτο πλεονάκις ποιοῦσιν, ἄχρις ἀν αὐτοῖς ἡ κύστις ίκανῶς ἔχειν δοκῆ τῆς αὐξήσεως. ἀλλ' ἐν τούτοις γε τοῖς ἔργοις τῶν παιδῶν ἐναργῶς, ὅσον εἰς μέγεθος ἐπιδίδωσιν ἡ ἐντὸς εὐρυχωρία τῆς κύστεως, τοσοῦτον ἀναγκαῖον ἐις λεπτότητα καθαιρεῖσθαι τὸ σῶμα καὶ εἴ γε τὴν λεπτότητα ταύτην ἀνατρέφειν οἷοί τ' ἡσαν οἱ παιδες, ὅμοιως ἀν τῇ φύσει τὴν κύστιν ἐκ μικρᾶς μεγάλην ἀπειργάζοντο. νυνὶ δὲ τοῦτ' αὐτοῖς ἐνδεῖ τὸ ἔργον οὐδὲ καθ' ἕνα τρόπον εἰς μίμησιν ἐνδεχό-  
18 μενον ἀχθῆναι μὴ δι τοῖς || παισὶν ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ἄλλῳ τινί· μόνης γὰρ τῆς φύσεως ἴδιον ἐστιν.

"Ωστέ ἡδη σοι δῆλον, ὡς ἀναγκαία τοῖς αὐξανομένοις ἡ θρέψις. εἰ γὰρ διατείνοιτο μέν, ἀνατρέφοιτο δὲ μή, φαντασιαν ψευδῆ μᾶλλον, οὐκ αὐξῆσιν ἀληθῆ τὰ τοιαῦτα σώματα κτήσεται. καίτοι καὶ τὸ διατείνεσθαι πάντη μόνοις τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως αὐξανομένοις ὑπάρχει. τὰ γὰρ ὑφ' ἡμῶν διατεινόμενα σώματα κατὰ μίαν τινὰ διάστασιν τοῦτο πάσχοντα μειοῦται ταῖς λοιπαῖς, οὐδὲ ἔστιν εὑρεῖν οὐδέν, δι συνεχὲς ἔτι μένον καὶ ἀδιάσπαστον εἰς τὰς τρεῖς διαστάσεις ἐπεκτεῖναι δυνάμεθα. μόνης οὖν τῆς φύσεως τὸ πάντη διστάναι συνεχὲς ἑαυτῷ μένον ἔτι καὶ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἅπασαν ἴδεαι φυλάττον τὸ σῶμα.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. vii

game in the district of Ionia, and among not a few other nations. As they rub, they sing songs, to a certain measure, time, and rhythm, and all their words are an exhortation to the bladder to increase in size. When it appears to them fairly well distended, they again blow air into it and expand it further; then they rub it again. This they do several times, until the bladder seems to them to have become large enough. Now, clearly, in these doings of the children, the more the interior cavity of the bladder increases in size, the thinner, necessarily, does its substance become. But, if the children were able to bring nourishment to this thin part, then they would make the bladder big in the same way that Nature does. As it is, however, they cannot do what Nature does, for to imitate this is beyond the power not only of children, but of any one soever; it is a property of Nature alone.

It will now, therefore, be clear to you that *nutrition* is a necessity for growing things. For if such bodies were distended, but not at the same time nourished, they would take on a false appearance of growth, not a true growth. And further, to be distended *in all directions* belongs only to bodies whose growth is directed by Nature; for those which are distended by us undergo this distension in one direction but grow less in the others; it is impossible to find a body which will remain entire and not be torn through whilst we stretch it in the three dimensions. Thus Nature alone has the power to expand a body in all directions so that it remains unruptured and preserves completely its previous form.

## GALEN

Καὶ τοῦτ' ἔστιν ἡ αὐξησις ἄνευ τῆς ἐπιρρεούσης τε καὶ προσπλαττομένης τροφῆς μὴ δυναμένη γενέσθαι.

## VIII

Καὶ τοίνυν ὁ λόγος ἵκειν ἔοικεν ὁ περὶ τῆς θρέψεως, διὸ δὴ λοιπός ἔστι καὶ τρίτος ὃν ἐξ ἀρχῆς προύθέμεθα. τοῦ γὰρ ἐπιρρέοντος ἐν εἴδει 19 τροφῆς παντὶ || μορίῳ τοῦ τρεφομένου σώματος προσπλαττομένου θρέψις μὲν ἡ ἐνέργεια, θρεπτικὴ δὲ δύναμις ἡ αἰτία. ἀλλοίωσις μὲν δὴ κάνταῦθα τὸ γένος τῆς ἐνέργειας, ἀλλ’ οὐχ οἵαπερ ἡ ἐν τῇ γενέσει. ἐκεῖ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ὅν πρότερον ὕστερον ἐγένετο, κατὰ δὲ τὴν θρέψιν τῷ ηδη γεγονότι συνεξομοιοῦται τὸ ἐπιρρέον καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' εὐλόγως ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν γένεσιν, ταύτην δὲ ἔξομοίωσιν ὡνόμασαν.

## IX

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ περὶ τῶν τριῶν δυνάμεων τῆς φύσεως αὐτάρκως εἴρηται καὶ φαίνεται μηδεμιᾶς ἄλλης προσδεῖσθαι τὸ ζῷον, ἔχον γε καὶ ὅπως αὐξηθῇ καὶ ὅπως τελειωθῇ καὶ ὅπως ἔως πλείστου διαφυλαχθῇ, δόξειε μὲν ἀν ἵσως ἴκανῶς ἔχειν ὁ λόγος οὗτος ηδη καὶ πάσας ἐξηγεῖσθαι τὰς τῆς φύσεως δυνάμεις. ἀλλ’ εἴ τις πάλιν ἐννοήσειεν, ώς οὐ-

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. vii.-ix

Such then is *growth*, and it cannot occur without the nutriment which flows to the part and is worked up into it.

### VIII

We have, then, it seems, arrived at the subject of Nutrition, which is the third and remaining consideration which we proposed at the outset. For, when the matter which flows to each part of the body in the form of nutriment is being worked up into it, this activity is *nutrition*, and its cause is the *nutritive faculty*. Of course, the kind of activity here involved is also an *alteration*, but not an alteration like that occurring at the stage of *genesis*.<sup>1</sup> For in the latter case something comes into existence which did not exist previously, while in nutrition the inflowing material becomes assimilated to that which has already come into existence. Therefore, the former kind of alteration has with reason been termed *genesis*, and the latter, *assimilation*.

### IX

Now, since the three faculties of Nature have been exhaustively dealt with, and the animal would appear not to need any others (being possessed of the means for growing, for attaining completion, and for maintaining itself as long a time as possible), this treatise might seem to be already complete, and to constitute an exposition of all the faculties of Nature. If, however, one considers that it has not

<sup>1</sup> i.e. not the pre-natal development of tissue already described. cf. chap. vi.

## GALEN

δευὸς οὐδέπω τῶν τοῦ ζῷου μορίων ἐφήψατο,  
κοιλίας λέγω καὶ ἐντέρων καὶ ἡπατος καὶ τῶν  
όμοίων, οὐδ' ἔξηγήσατο τὰς ἐν αὐτοῖς δυνάμεις,  
αὐθις δόξειεν ἀν οἰον προοίμιον τι μόνου εἰρῆσθαι  
20 τῆς χρησίμου διδασκαλίας. || τὸ γὰρ σύμπαν ὡδ'  
ἔχει. γένεσις καὶ αὔξησις καὶ θρέψις τὰ πρώτα  
καὶ οἰον κεφάλαια τῶν ἔργων ἔστι τῆς φύσεως.  
ώστε καὶ αἱ τούτων ἔργαστικαὶ δυνάμεις αἱ  
πρώται τρεῖς εἰσὶ καὶ κυριώταται· δέονται δ' εἰς  
ὑπηρεσίαν, ὡς ἥδη δέδεικται, καὶ ἄλληλων καὶ  
ἄλλων. τίνων μὲν οὖν ἡ γεννητική τε καὶ αὔξη-  
τικὴ δέονται, εἴρηται, τίνων δ' ἡ θρεπτική, νῦν  
εἰρήσεται.

## X

Δοκῶ γάρ μοι δείξειν τὰ περὶ τὴν τῆς τροφῆς  
οἰκονομίαν ὅργανά τε καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις αὐτῶν  
διὰ ταύτην γεγονότα. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ ἡ ἐνέργεια  
ταύτης τῆς δυνάμεως ἔξομοίωσίς ἔστιν, ὁμοιού-  
σθαι δὲ καὶ μεταβάλλειν εἰς ἄλληλα πᾶσι τοῖς  
οὖσιν ἀδύνατον, εἰ μή τινα ἔχοι κοινωνίαν ἥδη  
καὶ συγγένειαν ἐν ταῖς ποιότησι, διὰ τούτο  
πρῶτον μὲν οὐκ ἐκ πάντων ἐδεσμάτων πᾶν ζῷον  
τρέφεσθαι πέφυκεν, ἐπειτα δ' οὐδ' ἔξ ὧν οἰόν τ'  
ἔστιν οὐδ' ἐκ τούτων παραχρῆμα, καὶ διὰ ταύτην

<sup>1</sup> Administration, lit. "economy."

<sup>2</sup> The activation or functioning of this faculty, the faculty in actual operation. cf. p. 3, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. ix.-x

yet touched upon any of *the parts* of the animal (I mean the stomach, intestines, liver, and the like), and that it has not dealt with the faculties resident in these, it will seem as though merely a kind of introduction had been given to the practical parts of our teaching. For the whole matter is as follows : Genesis, growth, and nutrition are the first, and, so to say, the principal effects of Nature ; similarly also the faculties which produce these effects—the first faculties—are three in number, and are the most dominating of all. But as has already been shown, these need the service both of each other, and of yet different faculties. Now, these which the faculties of generation and growth require have been stated. I shall now say what ones the nutritive faculty requires.

### X

FOR I believe that I shall prove that the organs which have to do with the disposal<sup>1</sup> of the nutriment, as also their faculties, exist for the sake of this *nutritive faculty*. For since the action of this faculty<sup>2</sup> is *assimilation*, and it is impossible for anything to be assimilated by, and to change into anything else unless they already possess a certain *community and affinity* in their qualities,<sup>3</sup> therefore, in the first place, any animal cannot naturally derive nourishment from any kind of food, and secondly, even in the case of those from which it can do so, it cannot do this at once. Therefore, by reason of

<sup>1</sup> “Un rapport commun et une affinité” (Daremburg).  
“Societatem aliquam cognitionemque in qualitatibus” (Linacre). cf. p. 36, note 2.

τὴν ἀνάγκην πλειόνων ὅργανων ἀλλοιωτικῶν τῆς  
 21 τροφῆς ἔκαστον || τῶν ζῷων χρήζει. ἵνα μὲν γὰρ τὸ ξανθὸν ἐρυθρὸν γένηται καὶ τὸ ἐρυθρὸν ξανθόν, ἀπλῆς καὶ μιᾶς δεῖται τῆς ἀλλοιώσεως· ἵνα δὲ τὸ λευκὸν μέλαν καὶ τὸ μέλαν λευκόν, ἀπασῶν τῶν μεταξύ. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ τὸ μαλακώτατον οὐκ ἀν ἀθρόως σκληρότατον καὶ τὸ σκληρότατον οὐκ ἀν ἀθρόως μαλακώτατον γένοιτο, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ τὸ δυσωδέστατον εὐωδέστατον οὐδ' ἔμπαλιν τὸ εὐωδέστατον δυσωδέστατον ἔξαιφνης γένοιτ' αὖ.

Πῶς οὖν ἔξ αἵματος ὄστοῦν ἄν ποτε γένοιτο μὴ παχυνθέντος γε πρότερον ἐπὶ πλεῖστον αὐτοῦ καὶ λευκανθέντος ἡ πῶς ἔξ ἄρτου τὸ αἷμα μὴ κατὰ βραχὺ μὲν ἀποθεμένου τὴν λευκότητα, κατὰ βραχὺ δὲ λαμβάνοντος τὴν ἐρυθρότητα; σάρκα μὲν γὰρ ἔξ αἵματος γενέσθαι ῥάστον· εἰ γὰρ εἰς τοσοῦτον αὐτὸν παχύνειεν ἡ φύσις, ὡς σύστασίν τινα σχεῖν καὶ μηκέτ’ εἶναι ῥυτόν, ἡ πρώτη καὶ νεοπαγῆς οὔτως ἀν εἴη σάρξ· ὄστοῦν δὲ ἵνα γένηται, πολλοῦ μὲν δεῖται χρόνου, πολλῆς δὲ ἐργασίας καὶ μεταβολῆς τῷ αἷματι. ὅτι δὲ καὶ τῷ ἄρτῳ 22 καὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον θριδα<sup>||</sup>κίνη καὶ τεύτλῳ καὶ τοῖς ὁμοίοις παμπόλλης δεῖται τῆς ἀλλοιώσεως εἰς αἵματος γένεσιν, οὐδὲ τοῦτ’ ἄδηλον.

“Εν μὲν δὴ τοῦτ’ αἴτιον τοῦ πολλὰ γενέσθαι τὰ περὶ τὴν τῆς τροφῆς ἀλλοίωσιν ὅργανα. δεύτερον δὲ ἡ τῶν περιττωμάτων φύσις. ὡς γὰρ ὑπὸ βοτανῶν οὐδὲ ὅλως δυνάμεθα τρέφεσθαι, καίτοι τῶν βοσκημάτων τρεφομένων, οὔτως ὑπὸ ῥαφανί-

---

<sup>1</sup> Lit. “necessity”; more *restrictive*, however, than our “law of Nature.” cf. p. 314, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> His point is that no great change, in colours or in anything else, can take place at one step.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. x

this law,<sup>1</sup> every animal needs several organs for altering the nutriment. For in order that the yellow may become red, and the red yellow, one simple process of alteration is required, but in order that the white may become black, and the black white, all the intermediate stages are needed.<sup>2</sup> So also, a thing which is very soft cannot all at once become very hard, nor *vice versa*; nor, similarly can anything which has a very bad smell suddenly become quite fragrant, nor again, can the converse happen.

How, then, could blood ever turn into bone, without having first become, as far as possible, thickened and white? And how could bread turn into blood without having gradually parted with its whiteness and gradually acquired redness? Thus it is quite easy for blood to become flesh; for, if Nature thicken it to such an extent that it acquires a certain consistency and ceases to be fluid, it thus becomes original newly-formed flesh; but in order that blood may turn into bone, much time is needed and much elaboration and transformation of the blood. Further, it is quite clear that bread, and, more particularly lettuce, beet, and the like, require a great deal of alteration in order to become blood.

This, then, is one reason why there are so many organs concerned in the alteration of food. A second reason is the nature of the *superfluities*.<sup>3</sup> For, as we are unable to draw any nourishment from grass, although this is possible for cattle, similarly we can derive nourishment from radishes, albeit not

<sup>3</sup> Not quite our “waste products,” since these are considered as being partly synthetic, whereas the Greek *peritomata* were simply superfluous substances which could not be used and were thrown aside.

δος τρεφόμεθα μέν, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν κρεῶν.  
 τούτων μὲν γὰρ ὄλίγου δεῦν ὅλων ἡ φύσις ἡμῶν  
 κρατεῖ καὶ μεταβάλλει καὶ ἀλλοιοῖ καὶ χρηστὸν  
 ἐξ αὐτῶν αἷμα συνίστησιν· ἐν δὲ τῇ ῥαφανίδι τὸ  
 μὲν οἰκεῖόν τε καὶ μεταβληθῆναι δυνάμενον, μόγις  
 καὶ τοῦτο καὶ σὺν πολλῇ τῇ κατεργασίᾳ, παντά-  
 πασιν ἐλάχιστον· ὅλη δὲ ὄλιγου δεῦν ἔστι περιτ-  
 τωματικὴ καὶ διεξέρχεται τὰ τῆς πέψεως ὄργανα,  
 βραχέος ἐξ αὐτῆς εἰς τὰς φλέβας ἀναληφθέντος  
 αἵματος καὶ οὐδὲ τούτου τελέως χρηστοῦ. δευτέ-  
 ρας οὖν αὐθις ἐδέησε διακρίσεως τῇ φύσει τῶν ἐν  
 ταῖς φλεψὶ περιττωμάτων. καὶ χρεία καὶ τού-  
 23 τοις ὄδῶν τέ τινων ἐτέρων ἐπὶ τὰς ἐκ||κρίσεις αὐτὰ  
 παραγουσῶν, ὡς μὴ λυμαίνοιτο τοῖς χρηστοῖς,  
 ὑποδοχῶν τέ τινων οἷον δεξαμενῶν, ἐν αἷς ὅταν  
 εἰς ἰκανὸν πλῆθος ἀφίκηται, τηνικαῦτ' ἐκκριθή-  
 σται.

Δεύτερον δή σοι καὶ τοῦτο τὸ γένος τῶν ἐν τῷ  
 σώματι μορίων ἐξεύρηται τοῖς περιττώμασι τῆς  
 τροφῆς ἀνακείμενον. ἄλλο δὲ τρίτον ὑπὲρ τοῦ  
 πάντη φέρεσθαι, καθάπερ τινὲς ὄδοι πολλαὶ διὰ  
 τοῦ σώματος ὅλου κατατεμημέναι.

Μία μὲν γὰρ εἴσοδος ἡ διὰ τοῦ στόματος ἄπασι  
 τοῖς σιτίοις, οὐχ ἐν δὲ τὸ τρεφόμενον ἀλλὰ  
 πάμπολλά τε καὶ πάμπολυ διεστῶτα. μὴ τοίνυν  
 θαύμαζε τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὄργάνων, ὅσα θρέψεως  
 ἔνεκεν ἡ φύσις ἐδημούργησε. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοι-

<sup>1</sup> Note “our natures,” cf. p. 12, note 4; p. 47, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> The term *οἰκεῖος*, here rendered *appropriate*, is explained on p. 33. cf. also footnote on same page. Linacre often translated it *conveniens*, and it may usually be rendered *proper*, *peculiar*, *own special*, or *own particular* in English. Sometimes it is almost equal to *akin*, *cognate*, *related*: cf.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. x

to the same extent as from meat; for almost the whole of the latter is mastered by our natures<sup>1</sup>; it is transformed and altered and constituted useful blood; but, in the radish, what is appropriate<sup>2</sup> and capable of being altered (and that only with difficulty, and with much labour) is the very smallest part; almost the whole of it is surplus matter, and passes through the digestive organs, only a very little being taken up into the veins as blood—nor is this itself entirely utilisable blood. Nature, therefore, had need of a second process of separation for the superfluities in the veins. Moreover, these superfluities need, on the one hand, certain fresh routes to conduct them to the outlets, so that they may not spoil the useful substances, and they also need certain *reservoirs*, as it were, in which they are collected till they reach a sufficient quantity, and are then discharged.

Thus, then, you have discovered bodily parts of a second kind, consecrated in this case to the [removal of the] superfluities of the food. There is, however, also a third kind, for carrying the pabulum in every direction; these are like a number of roads intersecting the whole body.

Thus there is one entrance—that through the mouth—for all the various articles of food. What receives nourishment, however, is not one single part, but a great many parts, and these widely separated; do not be surprised, therefore, at the abundance of organs which Nature has created for the purpose of nutrition. For those of them which have to do with p. 319, note 2. With Galen's *oikeios* and *ἀλλότριος* we may compare the German terms *eigen* and *fremd* used by Aber-halden in connection with his theory of defensive ferments in the blood-serum.

οῦντα προπαρασκευάζει τὴν ἐπιτήδειον ἑκάστῳ μορίῳ τροφήν, τὰ δὲ διακρίνει τὰ περιττώματα, τὰ δὲ παραπέμπει, τὰ δ' ὑποδέχεται, τὰ δ' ἔκκρινει, τὰ δ' ὄδοι τῆς πάντη φορᾶς εἰσι τῶν χρηστῶν χυμῶν, ὥστ', εἴπερ βούλει τὰς δυνάμεις τῆς φύσεως ἀπάσας ἐκμαθεῖν, ὑπὲρ ἑκάστου τούτων ἀν εἰη σοι τῶν ὄργάνων ἐπισκεπτέον.

24 Ἐρχὴ δὲ αὐτῶν τῆς διδασκαλίας, ὅσα || τοῦ τέλους ἐγγὺς ἔργα τε τῆς φύσεώς ἔστι καὶ μόρια καὶ δυνάμεις αὐτῶν.

## XI

Αὐτοῦ δὲ δὴ πάλιν ἀναμνηστέον ἡμῖν τοῦ τέλους, οὐπερ ἔνεκα τοσαῦτά τε καὶ τοιαῦτα τῇ φύσει δεδημιούργηται μόρια. τὸ μὲν οὖν ὄνομα τοῦ πράγματος, ὥσπερ καὶ πρότερον εἴρηται, θρέψις· ὁ δὲ κατὰ τοῦνομα λόγος ομοίωσις τοῦ τρέφοντος τῷ τρεφομένῳ. ἵνα δὲ αὗτη γένηται, προηγήσασθαι χρὴ πρόσφυσιν, ἵνα δὲ ἐκείνη, πρόσθεσιν. ἐπειδὴν γὰρ ἐκπέσῃ τῶν ἀγγείων ὁ μέλλων θρέψειν ὅτιοῦν τῶν τοῦ ζώου μορίων χυμός, εἰς ἅπαν αὐτὸ διασπείρεται πρῶτον, ἐπειτα προστίθεται κάπειτα προσφύεται καὶ τελέως ὁμοιοῦται.

<sup>1</sup> Transit, cf. p. 6, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. of the living organism, cf. p. 2, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. with nutrition.

<sup>4</sup> We might perhaps say, more shortly, "assimilation of food to feeder," or, "of food to fed"; Linacre renders, "nutrimenti cum nutritio assimilatio."

alteration prepare the nutriment suitable for each part; others separate out the superfluities; some pass these along, others store them up, others excrete them; some, again, are paths for the transit<sup>1</sup> in all directions of the *utilisable* juices. So, if you wish to gain a thorough acquaintance with all the faculties of Nature,<sup>2</sup> you will have to consider each one of these organs.

Now in giving an account of these we must begin with those effects of Nature, together with their corresponding parts and faculties, which are closely connected with the purpose to be achieved.<sup>3</sup>

## XI

LET us once more, then, recall the actual purpose for which Nature has constructed all these parts. Its name, as previously stated, is *nutrition*, and the definition corresponding to the name is: *an assimilation of that which nourishes to that which receives nourishment*.<sup>4</sup> And in order that this may come about, we must assume a preliminary process of *adhesion*,<sup>5</sup> and for that, again, one of *presentation*.<sup>6</sup> For whenever the juice which is destined to nourish any of the parts of the animal is emitted from the vessels, it is in the first place dispersed all through this part, next it is presented, and next it adheres, and becomes completely assimilated.

<sup>5</sup> Lit. *prosphysis*, i.e. attachment, implantation.

<sup>6</sup> Lit. *prosthesis*, "apposition." One is almost tempted to retain the terms *prosthesis* and *prosphysis* in translation, as they obviously correspond much more closely to Galen's physiological conceptions than any English or semi-English words can.

Δηλοῦσι δ' αἱ καλούμεναι λεύκαι τὴν διαφορὰν ὅμοιώσεως τε καὶ προσφύσεως, ὥσπερ τὸ γένος ἐκεῖνο τῶν ὑδέρων, ὃ τινες ὀνομάζουσιν ἀνὰ σάρκα, διορίζει σαφῶς πρόσθεσιν προσφύσεως. οὐ γάρ ἐνδείᾳ δήπου τῆς ἐπιρρεούσης ὑγρότητος, ὡς ἔνιαι τῶν ἀτροφιῶν τε καὶ φθίσεων, ἡ τοῦ 25 τοιούτου γένεσις ὑδέρου || συντελεῖται. φαίνεται γάρ ἵκανῶς ἡ τε σάρξ ὑγρὰ καὶ διάβροχος ἔκαστόν τε τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ σώματος μορίων ὡσαύτως διακείμενον. ἀλλὰ πρόσθεσις μέν τις γίγνεται τῆς ἐπιφερομένης τροφῆς, ἅτε δὲ ὑδατωδεστέρας οὖσης ἔτι καὶ μὴ πάνυ τι κεχυμωμένης μηδὲ τὸ γλίσχρον ἐκεῖνο καὶ κολλώδες, ὃ δὴ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας οἰκονομίᾳ προσγίγνεται, κεκτημένης ἡ πρόσφυσις ἀδύνατός ἐστιν ἐπιτελεῖσθαι πλήθει λεπτῆς ὑγρότητος ἀπέπτου διαρρεούσης τε καὶ ράδίως ὀλισθαινούσης ἀπὸ τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ σώματος μορίων τῆς τροφῆς. ἐν δὲ ταῖς λεύκαις πρόσφυσις μέν τις γίγνεται τῆς τροφῆς, οὐ μὴν ἔξομοίωσίς γε. καὶ δῆλον ἐν τῷδε τὸ μικρῷ πρόσθεν ρηθὲν ὡς ὄρθως ἐλέγετο τὸ δεῦν πρόσθεσιν μὲν πρῶτον, ἐφεξῆς δὲ πρόσφυσιν, ἐπειτ' ἔξομοίωσιν γενέσθαι τῷ μέλλοντι τρέφεσθαι.

Κυρίως μὲν οὖν τὸ τρέφον ἥδη τροφή, τὸ δὲ οἶον μὲν τροφή, οὕπω δὲ τρέφον, ὅποιόν ἐστι τὸ προσφυόμενον ἡ προστιθέμενον, τροφὴ μὲν οὐ

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *phthisis*. cf. p. 6, note 2. Now means *tuberculosis* only.

<sup>2</sup> More literally, “chymified.” In *anasarca* the subcutaneous tissue is soft, and pits on pressure. In the “white” disease referred to here (by which is probably meant *nodular leprosy*) the same tissues are indurated and “brawny.” The

The so-called white [leprosy] shows the difference between assimilation and adhesion, in the same way that the kind of dropsy which some people call *anasarca* clearly distinguishes presentation from adhesion. For, of course, the genesis of such a dropsy does not come about as do some of the conditions of atrophy and wasting,<sup>1</sup> from an insufficient supply of moisture; the flesh is obviously moist enough,—in fact it is thoroughly saturated,—and each of the solid parts of the body is in a similar condition. While, however, the nutriment conveyed to the part does undergo presentation, it is still too watery, and is not properly transformed into a *juice*,<sup>2</sup> nor has it acquired that viscous and agglutinative quality which results from the operation of *innate heat*;<sup>3</sup> therefore, adhesion cannot come about, since, owing to this abundance of thin, crude liquid, the pabulum runs off and easily slips away from the solid parts of the body. In white [leprosy], again, there is adhesion of the nutriment but no real assimilation. From this it is clear that what I have just said is correct, namely, that in that part which is to be nourished there must first occur presentation, next adhesion, and finally assimilation proper.

Strictly speaking, then, *nutriment* is that which is actually nourishing, while the *quasi-nutriment* which is not yet nourishing (*e.g.* matter which is undergoing adhesion or presentation) is not, strictly speaking, nutriment, but is so called only by an equivocation.

principle of certain diseases being best explained as cases of *arrest* at various stages of the metabolic path is recognized in modern pathology, although of course the instances given by Galen are too crude to stand.

<sup>1</sup> The effects of *oxidation* attributed to the heat which accompanies it? cf. p. 141, note 1; p. 254, note 1.

κυρίως, ὁμωνύμως δὲ τροφή· τὸ δ' ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν  
 28 ἔτι περιεχόμενον || καὶ τούτου μᾶλλον ἔτι τὸ κατὰ  
 τὴν γαστέρα τῷ μέλλειν ποτὲ θρέψειν, εἰς καλῶς  
 κατεργασθείη, κέκληται τροφή. κατὰ ταῦτα δὲ  
 καὶ τῶν ἑδεσμάτων ἔκαστον τροφὴν ὀνομάζομεν  
 οὕτε τῷ τρέφειν ἥδη τὸ ζῷον οὕτε τῷ τοιούτον  
 ὑπάρχειν οἷον τὸ τρέφον, ἀλλὰ τῷ δύνασθαι τε  
 καὶ μέλλειν τρέφειν, εἰς καλῶς κατεργασθείη.

Τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν καὶ τὸ πρὸς Ἰπποκράτους  
 λεγόμενον· “Τροφὴ δὲ τὸ τρέφον, τροφὴ καὶ τὸ  
 οἷον τροφὴ καὶ τὸ μέλλον.” τὸ μὲν γὰρ ὁμοιού-  
 μενον ἥδη τροφὴν ὡνόμασε, τὸ δὲ οἷον μὲν ἐκεῖνο  
 προστιθέμενον ἡ προσφυόμενον οἷον τροφήν· τὸ  
 δὲ ἄλλο πᾶν, ὅσον ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ καὶ ταῖς φλεψὶν  
 περιέχεται, μέλλον.

## XII

Οτι μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαῖον ὁμοίωσίν τιν' εἶναι τοῦ  
 τρέφοντος τῷ τρεφομένῳ τὴν θρέψιν, ἄντικρυς  
 δῆλον. οὐ μὴν ὑπάρχουσάν γε ταῦτην τὴν ὁμοί-  
 ωσιν, ἀλλὰ φαινομένην μόνον εἶναι φασιν οἱ μήτε  
 τεχνικὴν οἰόμενοι τὴν φύσιν εἶναι μήτε προνοη-  
 τικὴν τοῦ ζῴου μήθ' δλως τινὰς οἰκείας ἔχειν  
 δυνάμεις, αἱς χρωμένη τὰ μὲν ἄλλοιοι, τὰ δ'  
 27 ἔλκει, || τὰ δὲ ἐκκρίνει.

Καὶ αὗται δύο γεγόνασιν αἵρεσεις κατὰ γένος  
 ἐν ἰατρικῇ τε καὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ τῶν ἀποφηναμένων

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xi.—xii

Also, that which is still contained in the veins, and still more, that which is in the stomach, from the fact that it is destined to nourish if properly elaborated, has been called “nutriment.” Similarly we call the various kinds of food “nutriment,” not because they are already nourishing the animal, nor because they exist in the same state as the material which actually is nourishing it, but because they are able and destined to nourish it if they be properly elaborated.

This was also what Hippocrates said, viz., “Nutriment is what is engaged in nourishing, as also is quasi-nutriment, and what is destined to be nutriment.” For to that which is already being assimilated he gave the name of *nutriment*; to the similar material which is being presented or becoming adherent, the name of *quasi-nutriment*; and to everything else—that is, contained in the stomach and veins—the name of *destined nutriment*.

## XII

IT is quite clear, therefore, that nutrition must necessarily be a process of assimilation of that which is nourishing to that which is being nourished. Some, however, say that this assimilation does not occur in reality, but is merely apparent; these are the people who think that Nature is not artistic, that she does not show forethought for the animal's welfare, and that she has absolutely no native powers whereby she alters some substances, attracts others, and discharges others.

Now, speaking generally, there have arisen the following two sects in medicine and philosophy

τι περὶ φύσεως ἀνδρῶν, ὅσοι γ' αὐτῶν γιγνώσκουσιν, ὅ τι λέγουσι, καὶ τὴν ἀκολουθίαν ὡν ὑπέθευτο θεωροῦσι θ' ἄμα καὶ διαφυλάττουσιν. ὅσοι δὲ μηδ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο συνιᾶσιν, ἀλλ' ἀπλῶς, ὅ τι ἀν ἐπὶ γλῶτταν ἔλθη, ληροῦσιν, ἐν οὐδετέρᾳ τῶν αἵρεσεων ἀκριβῶς καταμένοντες, οὐδὲ μεμνῆσθαι τῶν τοιούτων προσήκει.

Τίνες οὖν αἱ δύο αἵρεσεις αὗται καὶ τίς ἡ τῶν ἐν αὐταῖς ὑποθέσεων ἀκολουθία; τὴν ὑποβεβλημένην οὐσίαν γενέσει καὶ φθορᾷ πᾶσαν ἡνωμένην θ' ἄμα καὶ ἀλλοιοῦσθαι δυναμένην ὑπέθετο θάτερον γένος τῆς αἵρεσεως, ἀμετάβλητον δὲ καὶ ἀναλλοίωτον καὶ κατατετμημένην εἰς λεπτὰ καὶ κεναῖς ταῖς μεταξὺ χώραις διειλημμένην ἡ λοιπή.

Καὶ τοίνυν ὅσοι γε τῆς ἀκολουθίας τῶν ὑποθέσεων αἰσθάνονται, κατὰ μὲν τὴν δευτέραν αἵρεσιν οὔτε φύσεως οὔτε ψυχῆς ἴδιαν τινὰ νομίζουσιν οὐσίαν ἡ δύναμιν ὑπάρχειν, || ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ ποιᾷ συνοόδῳ τῶν πρώτων ἐκείνων σωμάτων τῶν ἀπαθῶν ἀποτελεῖσθαι. κατὰ δὲ τὴν προτέραν εἰρημένην αἵρεσιν οὐχ ὑστέρα τῶν σωμάτων ἡ φύσις, ἀλλὰ πολὺ προτέρα τε καὶ πρεσβυτέρα. καὶ τοίνυν κατὰ μὲν τούτους αὕτη τὰ σώματα τῶν τε φυτῶν καὶ τῶν ζῷων συνίστησι δυνάμεις τινὰς ἔχουσα τὰς μὲν ἐλκτικάς θ' ἄμα καὶ ὁμοιωτικὰς τῶν οἰκείων, τὰς δ' ἀποκριτικὰς τῶν

<sup>1</sup> Here follows a contrast between the Vitalists and the Epicurean Atomists. cf. p. 153 et seq.

<sup>2</sup> A unity or *continuum*, an *individuum*.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xii

among those who have made any definite pronouncement regarding Nature. I speak, of course, of such of them as know what they are talking about, and who realize the logical sequence of their hypotheses, and stand by them ; as for those who cannot understand even this, but who simply talk any nonsense that comes to their tongues, and who do not remain definitely attached either to one sect or the other—such people are not even worth mentioning.

What, then, are these sects, and what are the logical consequences of their hypotheses ?<sup>1</sup> The one class supposes that all substance which is subject to genesis and destruction is at once *continuous*<sup>2</sup> and susceptible of *alteration*. The other school assumes substance to be unchangeable, unalterable, and subdivided into fine particles, which are separated from one another by empty spaces.

All people, therefore, who can appreciate the logical sequence of an hypothesis hold that, according to the second teaching, there does not exist any substance or faculty peculiar either to Nature or to Soul,<sup>3</sup> but that these result from the way in which the primary corpuscles,<sup>4</sup> which are unaffected by change, come together. According to the first-mentioned teaching, on the other hand, Nature is not posterior to the corpuscles, but is a long way prior to them and older than they ; and therefore in their view it is Nature which puts together the bodies both of plants and animals ; and this she does by virtue of certain faculties which she possesses—these being, on the one hand, attractive and assimilative of what is appropriate, and, on the other, expulsive of

<sup>1</sup> Lit. to the *physis* or the *psyche* ; that is, a denial of the autonomy of physiology and psychology.      <sup>4</sup> Lit. *somata*.

ἀλλοτρίων, καὶ τεχνικῶς ἄπαντα διαπλάττει τε γεννώσα καὶ προνοεῖται τῶν γεννωμένων ἐτέραις αὐθίς τισι δυνάμεσι, στερκτικῇ μέν τινι καὶ προνοητικῇ τῶν ἐγγόνων, κοινωνικῇ δὲ καὶ φιλικῇ τῶν ὁμογενῶν. κατὰ δ' αὐτὸν ἐτέρους οὕτε τούτων οὐδὲν ὑπάρχει ταῖς φύσεσιν οὔτ' ἔννοιά τίς ἔστι τῇ ψυχῇ σύμφυτος ἐξ ἀρχῆς οὐκ ἀκολουθίας οὐ μάχης, οὐ διαιρέσεως οὐ συνθέσεως, οὐ δικαίων οὐκ ἀδίκων, οὐ καλῶν οὐκ αἰσχρῶν, ἀλλ' ἐξ αἰσθήσεώς τε καὶ δι' αἰσθήσεως ἄπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἡμῖν ἐγγίγνεσθαι φασι καὶ φαντασίαις τισὶ καὶ μνήμαις οἰακίζεσθαι τὰ ζῷα.

29     Ἐνιοι || δ' αὐτῶν καὶ ῥητῶς ἀπεφήναντο μηδεμίαν εἶναι τῆς ψυχῆς δύναμιν, ή λογιζόμεθα, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τῶν αἰσθητῶν ἄγεσθαι παθῶν ἡμᾶς καθάπερ βοσκήματα πρὸς μηδὲν ἀνανεῦσαι μηδ' ἀντειπεῖν δυναμένους. καθ' οὓς δηλονότι καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ φρόνησις καὶ σωφροσύνῃ καὶ ἐγκράτεια λῆρός ἔστι μακρὸς καὶ φιλοῦμεν οὔτ' ἀλλήλους οὕτε τὰ ἐγγονα καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἡμῶν μέλει. καταφρονοῦσι δὲ καὶ τῶν ὀνειράτων καὶ τῶν οἰωνῶν καὶ τῶν συμβόλων καὶ πάσης ἀστρολογίας, ὑπὲρ ὧν ἡμεῖς μὲν ἴδιᾳ δι' ἐτέρων γραμμάτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐσκεψάμεθα περὶ τῶν Ἀσκληπιάδου τοῦ ἰατροῦ σκοπούμενοι δογμάτων. ἔνεστι δὲ τοῖς βουλομένοις κάκείνοις μὲν ὅμιλησαι τοῖς λόγοις καὶ νῦν δ' ἡδη σκοπεῖν, ὥσπερ τινῶν δυοῖν ὁδῶν ἡμῖν προκειμένων, ὅποτέραν βέλτιόν ἔστι τρέπεσθαι. Ἰπποκράτης μὲν γάρ τὴν προτέραν ῥηθεῖσαν ἐτράπετο, καθ' ἦν ἦνωται μὲν ἡ οὐσία καὶ ἀλλοιοῦται καὶ σύμπνουν ὅλον ἔστι καὶ σύρρουν τὸ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xii

what is foreign. Further, she skilfully moulds everything during the stage of genesis ; and she also provides for the creatures after birth, employing here other faculties again, namely, one of affection and forethought for offspring, and one of sociability and friendship for kindred. According to the other school, none of these things exist in the natures<sup>1</sup> [of living things], nor is there in the soul any original innate idea, whether of agreement or difference, of separation or synthesis, of justice or injustice, of the beautiful or ugly ; all such things, they say, arise in us *from sensation and through sensation*, and animals are steered by certain images and memories.

Some of these people have even expressly declared that the soul possesses no reasoning faculty, but that we are led like cattle by the impression of our senses, and are unable to refuse or dissent from anything. In their view, obviously, courage, wisdom, temperance, and self-control are all mere nonsense, we do not love either each other or our offspring, nor do the gods care anything for us. This school also despises dreams, birds, omens, and the whole of astrology, subjects with which we have dealt at greater length in another work,<sup>2</sup> in which we discuss the views of Asclepiades the physician.<sup>3</sup> Those who wish to do so may familiarize themselves with these arguments, and they may also consider at this point which of the two roads lying before us is the better one to take. Hippocrates took the first-mentioned. According to this teaching, substance is one and is subject to *alteration* ; there is a consensus in the move-

<sup>1</sup> For "natures" in the plural, involving the idea of a separate nature immanent in each individual, cf. p. 36, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> A lost work.

<sup>3</sup> For Asclepiades *v.* p. 49, note 5.

## GALEN

σῶμα καὶ ἡ φύσις ἅπαντα τεχνικῶς καὶ δικαίως πράττει δυνάμεις ἔχουσα, καθ' ἀς ἔκαστον τῶν 30 μορίων ἔλκει μὲν || ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν οἰκεῖον ἑαυτῷ χυμόν, ἔλξαν δὲ προσφύνει τε παντὶ μέρει τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ τελέως ἔξομοιοῦ, τὸ δὲ μὴ κρατηθὲν ἐν τούτῳ μηδὲ τὴν παντελή δυνηθὲν ἀλλοίωσίν τε καὶ ὁμοιότητα τοῦ τρεφομένου καταδέξασθαι δι' ἔτερας αὐτοῖς ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἀποτρίβεται.

## XIII

Μαθεῖν δ' ἔνεστιν οὐ μόνον ἐξ ὧν οἱ τάναντία τιθέμενοι διαφέρονται τοῖς ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις, εἰς ὃσον ὄρθοτητός τε καὶ ἀληθείας ἥκει τὰ Ἰπποκράτους δόγματα, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἐν τῇ φυσικῇ θεωρίᾳ ζητουμένων τῶν τ' ἄλλων ἀπάντων καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ζῷοις ἐνεργειῶν. ὅσοι γὰρ οὐδεμίαν οὐδενὶ μορίῳ νομίζουσιν ὑπάρχειν ἐλκτικὴν τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος δύναμιν, ἀναγκάζονται πολλάκις ἐναντία λέγειν τοῖς ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις, ὥσπερ καὶ Ἀσκληπιάδης ὁ ἱατρὸς ἐπὶ τῶν νεφρῶν ἐποίησεν, οὓς οὐ μόνον Ἰπποκράτης ἢ Διοκλῆς ἢ Ἐρασίστρατος ἢ

---

<sup>1</sup> “Le corps tout entier a unité de souffle (*perspiration et expiration*) et unité de flux (*courants, circulation des liquides*)” (Daremburg). “Conspirabile et confluxile corpus esse” (Linacre). Apparently Galen refers to the *pneuma* and the various humours. *cf.* p. 293, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. “appropriated”; very nearly “assimilated.”

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XII.—XIII

ments of air and fluid throughout the whole body;<sup>1</sup> Nature acts throughout in an artistic and equitable manner, having certain faculties, by virtue of which each part of the body draws to itself the juice which is proper to it, and, having done so, attaches it to every portion of itself, and completely assimilates it; while such part of the juice as has not been mastered,<sup>2</sup> and is not capable of undergoing complete alteration and being assimilated to the part which is being nourished, is got rid of by yet another (an expulsive) faculty.

### XIII

Now the extent of exactitude and truth in the doctrines of Hippocrates may be gauged, not merely from the way in which his opponents are at variance with obvious facts, but also from the various subjects of natural research themselves—the functions of animals, and the rest. For those people who do not believe that there exists in any part of the animal a faculty for attracting *its own special quality*<sup>3</sup> are compelled repeatedly to deny obvious facts.<sup>4</sup> For instance, Asclepiades, the physician,<sup>5</sup> did this in the case of the kidneys. That these are organs for secreting [separating out] the urine, was the belief not only of Hippocrates, Diocles,

<sup>1</sup> “Attractricem convenientis qualitatis vim” (Linacre).  
*cf.* p. 36, note 2.      <sup>4</sup> Lit. “obvious phenomena.”

<sup>5</sup> Asclepiades of Bithynia, who flourished in the first half of the first century B.C., was an adherent of the atomistic philosophy of Democritus, and is the typical representative of the Mechanistic school in Graeco-Roman medicine; he disbelieved in any principle of individuality (“nature”) in the organism, and his methods of treatment, in accordance with his pathology, were mechano-therapeutical. *cf.* p. 64, note 3.

Πραξιαγόρας ἡ τις ἄλλος ἰατρὸς ἄριστος ὄργανα  
 διακριτικὰ τῶν οὔρων πεπιστεύκασιν ὑπάρχειν,  
 31 ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ || μάγειροι σχεδὸν ἅπαντες ἵσασιν,  
 ὁσημέραι θεώμενοι τήν τε θέσιν αὐτῶν καὶ τὸν  
 ἀφ' ἐκατέρου πόρου εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἐμβάλλοντα,  
 τὸν οὐρητῆρα καλούμενον, ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς κατα-  
 σκευῆς ἀναλογιζόμενοι τήν τε χρείαν αὐτῶν καὶ  
 τὴν δύναμιν. καὶ πρό γε τῶν μαγείρων ἅπαντες  
 ἄνθρωποι καὶ δυσουροῦντες πολλάκις καὶ παντά-  
 πασιν ἴσχουροῦντες, ὅταν ἀλγῶσι μὲν τὰ κατὰ  
 τὰς φύσας, φαμμάδη δ' ἔξουρωσιν, νεφριτικοὺς  
 ὄνομάζουσι σφᾶς αὐτούς.

'Ασκληπιάδην δ' οἷμαι μηδὲ λίθον οὐρηθέντα  
 ποτὲ θεάσασθαι πρὸς τῶν οὕτω πασχόντων μηδ'  
 ὡς προηγήσατο κατὰ τὴν μεταξὺ τῶν νεφρῶν  
 καὶ τῆς κύστεως χώραν ὀδύνη τις ὀξεῖα διερχο-  
 μένου τοῦ λίθου τὸν οὐρητῆρα μηδ' ὡς οὐρηθέντος  
 αὐτοῦ τά τε τῆς ὀδύνης καὶ τὰ τῆς ἴσχουρίας  
 ἐπαύσατο παραχρῆμα. πῶς οὖν εἰς τὴν κύστιν  
 τῷ λόγῳ παράγει τὸ οὖρον, ἄξιον ἀκοῦσαι καὶ  
 θαυμάσαι τάνδρὸς τὴν σοφίαν, ὃς καταλιπὼν  
 οὕτως εὐρείας ὁδοὺς ἐναργῶς φαινομένας ἀφανεῖς  
 32 καὶ στενὰς καὶ παντάπασιν ἀναισθήτους || ὑπέ-  
 θετο. βούλεται γὰρ εἰς ἀτμοὺς ἀναλυόμενον τὸ  
 πινόμενον ὑγρὸν εἰς τὴν κύστιν διαδίδοσθαι  
 καπειτ' ἐξ ἕκείνων αὖθις ἀλλήλοις συνιόντων  
 οὕτως ἀπολαμβάνειν αὐτὸ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἴδεαν καὶ  
 γίγνεσθαι πάλιν ὑγρὸν ἐξ ἀτμῶν ἀτεχνῶς ὡς περὶ  
 σποργιαῖς τινος ἡ ἐρίου τῆς κύστεως διανοού-  
 μενος, ἀλλ' οὐ σώματος ἀκριβῶς πυκνοῦ καὶ  
 στεγανοῦ δύο χιτῶνας ἴσχυροτάτους κεκτημένου,

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

Erasistratus, Praxagoras,<sup>1</sup> and all other physicians of eminence, but practically every butcher is aware of this, from the fact that he daily observes both the position of the kidneys and the duct (termed the ureter) which runs from each kidney into the bladder, and from this arrangement he infers their characteristic use and faculty. But, even leaving the butchers aside, all people who suffer either from frequent dysuria or from retention of urine call themselves "nephritis,"<sup>2</sup> when they feel pain in the loins and pass sandy matter in their water.

I do not suppose that Asclepiades ever saw a stone which had been passed by one of these sufferers, or observed that this was preceded by a sharp pain in the region between kidneys and bladder as the stone traversed the ureter, or that, when the stone was passed, both the pain and the retention at once ceased. It is worth while, then, learning how his theory accounts for the presence of urine in the bladder, and one is forced to marvel at the ingenuity of a man who puts aside these broad, clearly visible routes,<sup>3</sup> and postulates others which are narrow, invisible—indeed, entirely imperceptible. His view, in fact, is that the fluid which we drink passes into the bladder by being resolved into vapours, and that, when these have been again condensed, it thus regains its previous form, and turns from vapour into fluid. He simply looks upon the bladder as a sponge or a piece of wool, and not as the perfectly compact and impervious body that it is, with two very

<sup>1</sup> Diocles of Carystus was the chief representative of the Dogmatic or Hippocratic school in the first half of the fourth century B.C. Praxagoras was his disciple, and followed him in the leadership of the school. For Erasistratus, cf. p. 95 *et seq.*

<sup>2</sup> Sufferers from kidney-trouble.

<sup>3</sup> The ureters.

## GALEN

δι' ὃν εἴπερ διέρχεσθαι φήσομεν τοὺς ἀτμούς, τί δήποτ' οὐχὶ διὰ τοῦ περιτοναίου καὶ τῶν φρενῶν διελθόντες ἐνέπλησαν ὕδατος τό τ' ἐπιγάστριον ἄπαν καὶ τὸν θώρακα; ἀλλὰ παχύτερος, φησίν, ἔστι δηλαδὴ καὶ στεγανώτερος ὁ περιτόναιος χιτῶν τῆς κύστεως καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἀποστέγει τοὺς ἀτμούς, ἡ δὲ κύστις παραδέχεται. ἀλλ' εἴπερ ἀνατετμήκει ποτέ, τάχ' ἀν ἡπιστατο τὸν μὲν ἔξωθεν χιτῶνα τῆς κύστεως ἀπὸ τοῦ περιτοναίου πεφυκότα τὴν αὐτὴν ἐκείνῳ φύσιν ἔχειν, τὸν δ' ἔνδοθεν τὸν αὐτῆς τῆς κύστεως ἕδιον πλέον ἡ διπλάσιον ἐκείνου τὸ πάχος ὑπάρχειν.

- 33     'Αλλ' ἵσως οὕτε τὸ || πάχος οὐθ' ἡ λεπτότης τῶν χιτώνων, ἀλλ' ἡ θέσις τῆς κύστεως αἰτία τοῦ φέρεσθαι τοὺς ἀτμοὺς εἰς αὐτήν. καὶ μὴν εἰ καὶ διὰ τᾶλλα πάντα πιθανὸν ἦν αὐτοὺς ἐνταυθοῖ συναθροίζεσθαι, τό γε τῆς θέσεως μόνης αὔταρκες κωλῦσαι. κάτω μὲν γάρ ἡ κύστις κεῖται, τοῖς δ' ἀτμοῖς σύμφυτος ἡ πρὸς τὸ μετέωρον φορά, ὥστε πολὺ πρότερον ἀν ἔπλησαν ἄπαντα τὰ κατὰ τὸν θώρακά τε καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα, πρὶν ἐπὶ τὴν κύστιν ἀφικέσθαι.

Καίτοι τί θέσεως κύστεως καὶ περιτοναίου καὶ θώρακος μνημονεύω; διεκπεσόντες γὰρ δήπου τούς τε τῆς κοιλίας καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων χιτῶνας οἱ ἀτμοὶ κατὰ τὴν μεταξὺ χώραν αὐτῶν τε τούτων καὶ τοῦ περιτοναίου συναθροισθήσονται καὶ ὑγρὸν ἐνταυθοῖ γενήσονται, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς ὑδερικοῖς ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χωρίῳ τὸ πλεῖστον ἀθροίζεται τοῦ

---

<sup>1</sup> Unless otherwise stated, "peritoneum" stands for parietal peritoneum alone.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

strong coats. For if we say that the vapours pass through these coats, why should they not pass through the peritoneum<sup>1</sup> and the diaphragm, thus filling the whole abdominal cavity and thorax with water? "But," says he, "of course the peritoneal coat is more impervious than the bladder, and this is why it keeps out the vapours, while the bladder admits them." Yet if he had ever practised anatomy, he might have known that the outer coat of the bladder springs from the peritoneum and is essentially the same as it, and that the inner coat, which is peculiar to the bladder, is more than twice as thick as the former.

Perhaps, however, it is not the thickness or thinness of the coats, but the *situation* of the bladder, which is the reason for the vapours being carried into it? On the contrary, even if it were probable for every other reason that the vapours accumulate there, yet the situation of the bladder would be enough in itself to prevent this. For the bladder is situated below, whereas vapours have a natural tendency to rise upwards; thus they would fill all the region of the thorax and lungs long before they came to the bladder.

But why do I mention the situation of the bladder, peritoneum, and thorax? For surely, when the vapours have passed through the coats of the stomach and intestines, it is in the space between these and the peritoneum<sup>2</sup> that they will collect and become liquefied (just as in dropsical subjects it is in this region that most of the water gathers).<sup>3</sup> Otherwise the vapours must necessarily pass straight forward

<sup>2</sup> In the peritoneal cavity.

<sup>3</sup> Contrast, however, *anasarca*, p. 41.

34 οὐδατος, ἡ πάντως αὐτοὺς χρὴ φέρεσθαι πρόσω διὰ πάντων τῶν ὀπωσοῦν ὄμιλούντων καὶ μηδέποθ' ἵστασθαι. ἀλλ' εἰ καὶ τοῦτο τις ὑπόθοιτο, διεκπεσόντες ἀν οὗτως οὐ τὸ περιτόναιον μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἐπιγάστριον, εἰς τὸ περιέχον σκεδασθεῖν ἡ πάντως ἀν ὑπὸ τῷ δέρματι || συναθροισθεῖν.

'Αλλὰ καὶ πρὸς ταῦτ' ἀντιλέγειν οἱ νῦν Ασκληπιάδειοι πειρῶνται, καίτοι πρὸς ἀπάντων ἀεὶ τῶν παρατυγχανόντων αὐτοῖς, ὅταν περὶ τούτων ἔριζωσι, καταγελώμενοι. οὗτως ἄρα δυσαπότριπτόν τι κακόν ἔστιν ἡ περὶ τὰς αἰρέσεις φιλοτιμία καὶ δυσέκυνιπτον ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα καὶ φύρας ἀπάσης δυσιατότερον.

Τῶν γοῦν καθ' ἡμᾶς τις σοφιστῶν τά τ' ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τοὺς ἐριστικοὺς λόγους ἴκανῶς συγκεκροτημένος καὶ δεινὸς εἰπεῖν, εἴπερ τις ἄλλος, ἀφικόμενος ἐμοὶ ποθ' ὑπὲρ τούτων εἰς λόγους, τοσοῦτον ἀπέδει τοῦ δυσωπεῖσθαι πρός τινος τῶν εἰρημένων, ὥστε καὶ θαυμάζειν ἔφασκεν ἐμοῦ τὰ σαφῶς φαινόμενα λόγοις ληρώδεσιν ἀνατρέπειν ἐπιχειροῦντος. ἐναργῶς γὰρ ὁ σημέραι θεωρεῖσθαι τὰς κύστεις ἀπάσας, εἴ τις αὐτὰς ἐμπλήσειεν ὕδατος ἡ ἀέρος, εἴτα δήσας τὸν τράχηλον πιέζοι πανταχόθεν, οὐδαμόθεν μεθιείσας οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀκριβῶς ἅπαν ἐντὸς ἔαυτῶν στεγούσας. καίτοι γ' εἴπερ ἡσάν τινες ἐκ τῶν νεφρῶν εἰς αὐτὰς ἥκουντες αἰσθητοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι ποροι, πάντως ἄν, ἔφη, δι' ἐκείνων, ὥσπερ εἰσῆρει τὸ || ὑγρὸν εἰς αὐτάς, οὗτω καὶ θλιβόντων ἐξεκρίνετο. ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐξαίφνης

35

through everything which in any way comes in contact with them, and will never come to a standstill. But, if this be assumed, then they will traverse not merely the peritoneum but also the epigastrium, and will become dispersed into the surrounding air ; otherwise they will certainly collect under the skin.

Even these considerations, however, our present-day Asclepiadeans attempt to answer, despite the fact that they always get soundly laughed at by all who happen to be present at their disputations on these subjects—so difficult an evil to get rid of is this sectarian partizanship, so excessively resistant to all cleansing processes, harder to heal than any itch !

Thus, one of our Sophists who is a thoroughly hardened disputer and as skilful a master of language as there ever was, once got into a discussion with me on this subject ; so far from being put out of countenance by any of the above-mentioned considerations, he even expressed his surprise that I should try to overturn obvious facts by ridiculous arguments ! “For,” said he, “one may clearly observe any day in the case of any bladder, that, if one fills it with water or air and then ties up its neck and squeezes it all round, it does not let anything out at any point, but accurately retains all its contents. And surely,” said he, “if there were any large and perceptible channels coming into it from the kidneys the liquid would run out through these when the bladder was squeezed, in the same way that it entered ?”<sup>1</sup> Having abruptly made these and

<sup>1</sup> Regurgitation, however, is prevented by the fact that the ureter runs for nearly one inch obliquely through the bladder wall before opening into its cavity, and thus an efficient valve is produced.

ἀπταίστῳ καὶ σαφεῖ τῷ στόματι τελευτῶν ἀναπηδήσας ἀπήει καταλιπὼν ἡμᾶς ὡς οὐδὲ πιθανῆς τινος ἀντιλογίας εὐπορῆσαι δυναμένους.

Οὕτως οὐ μόνον ὑγιές οὐδὲν ἵσασιν οἱ ταῖς αἵρεσει δουλεύοντες, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ μαθεῖν ὑπομένουσι. δέον γὰρ ἀκοῦσαι τὴν αἰτίαν, δι’ οὗ εἰσιέναι μὲν δύναται διὰ τῶν οὐρητήρων εἰς τὴν κύστιν τὸ ὑγρόν, ἔξιέναι δ’ αὐθις ὅπισω τὴν αὐτὴν ὁδὸν οὐκέθ’ οἰόν τε, καὶ θαυμάσαι τὴν τέχνην τῆς φύσεως, οὗτε μαθεῖν ἐθέλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦνται προσέτι μάτην ὑπ’ αὐτῆς ἄλλα τε πολλὰ καὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς γεγονέναι φάσκοντες. εἰσὶ δ’ οἱ καὶ δειχθῆναι παρόντων αὐτῶν τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἐμφυομένους οὐρητήρας ὑπομείναντες ἐτόλμησαν εἰπεῖν οἱ μέν, ὅτι μάτην καὶ οὗτοι γεγόνασιν, οἱ δ’, ὅτι σπερματικοί τινές εἰσι πόροι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο κατὰ τὸν τράχηλον αὐτῆς, οὐκ εἰς τὸ κῦτος ἐμφύονται. δεῖξαντες οὖν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς τοὺς ὡς ἀληθῶς σπερματικοὺς πόρους κατωτέρω τῶν οὐρητήρων ||

- 36 ἐμβάλλοντας εἰς τὸν τράχηλον, νῦν γοῦν, εἰ καὶ μὴ πρότερον, φώθημεν ἀπάξειν τε τῶν ψευδῶς ὑπειλημμένων ἐπὶ τε τάναντίᾳ μεταστήσειν αὐτίκα. οἱ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τοῦτ’ ἀντιλέγειν ἐτόλμων οὐδὲν εἶναι θαυμαστὸν εἰπόντες, ἐν ἐκείνοις μὲν ὡς ἀν στεγανωτέροις οὖσιν ἐπὶ πλέον ὑπομένειν τὸ σπέρμα, κατὰ δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν ὡς ἀν ἰκανῶς ἀνευρυσμένους ἐκρεῖν διὰ ταχέων. ἡμεῖς

<sup>1</sup> On the τέχνη (artistic or creative skill) shown by the living organism (φύσις) v. pp. 25, 45, 47; Introduction, p. xxix.

<sup>2</sup> Direct denial of Aristotle's dictum that "Nature does nothing in vain." We are reminded of the view of certain

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

similar remarks in precise and clear tones, he concluded by jumping up and departing—leaving me as though I were quite incapable of finding any plausible answer !

The fact is that those who are enslaved to their sects are not merely devoid of all sound knowledge, but they will not even stop to learn ! Instead of listening, as they ought, to the reason why liquid can enter the bladder through the ureters, but is unable to go back again the same way,—instead of admiring Nature's artistic skill<sup>1</sup>—they refuse to learn ; they even go so far as to scoff, and maintain that the kidneys, as well as many other things, have been made by Nature *for no purpose*!<sup>2</sup> And some of them who had allowed themselves to be shown the ureters coming from the kidneys and becoming implanted in the bladder, even had the audacity to say that these also existed for no purpose ; and others said that they were spermatic ducts, and that this was why they were inserted into the neck of the bladder and not into its cavity. When, therefore, we had demonstrated to them the real spermatic ducts<sup>3</sup> entering the neck of the bladder lower down than the ureters, we supposed that, if we had not done so before, we would now at least draw them away from their false assumptions, and convert them forthwith to the opposite view. But even this they presumed to dispute, and said that it was not to be wondered at that the semen should remain longer in these latter ducts, these being more constricted, and that it should flow quickly down the ducts which came from the kidneys, seeing that these were modern laboratory physicians and surgeons that the *colon* is a “useless” organ. *cf.* Erasistratus, p. 143.

<sup>1</sup> The *vasa deferentia*.

ούν ἡναγκάσθημεν αὐτοῖς τοῦ λοιποῦ δεικνύειν εἰσρέον τῇ κύστει διὰ τῶν οὐρητήρων τὸ οὔρου ἐναργῶς ἐπὶ ζῶντος ἔτι τοῦ ζώου, μόγις ἀν οὕτω ποτὲ τὴν φλυαρίαν αὐτῶν ἐπισχήσειν ἐλπίζοντες.

‘Ο δὲ τρόπος τῆς δείξεως ἔστι τοιόσδε. διελεῖν χρὴ τὸ πρὸ τῶν οὐρητήρων περιτόναιον, εἴτα βρόχοις αὐτοὺς ἐκλαβεῖν κάπειτ’ ἐπιδήσαντας ἔᾶσαι τὸ ζῶον οὐ γὰρ ἀν οὐρήσειν ἔτι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα λυειν μὲν τοὺς ἔξωθεν δεσμούς, δεικνύναι δὲ κενὴν μὲν τὴν κύστιν, μεστοὺς δὲ ίκανῶς καὶ διατεταμένους τοὺς οὐρητῆρας καὶ κινδυνεύοντας ῥαγῆναι κάπειτα τοὺς βρόχους αὐτῶν ἀφελόντας ἐναργῶς ὄρâν ἥδη πληρουμένην οὔρου τὴν κύστιν.

- 37     Ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ || φανέντι, πρὶν οὐρῆσαι τὸ ζῶον, βρόχον αὐτοῦ περιβαλεῖν χρὴ τῷ αἰδοίῳ κάπειτα θλίβειν πανταχόθεν τὴν κύστιν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀν οὐδὲν ἔτι διὰ τῶν οὐρητήρων ἐπανέλθοι πρὸς τοὺς νεφρούς. κἀν τούτῳ δῆλον γίγνεται τὸ μὴ μόνον ἐπὶ τεθνεῶτος ἀλλὰ καὶ περιόντος ἔτι τοῦ ζώου κωλύεσθαι μεταλαμβάνειν αὐθις ἐκ τῆς κύστεως τοὺς οὐρητῆρας τὸ οὔρον. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὁφθεῖσιν ἐπιτρέπειν ἥδη τὸ ζῶον οὐρεῦν λύοντας αὐτοῦ τὸν ἐπὶ τῷ αἰδοίῳ βρόχον, εἰτ’ αὐθις ἐπιβαλεῖν μὲν θατέρῳ τῶν οὐρητήρων, ἔᾶσαι δὲ τὸν ἔτερον εἰς τὴν κύστιν συρρεῖν καὶ τινα διαλιπόντας χρόνον ἐπιδεικνύειν ἥδη, πῶς ὁ μὲν ἔτερος αὐτῶν ο δεδεμένος μεστὸς καὶ διατεταμένος κατὰ τὰ πρὸς τῶν νεφρῶν μέρη φαίνεται, ὁ δὲ ἔτερος ὁ λελυμένος αὐτὸς μὲν χαλαρός ἔστι, πεπλήρωκε δ’ οὔρου τὴν κύστιν. εἰτ’ αὐθις διατεμεῖν πρῶτον μὲν τὸν πλήρη καὶ δεῖξαι, πῶς ἔξακοντίζεται τὸ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xi

well dilated. We were, therefore, further compelled to show them in a still living animal, the urine plainly running out through the ureters into the bladder; even thus we hardly hoped to check their nonsensical talk.

Now the method of demonstration is as follows. One has to divide the peritoneum in front of the ureters, then secure these with ligatures, and next, having bandaged up the animal, let him go (for he will not continue to urinate). After this one loosens the external bandages and shows the bladder empty and the ureters quite full and distended—in fact almost on the point of rupturing; on removing the ligature from them, one then plainly sees the bladder becoming filled with urine.

When this has been made quite clear, then, before the animal urinates, one has to tie a ligature round his penis and then to squeeze the bladder all over; still nothing goes back through the ureters to the kidneys. Here, then, it becomes obvious that not only in a dead animal, but in one which is still living, the ureters are prevented from receiving back the urine from the bladder. These observations having been made, one now loosens the ligature from the animal's penis and allows him to urinate, then again ligatures one of the ureters and leaves the other to discharge into the bladder. Allowing, then, some time to elapse, one now demonstrates that the ureter which was ligatured is obviously full and distended on the side next to the kidneys, while the other one—that from which the ligature had been taken—is itself flaccid, but has filled the bladder with urine. Then, again, one must divide the full ureter, and demonstrate how

ούρου ἐξ αὐτοῦ, καθάπερ ἐν ταῖς φλεβοτομίαις τὸ αἷμα, μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ καὶ τὸν ἔτερον αὐθις διατεμεῖν κἀπειτ' ἐπιδῆσαι τὸ ζῷον ἔξωθεν, ἀμ-  
 38 φοτέρων διηρημένων, || εἰθ' ὅταν ἰκανῶς ἔχειν δοκῆ, λῦσαι τὸν δεσμόν. εὐρεθήσεται γὰρ ἡ μὲν κύστις κενή, πλῆρες δ' οὔρου τὸ μεταξὺ τῶν ἐντέρων τε καὶ τοῦ περιτοναίου χωρίον ἄπαν, ὡς ἀν εἴ καὶ ὑδερικὸν ἦν τὸ ζῷον. ταῦτ' οὖν εἴ τις αὐτὸς καθ' ἑαυτὸν βουληθείη βασανίζειν ἐπὶ ζῷου, μεγάλως μοι δοκεῖ καταγνώσεσθαι τῆς Ἀσκληπιάδου προπετείας. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ τὴν αἵτιαν μάθοι, δι' ἣν οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς κύστεως εἰς τοὺς οὐρητῆρας ἀντεκρεῖ, πεισθῆναι ἂν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ διὰ τοῦδε τὴν εἰς τὰ ζῷα πρόνοιαν τε καὶ τέχνην τῆς φύσεως.

Ἴπποκράτης μὲν οὖν ὧν ἵσμεν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων πρῶτος ἀπάντων, ὡς ἀν καὶ πρῶτος ἐπιγνοὺς τὰ τῆς φύσεως ἔργα, θαυμάζει τε καὶ διὰ παντὸς αὐτὴν ὑμνεῖ δικαίαν ὀνομάζων καὶ μόνην ἐξαρκεῖν εἰς ἄπαντα τοῖς ζῷοις φησίν, αὐτὴν ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀδιδάκτως πράττουσαν ἄπαντα τὰ δέοντα· τοιαύτην δ' οὖσαν αὐτὴν εὐθέως καὶ δυνάμεις ὑπέλαβεν ἔχειν ἐλκτικὴν μὲν τῶν οἰκείων, ἀποκριτικὴν δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων καὶ  
 39 τρέφειν τε καὶ αὔξειν αὐ||τὴν τὰ ζῷα καὶ κρίνειν τὰ νοσήματα· καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἐν τοῖς σώμασιν ἥμῶν σύμπνοιαν τε μίαν εἶναι φησι καὶ σύρροιαν καὶ πάντα συμπαθέα. κατὰ δὲ τὸν Ἀσκληπιάδην

<sup>1</sup> “De l'habileté et de la prévoyance de la nature à l'égard des animaux” (Daremburg). cf. p. 56, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 36, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

the urine spurts out of it, like blood in the operation of venesection ; and after this one cuts through the other also, and both being thus divided, one bandages up the animal externally. Then when enough time seems to have elapsed, one takes off the bandages ; the bladder will now be found empty, and the whole region between the intestines and the peritoneum full of urine, as if the animal were suffering from dropsy. Now, if anyone will but test this for himself on an animal, I think he will strongly condemn the rashness of Asclepiades, and if he also learns the reason why nothing regurgitates from the bladder into the ureters, I think he will be persuaded by this also of the forethought and art shown by Nature in relation to animals.<sup>1</sup>

Now Hippocrates, who was the first known to us of all those who have been both physicians and philosophers inasmuch as he was the first to recognize what Nature effects, expresses his admiration of her, and is constantly singing her praises and calling her "just." Alone, he says, she suffices for the animal in every respect, performing of her own accord and without any teaching all that is required. Being such, she has, as he supposes, certain *faculties*, one attractive of what is appropriate,<sup>2</sup> and another eliminative of what is foreign, and she nourishes the animal, makes it grow, and expels its diseases by crisis.<sup>3</sup> Therefore he says that there is in our bodies a concordance in the movements of air and fluid, and that everything is in sympathy. According to Asclepiades, however, nothing is

<sup>3</sup> The morbid material passed successively through the stages of "crudity," "coction" (*pepsis*), and "elimination" (*crisis*). For "critical days" cf. p. 74, note 1.

οὐδὲν οὐδενὶ συμπαθές ἔστι φύσει, διηρημένης τε καὶ κατατεθραυσμένης εἰς ἄναρμα στοιχεῖα καὶ ληρώδεις ὅγκους ἀπάστης τῆς οὐσίας. ἐξ ἀνάγκης οὖν ἄλλα τε μυρία τοῦ ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις ἐναντίως ἀπεφήνατο καὶ τῆς φύσεως ἡγνόησε τὴν τε τῶν οἰκείων ἐπισπαστικὴν δύναμιν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀποκριτικὴν. ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς ἔξαιματώσεώς τε καὶ ἀναδόσεως ἔξενρέ τινα ψυχρὰν ἀδολεσχίαν<sup>1</sup> εἰς δὲ τὴν τῶν περιττωμάτων κάθαρσιν οὐδὲν ὅλως εὐρὼν εἰπεῖν οὐκ ὕκνησεν ὁμόσε χωρῆσαι τοῦ φαινομένοις, ἐπὶ μὲν τῆς τῶν οὔρων διακρίσεως ἀποστερήσας μὲν τῶν τε νεφρῶν καὶ τῶν οὐρητήρων τὴν ἐνέργειαν, ἀδήλους δέ τινας πόρους εἰς τὴν κύστιν ὑποθέμενος· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν δηλαδὴ μέγα καὶ σεμνὸν ἀπιστήσαντα τοῦ φαινομένοις πιστεῦσαι τοῦ ἀδήλοις.

40     Ἐπὶ // δὲ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἔτι μεῖζον αὐτῷ καὶ νεανικώτερόν ἔστι τὸ τόλμημα· γεννᾶσθαι γὰρ αὐτὴν ἐν τοῖς χοληδόχοις ἀγγείοις, οὐ διακρίνεσθαι λέγει.

Πῶς οὖν τοῖς ἴκτερικοῖς ἄμ' ἄμφω συμπίπτει, τὰ μὲν διαχωρήματα μηδὲν ὅλως ἐν αὐτοῖς ἔχοντα χολῆς, ἀνάπλεων δ' αὐτοῖς γιγνόμενον ὅλον τὸ σῶμα; ληρεῖν πάλιν ἐνταῦθ' ἀναγκάζεται τοῖς ἐπὶ τῶν οὔρων εἱρημένοις παραπλησίως. ληρεῖ δ' οὐδὲν ἥττον καὶ περὶ τῆς μελαινῆς χολῆς καὶ τοῦ σπληνὸς οὔτε τί ποθ' ὑφ' Ἰπποκράτους εἱρηται συνιεῖς ἀντιλέγειν τ' ἐπιχειρῶν οἷς οὐκ οἴδεν ἐμπλήκτῳ τινὶ καὶ μανικῷ στόματι.

<sup>1</sup> This was the process by which nutriment was taken up from the alimentary canal ; “absorption,” “dispersal ;” cf.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

naturally in sympathy with anything else, all substance being divided and broken up into inharmonious elements and absurd "molecules." Necessarily, then, besides making countless other statements in opposition to plain fact, he was ignorant of Nature's faculties, both that attracting what is appropriate, and that expelling what is foreign. Thus he invented some wretched nonsense to explain blood-production and *anadosis*,<sup>1</sup> and, being utterly unable to find anything to say regarding the clearing-out<sup>2</sup> of superfluities, he did not hesitate to join issue with obvious facts, and, in this matter of urinary secretion, to deprive both the kidneys and the ureters of their activity, by assuming that there were certain invisible channels opening into the bladder. It was, of course, a grand and impressive thing to do, to mistrust the obvious, and to pin one's faith in things which could not be seen !

Also, in the matter of the yellow bile, he makes an even grander and more spirited venture ; for he says this is actually generated in the bile-ducts, not merely separated out.

How comes it, then, that in cases of jaundice two things happen at the same time—that the dejections contain absolutely no bile, and that the whole body becomes full of it ? He is forced here again to talk nonsense, just as he did in regard to the urine. He also talks no less nonsense about the black bile and the spleen, not understanding what was said by Hippocrates ; and he attempts in stupid—I might say insane—language, to contradict what he knows nothing about.

p. 13, note 5. The subject is dealt with more fully in chap. xvi.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *catharsis*.

Τί δὴ τὸ κέρδος ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων δογμάτων εἰς τὰς θεραπείας ἐκτήσατο; μήτε νεφριτικόν τι νόσημα δύνασθαι θεραπεῦσαι μήτ' ἵκτερικὸν μήτε μελαγχολικόν, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῦ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις οὐχ Ἰπποκράτει μόνον ὁμολογουμένου τοῦ καθαίρειν τῶν φαρμάκων ἔνια μὲν τὴν ἔαυθὴν χολήν, ἔνια δὲ τὴν μέλαιναν, ἄλλα δέ τινα φλέγμα καὶ τινα τὸ λεπτὸν καὶ ὑδατῶδες περίττωμα, μηδὲ περὶ τούτων συγχωρεῖν, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτῶν τῶν φαρμάκων γίγνεσθαι λέγειν τοιούτον ἔκαστον

41 τῶν κενουμένων, ὥσπερ ὑπὸ τῶν χολη̄||δόχων πόρων τὴν χολήν· καὶ μηδὲν διαφέρειν κατὰ τὸν θαυμαστὸν Ἀσκληπιάδην ἡ ὑδραγωγὸν διδόναι τοῖς ὑδεριώσιν ἡ χολαγωγὸν φάρμακον· ἅπαντα γὰρ ὁμοίως κενοῦν καὶ συντήκειν τὸ σῶμα καὶ τὸ σύντηγμα τοιόνδε τι φαίνεσθαι ποιεῖν, μὴ πρότερον ὑπάρχον τοιούτον.

'Αρ' οὖν οὐ μαίνεσθαι νομιστέον αὐτὸν ἡ παντάπασιν ἅπειρον εἶναι τῶν ἔργων τῆς τέχνης; τίς γὰρ οὐκ οἰδεν, ώς, εἰ μὲν φλέγματος ἀγωγὸν δοθείη φάρμακον τοῖς ἵκτεριώσιν, οὐκ ἀν οὐδὲ τέτταρας κυάθους καθαρθεῖεν· οὕτω δ' οὐδὲ εἰ τῶν ὑδραγωγῶν τι· χολαγωγῷ δὲ φαρμάκῳ πλεῖστον μὲν ἔκκενούται χολῆς, αὐτίκα δὲ καθαρὸς τοῖς οὕτω καθαρθεῖσιν ὁ χρὼς γίγνεται. πολλοὺς γοῦν ἡμεῖς μετὰ τὸ θεραπεῦσαι τὴν ἐν τῷ ἥπατι διάθεσιν ἅπαξ καθήραντες ἀπηλλάξαμεν τοῦ παθήματος. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ εἰ φλέγματος ἀγωγῷ καθαίροις φαρμάκῳ, πλέον ἀν τι διαπράξαιο.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. urine.

<sup>2</sup> On use of κενόω v. p. 67, note 9.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. bile and phlegm had no existence as such before the

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

And what profit did he derive from these opinions from the point of view of treatment? He neither was able to cure a kidney ailment, nor jaundice, nor a disease of black bile, nor would he agree with the view held not merely by Hippocrates but by all men regarding drugs—that some of them purge away yellow bile, and others black, some again phlegm, and others the thin and watery superfluity<sup>1</sup>; he held that all the substances evacuated<sup>2</sup> were *produced by the drugs themselves*, just as yellow bile is produced by the biliary passages! It matters nothing, according to this extraordinary man, whether we give a hydragogue or a cholagogue in a case of dropsy, for these all equally purge<sup>2</sup> and dissolve the body, and produce a solution having such and such an appearance, which did not exist as such before!<sup>3</sup>

Must we not, therefore, suppose he was either mad, or entirely unacquainted with practical medicine? For who does not know that if a drug for attracting phlegm be given in a case of jaundice it will not even evacuate four *cyathi*<sup>4</sup> of phlegm? Similarly also if one of the hydragogues be given. A cholagogue, on the other hand, clears away a great quantity of bile, and the skin of patients so treated at once becomes clear. I myself have, in many cases, after treating the liver condition, then removed the disease by means of a single purgation; whereas, if one had employed a drug for removing phlegm one would have done no good.

drugs were given; they are the products of dissolved tissue. Asclepiades did not believe that diseases were due to a *materia peccans*, but to disturbances in the movements of the molecules ( $\delta\gamma\kappa\omega\iota$ ) which constitute the body; thus, in opposition to the humoralists such as Galen, he had no use for drugs. cf. p. 49, note 5. <sup>4</sup> About 4 oz., or one-third of a pint.

Καὶ ταῦτ' οὐχ Ἰπποκράτης μὲν οὕτως οἰδε  
γυγνόμενα, τοῖς δ' ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπειρίας μόνης ὄρμω-  
42 μένοις ἑτέρως ἔγνωσται, ἀλλὰ κάκεύ||νοις ὡσαύτως  
καὶ πᾶσιν ἰατροῖς, οὓς μέλει τῶν ἔργων τῆς τέχ-  
νης, οὕτω δοκεῖ πλὴν Ἀσκληπιάδου. προδοσίαν  
γὰρ εἶναι νενόμικε τῶν στοιχείων ὡν ὑπέθετο τὴν  
ἀληθή περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ὁμολογίαν. εἰ γὰρ  
ὅλως εὑρεθείη τι φάρμακον ἐλκτικὸν τοῦδε τινος  
τοῦ χυμοῦ μόνου, κίνδυνος κρατεῖν δηλαδὴ τῷ  
λόγῳ τὸ ἐν ἑκάστῳ τῶν σωμάτων εἶναι τινα  
δύναμιν ἐπισπαστικὴν τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος. διὰ  
τούτο κυνῆκον μὲν καὶ κόκκον τὸν κυίδιον καὶ  
ἱπποφαὲς οὐχ ἔλκειν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος ἀλλὰ ποιεῖν  
τὸ φλέγμα φησίν. ἄνθος δὲ χαλκοῦ καὶ λεπίδα  
καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν κεκαυμένον χαλκὸν καὶ χαμαΐδρυν  
καὶ χαμαιλέοντα εἰς ὕδωρ ἀναλύειν τὸ σῶμα καὶ  
τοὺς ὑδερικοὺς ὑπὸ τούτων οὐ καθαιρομένους ὄνι-  
νασθαι ἀλλὰ κενουμένους συναυξένοντων δηλαδὴ τὸ  
πάθος. εἰ γὰρ οὐ κενοῦ τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν τοῖς  
σώμασιν ὑδατῶδες ὑγρὸν ἀλλὰ αὐτὸ γεννᾷ, τῷ  
νοσήματι προστιμωρεῖται. καὶ μέν γε καὶ ἡ  
σκαμμωνία πρὸς τῷ μὴ κενοῦν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος  
τῶν ἱκτερικῶν τὴν χολὴν ἔτι καὶ τὸ χρηστὸν αἷμα  
43 χολὴν ἐργαζομένη || καὶ συντήκουσα τὸ σῶμα καὶ  
τηλικαῦτα κακὰ δρῶσα καὶ τὸ πάθος ἐπαύξουσα  
κατά γε τὸν Ἀσκληπιάδου λόγον.

“Ομως ἐναργῶς ὄράται πολλοὺς ὠφελοῦσα.  
ναι, φησίν, ὄνινανται μέν, ἀλλ' αὐτῷ μόνῳ τῷ

<sup>1</sup> The Empiricists. cf. Introduction, p. xiii.

<sup>2</sup> His ὅγκοι or molecules.

<sup>3</sup> He does not say “organized” or “living” body; inanimate things were also thought to possess “natures”; cf. p. 2, note 1.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

Nor is Hippocrates the only one who knows this to be so, whilst those who take experience alone as their starting-point<sup>1</sup> know otherwise ; they, as well as all physicians who are engaged in the practice of medicine, are of this opinion. Asclepiades, however, is an exception ; he would hold it a betrayal of his assumed "elements"<sup>2</sup> to confess the truth about such matters. For if a single drug were to be discovered which attracted such and such a humour only, there would obviously be danger of the opinion gaining ground that there is in every body<sup>3</sup> a faculty which attracts its own particular quality. He therefore says that safflower,<sup>4</sup> the Cnidian berry,<sup>5</sup> and *Hippophaes*,<sup>6</sup> do not draw phlegm from the body, but actually make it. Moreover, he holds that the flower and scales of bronze, and burnt bronze itself, and germander,<sup>7</sup> and wild mastich<sup>8</sup> dissolve the body into water, and that dropsical patients derive benefit from these substances, not because they are purged by them, but because they are rid of substances which actually help to increase the disease ; for, if the medicine does not evacuate<sup>9</sup> the dropsical fluid contained in the body, but generates it, it aggravates the condition further. Moreover, scammony, according to the Asclepiadean argument, not only fails to evacuate<sup>9</sup> the bile from the bodies of jaundiced subjects, but actually turns the useful blood into bile, and dissolves the body ; in fact it does all manner of evil and increases the disease.

And yet this drug may be clearly seen to do good to numbers of people ! "Yes," says he, "they derive

<sup>4</sup> *Carthamus tinctorius.*

<sup>5</sup> *Daphne Gnidium.*

<sup>6</sup> *Euphorbia acanthothamnos.*

<sup>7</sup> *Teucrium chamaedrys.*

<sup>8</sup> *Attractylis gummosa.*

<sup>9</sup> On use of *κερδω* cf. p. 98, note 1.

λόγῳ τῆς κενώσεως. καὶ μὴν εἰ φλέγματος ἀγωγὸν αὐτοῖς δοίης φάρμακον, οὐκ ὄνήσονται. καὶ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἐναργές ἔστιν, ὥστε καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ μόνης τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὄρμώμενοι γιγνώσκουσιν αὐτό. καίτοι τούτοις γε τοῖς ἀνδράσιν αὐτὸ δὴ τοῦτ' ἔστι φιλοσόφημα, τὸ μηδενὶ λόγῳ πιστεύειν ἀλλὰ μόνοις τοῖς ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις. ἐκεῖνοι μὲν οὖν σωφρονοῦσιν Ἀσκληπιάδης δὲ παραπαίει ταῖς αἰσθήσεσιν ἡμᾶς ἀπιστεῦν κελεύων, ἔνθα τὸ φαινόμενον ἀνατρέπει σαφῶς αὐτοῦ τὰς ὑποθέσεις. καίτοι μακρῷ γ' ἦν ἀμεινον οὐχ ὁμόσε χωρεῖν τοῖς φαινομένοις ἀλλ' ἐκείνοις ἀναθέσθαι τὸ πᾶν.

Ἄρ' οὖν ταῦτα μόνον ἐναργῶς μάχεται τοῖς Ἀσκληπιάδοις δόγμασιν ἢ καὶ τὸ θέρους μὲν πλείονα κενοῦσθαι τὴν ξανθὴν χολὴν ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν φαρμάκων, χειμῶνος δὲ τὸ φλέγμα, καὶ νεανίσκῳ μὲν πλείονα τὴν χολὴν, πρεσβύτῃ δὲ τὸ

44 φλέγμα; φαίνεται || γὰρ ἔκαστον ἔλκειν τὴν οὖσαν, οὐκ αὐτὸ γεννᾶν τὴν οὐκ οὖσαν. εἰ γοῦν ἐθελήσαις νεανίσκῳ τινὶ τῶν ἰσχυῶν καὶ θερμῶν ὥρᾳ θέρους μήτ' ἀργῶς βεβιωκότι μήτ' ἐν πλησμονῇ φλέγματος ἀγωγὸν δοῦναι φάρμακον, ὀλίγιστον μὲν καὶ μετὰ βίας πολλῆς ἐκκενώσεις τοῦ χυμοῦ, βλάψεις δ' ἐσχάτως τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐμπαλιν δ' εἰ χολαγωγὸν δοίης, καὶ πάμπολυ κενώσεις καὶ βλάψεις οὐδέν.

Ἄρ' ἀπιστοῦμεν ἔτι τῷ μὴ οὐχ ἔκαστον τῶν φαρμάκων ἐπάγεσθαι τὸν οἰκεῖον ἑαυτῷ χυμόν;

<sup>1</sup> Empiricist physicians.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII

benefit certainly, but merely in proportion to the evacuation." . . . But if you give these cases a drug which draws off phlegm they will not be benefited. This is so obvious that even those who make experience alone their starting-point<sup>1</sup> are aware of it; and these people make it a cardinal point of their teaching to trust to no arguments, but only to what can be clearly seen: In this, then, they show good sense; whereas Asclepiades goes far astray in bidding us distrust our senses where obvious facts plainly overturn his hypotheses. Much better would it have been for him not to assail obvious facts, but rather to devote himself entirely to these.

Is it, then, these facts only which are plainly irreconcilable with the views of Asclepiades? Is not also the fact that in summer yellow bile is evacuated in greater quantity by the same drugs, and in winter phlegm, and that in a young man more bile is evacuated, and in an old man more phlegm? Obviously each drug attracts something which already exists, and does not generate something previously non-existent. Thus if you give in the summer season a drug which attracts phlegm to a young man of a lean and warm habit, who has lived neither idly nor too luxuriously, you will with great difficulty evacuate a very small quantity of this humour, and you will do the man the utmost harm. On the other hand, if you give him a cholagogue, you will produce an abundant evacuation and not injure him at all.

Do we still, then, disbelieve that each drug attracts *that humour which is proper to it?*<sup>2</sup> Possibly the

<sup>2</sup> Note that drugs also have "natures"; cf. p. 66, note 3, and pp. 83-84.

## GALEN

ἴσως φήσουσιν οἱ ἀπ' Ἀσκληπιάδου, μᾶλλον δὲ  
οὐκ ἴσως, ἀλλὰ πάντως ἀπιστεῖν ἐροῦσιν, ἵνα μὴ  
προδῶσι τὰ φίλτατα.

## XIV

Πάλιν οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐφ' ἑτέραν μεταβώμεν  
ἀδολεσχίαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐπιτρέπουσιν οἱ σοφισταὶ  
τῶν ἀξίων τι ζητημάτων προχειρίζεσθαι καίτοι  
παμπόλλων ὑπαρχόντων, ἀλλὰ κατατρίβειν ἀναγ-  
κάζουσι τὸν χρόνον εἰς τὴν τῶν σοφισμάτων, ὃν  
προβάλλουσι, λύσιν.

Τίς οὖν ἡ ἀδολεσχία; ἡ ἔνδοξος αὔτη καὶ  
45 πολυθρύλητος λίθος ἡ τὸν σίδηρον || ἐπισπωμένη.  
τάχα γὰρ ἀν αὐτῇ ποτὲ τὴν ψυχὴν αὐτῶν ἐπι-  
σπάσαιτο πιστεύειν εἶναι τινας ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν σω-  
μάτων ἐλκτικὰς τῶν οἰκείων ποιοτήτων δυνάμεις.

'Επίκουρος μὲν οὖν καίτοι παραπλησίοις Ἀσ-  
κληπιάδῃ στοιχείοις πρὸς τὴν φυσιολογίαν χρώ-  
μενος ὅμως ὄμολογεῖ, πρὸς μὲν τῆς ἥρακλείας  
λίθου τὸν σίδηρον ἔλκεσθαι, πρὸς δὲ τῶν ἡλέκ-  
τρων τὰ κυρήβια καὶ πειράται γε καὶ τὴν αἵτιαν  
ἀποδιδόναι τοῦ φαινομένου. τὰς γὰρ ἀπορρεούσας  
ἀτόμους ἀπὸ τῆς λίθου ταῖς ἀπορρεούσαις ἀπὸ  
τοῦ σιδήρου τοῖς σχήμασιν οἰκείας εἶναι φησιν,  
ώστε περιπλέκεσθαι ῥαδίως. προσκρουούσας οὖν  
αὐτὰς τοῖς συγκρίμασιν ἐκατέροις τῆς τε λίθου  
καὶ τοῦ σιδήρου κάπειτ' εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀποπαλ-  
λομένας οὕτως ἀλλήλαις τε περιπλέκεσθαι καὶ

<sup>1</sup> Pun here. <sup>2</sup> Lit. *physiology*, i.e. *nature-lore*, almost  
our "Natural Philosophy"; cf. Introduction, p. xxvi.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. XIII.—XIV

adherents of Asclepiades will assent to this—or rather, they will—not possibly, but certainly—declare that they disbelieve it, lest they should betray their darling prejudices.

### XIV

LET us pass on, then, again to another piece of nonsense ; for the sophists do not allow one to engage in enquiries that are of any worth, albeit there are many such ; they compel one to spend one's time in dissipating the fallacious arguments which they bring forward.

What, then, is this piece of nonsense ? It has to do with the famous and far-renowned stone which draws iron [the lodestone]. It might be thought that this would draw<sup>1</sup> their minds to a belief that there are in all bodies certain *faculties* by which they attract their own proper qualities.

Now Epicurus, despite the fact that he employs in his *Physics*<sup>2</sup> elements similar to those of Asclepiades,<sup>3</sup> yet allows that iron is attracted by the lodestone,<sup>4</sup> and chaff by amber. He even tries to give the cause of the phenomenon. His view is that the atoms which flow from the stone are related in shape to those flowing from the iron, and so they become easily interlocked with one another ; thus it is that, after colliding with each of the two compact masses (the stone and the iron) they then rebound into the middle and so become entangled with each other,

<sup>1</sup> The ultimate particle of Epicurus was the *ἄτομος* or atom (lit. “non-divisible”), of Asclepiades, the *σύκος* or molecule. Asclepiades took his atomic theory from Epicurus, and he again from Democritus ; cf. p. 49, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *Herculean stone*.

*συνεπισπᾶσθαι τὸν σίδηρον.* τὸ μὲν οὖν τῶν ὑποθέσεων εἰς τὴν αἴτιολογίαν ἀπίθανον ἄντικρυς δῆλον, ὅμως δ' οὖν ὁμολογεῖ τὴν ὄλκήν. καὶ οὕτω γε καὶ κατὰ τὰ σώματα τῶν ζώων φησὶ γίγνεσθαι τάς τ' ἀναδόσεις καὶ τὰς διακρίσεις τῶν περιττωμάτων καὶ τὰς τῶν καθαιρόντων φαρμάκων ἐνεργείας.

46 *'Ασκληπιάδης δὴ τό τε τῆς εἰρημένης αἰτίας ἀπίθανον || ὑπιδόμενος καὶ μηδεμίαν ἀλλην ἐφ'* οὶς ὑπέθετο στοιχείους ἔξευρίσκων πιθανὴν ἐπὶ τὸ μηδ' ὅλως ἔλκεσθαι λέγειν ὑπὸ μηδενὸς μηδὲν ἀναισχυντήσας ἐτράπετο, δέον, εἰ μήθ' οὶς Ἐπίκουρος εἰπεν ἡρέσκετο μήτ' ἄλλα βελτίω λέγειν εἶχεν, ἀποστῆναι τῶν ὑποθέσεων καὶ τήν τε φύσιν εἰπεῖν τεχνικὴν καὶ τὴν οὐσίαν τῶν ὄντων ἐνουμένην τε πρὸς ἑαυτὴν ἀεὶ καὶ ἀλλοιουμένην ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτῆς μορίων εἰς ἄλληλα δρώντων τε καὶ πασχόντων. εἰ γὰρ ταῦθ' ὑπέθετο, χαλεπὸν οὐδὲν ἦν τὴν τεχνικὴν ἐκείνην φύσιν ὁμολογῆσαι δύναμεις ἔχειν ἐπισπαστικὴν μὲν τῶν οἰκείων, ἀποκριτικὴν δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων. οὐ γὰρ δι' ἄλλο τί γ' ἦν αὐτῇ τὸ τεχνικῆ τ' εἶναι καὶ τοῦ ζώου διασωστικῆ καὶ τῶν νοσημάτων κριτικῆ παρὰ τὸ προσίεσθαι μὲν καὶ φυλάττειν τὸ οἰκεῖον, ἀποκρίνειν δὲ τὸ ἀλλότριον.

47 *'Αλλ' Ἀσκληπιάδης κἀνταῦθα τὸ μὲν ἀκόλουθον ταῖς ἀρχαῖς αἷς ὑπέθετο συνεῖδεν, οὐ μὴν τὴν γε πρὸς τὸ φαινόμενον ἐναργῶς ἥδεσθη μάχην, ἀλλ' ὁμόσε || χωρεῖ καὶ περὶ τούτου πᾶσιν οὐκ ἰατροῖς μόνον ἀλλ' ἥδη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις*

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *aetiology*.

<sup>2</sup> *Anadosis*; cf. p. 62, note 1.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

and draw the iron after them. So far, then, as his hypotheses regarding causation<sup>1</sup> go, he is perfectly unconvincing ; nevertheless, he does grant that there is an attraction. Further, he says that it is on similar principles that there occur in the bodies of animals the dispersal of nutriment<sup>2</sup> and the discharge of waste matters, as also the actions of cathartic drugs.

Asclepiades, however, who viewed with suspicion the incredible character of the cause mentioned, and who saw no other credible cause on the basis of his supposed elements, shamelessly had recourse to the statement that nothing is in any way attracted by anything else. Now, if he was dissatisfied with what Epicurus said, and had nothing better to say himself, he ought to have refrained from making hypotheses, and should have said that Nature is a constructive artist and that the substance of things is always tending towards unity and also towards alteration because its own parts act upon and are acted upon by one another.<sup>3</sup> For, if he had assumed this, it would not have been difficult to allow that this constructive nature has powers which attract appropriate and expel alien matter. For in no other way could she be constructive, preservative of the animal, and eliminative of its diseases,<sup>4</sup> unless it be allowed that she conserves what is appropriate and discharges what is foreign.

But in this matter, too, Asclepiades realized the logical sequence of the principles he had assumed ; he showed no scruples, however, in opposing plain fact ; he joins issue in this matter also, not merely with all physicians, but with everyone else, and

<sup>3</sup> cf. p. 45.   <sup>4</sup> The *vis conservatrix et medicatrix Naturae*.

οὔτε κρίσιν εἶναι τινα λέγων οὕθ' ἡμέραν κρίσιμον οὕθ' δλως οὐδὲν ἐπὶ σωτηρίᾳ τοῦ ζφου πραγματεύσασθαι τὴν φύσιν. ἀεὶ γάρ τὸ μὲν ἀκολουθον φυλάττειν βούλεται, τὸ δὲ ἐναργῶς φαινόμενον ἀνατρέπειν ἔμπαλιν Ἐπικούρῳ. τιθεὶς γάρ ἐκεῖνος ἀεὶ τὸ φαινόμενον αἰτίαν αὐτοῦ ψυχρὰν ἀποδίδωσι. τὰ γάρ ἀποπαλλόμενα σμικρὰ σώματα τῆς ἡρακλείας λίθου τοιούτοις ἑτέροις περιπλέκεσθαι μορίοις τοῦ σιδήρου κάπειτα διὰ τῆς περιπλοκῆς ταύτης μηδαμοῦ φαινομένης ἐπισπᾶσθαι βαρεῖαν οὕτως οὐσίαν οὐκ οἰδ' ὅπως ἄν τις πεισθείη. καὶ γάρ εἰ τοῦτο συγχωρήσομεν, τό γε τῷ σιδήρῳ πάλιν ἑτερον προστεθέν τι συνάπτεσθαι τὴν αὐτὴν αἰτίαν οὐκέτι προσίεται.

Τί γάρ ἐροῦμεν; ἡ δηλαδὴ τῶν ἀπορρεόντων τῆς λίθου μορίων ἔνια μὲν προσκρούσαντα τῷ σιδήρῳ πάλιν ἀποπάλλεσθαι καὶ ταῦτα μὲν εἶναι, δι' ὧν κρεμάννυσθαι συμβαίνει τὸν σίδηρον, τὰ δὲ

48 εἰς αὐτὸν εἰσδυόμενα διὰ τῶν || κενῶν πόρων διεξέρχεσθαι τάχιστα κάπειτα τῷ παρακειμένῳ σιδήρῳ προσκρούοντα μήτ' ἐκεῖνον διαδῦναι δυνασθαι, καίτοι τόν γε πρώτον διαδύντα, παλινδρομοῦντα δὲ αὐθις ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον ἑτέρας αὖθις ἐργάζεσθαι ταῦς προτέραις ὁμοίας περιπλοκάς;

'Εναργῶς γάρ ἐνταῦθα τὸ ληρῶδες τῆς αἰτίας ἐλέγχεται. γραφεῖα γοῦν οἰδά ποτε σιδηρᾶ πέντε κατὰ τὸ συνεχὲς ἀλλήλοις συναφθέντα, τοῦ πρώτου μὲν μόνου τῆς λίθου ψαύσαντος, ἐξ ἐκείνου

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 61, note 3. The crisis or resolution in fevers was observed to take place with a certain regularity; hence arose the doctrine of "critical days."

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

maintains that there is no such thing as a crisis, or critical day,<sup>1</sup> and that Nature does absolutely nothing for the preservation of the animal. For his constant aim is to follow out logical consequences and to upset obvious fact, in this respect being opposed to Epicurus; for the latter always stated the observed fact, although he gives an ineffective explanation of it. For, that these small corpuscles belonging to the lodestone rebound, and become entangled with other similar particles of the iron, and that then, by means of this entanglement (which cannot be seen anywhere) such a heavy substance as iron is attracted—I fail to understand how anybody could believe this. Even if we admit this, the same principle will not explain the fact that, when the iron has another piece brought in contact with it, this becomes attached to it.

For what are we to say? That, forsooth, some of the particles that flow from the lodestone collide with the iron and then rebound back, and that it is by these that the iron becomes suspended? that others penetrate into it, and rapidly pass through it by way of its empty channels?<sup>2</sup> that these then collide with the second piece of iron and are not able to penetrate it although they penetrated the first piece? and that they then course back to the first piece, and produce entanglements like the former ones?

The hypothesis here becomes clearly refuted by its absurdity. As a matter of fact, I have seen five writing-stylets of iron attached to one another in a line, only the first one being in contact with the

<sup>2</sup> These were hypothetical spaces or channels between the atoms; cf. Introduction, p. xiv.

δ' εἰς τάλλα τῆς δυνάμεως διαδοθείσης· καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν εἰπεῖν, ὡς, εἰ μὲν τῷ κάτω τοῦ γραφείου πέρατι προσάγοις ἔτερον, ἔχεται τε καὶ συνάπτεται καὶ κρέμαται τὸ προσενεχθέν· εἰ δ' ἄλλῳ τινὶ μέρει τῶν πλαγίων προσθείης, οὐ συνάπτεται. πάντη γὰρ ὅμοιώς ἡ τῆς λίθου διαδίδοται δύναμις, εἰ μόνον ἄψαιτο κατά τι τοῦ πρώτου γραφείου. καὶ μέντοι κάκ τούτου πάλιν εἰς τὸ δεύτερον ὅλον ἡ δύναμις ἀμα νοήματι διαρρεῖ κάξ ἐκείνου πάλιν εἰς τὸ τρίτον ὅλον. εἰ δὴ νοήσαις σμικράν τινα λίθου ἡρακλείαν ἐν οἴκῳ τινὶ κρεμαμένην, εἰτ' ἐν κύκλῳ ψαύοντα πάμπολλα σιδήρια κάκείνων πάλιν ἔτερα κάκείνων ἄλλα καὶ τοῦτ' ἄχρι πλείονος, ἄπαντα || δήπου πίμπλασθαι δεῖ τὰ σιδήρια τῶν ἀπορρεόντων τῆς λίθου σωμάτων. καὶ κινδυνεύει διαφορηθῆναι τὸ σμικρὸν ἐκεῖνο λιθίδιον εἰς τὰς ἀπορροὰς διαλυθέν. καίτοι, καν εἰ μηδὲν παρακέοιτ' αὐτῷ σιδήριον, εἰς τὸν ἀέρα σκεδάννυσται, μάλιστ' εἰ καὶ θερμὸς ὑπάρχοι.

49

Nai, φησί, σμικρὰ γὰρ αὐτὰ χρὴ πάνυ νοεῖν, ὥστε τῶν ἐμφερομένων τῷ ἀέρι ψηγμάτων τούτων δὴ τῶν σμικροτάτων ἐκείνων ἔνια μυριοστὸν εἶναι μέρος. εἰτ' ἐξ οὗτω σμικρῶν τολμάτε λέγειν κρεμάννυσθαι βάρη τηλικαῦτα σιδήρου; εἰ γὰρ ἔκαστον αὐτῶν μυριοστόν ἔστι μέρος τῶν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι φερομένων ψηγμάτων, πηλίκον χρὴ νοήσαι τὸ πέρας αὐτῶν τὸ ἀγκιστροειδές, φ περιπλέκεται πρὸς ἄλληλα; πάντως γὰρ δήπου τοῦτο σμικρότατόν ἔστιν ὅλου τοῦ ψήγματος.

<sup>1</sup> He means the specific drawing power or faculty of the lodestone.      <sup>2</sup> cf. our modern "radium-emissions."

lodestone, and the power<sup>1</sup> being transmitted through it to the others. Moreover, it cannot be said that if you bring a second stylet into contact with the lower end of the first, it becomes held, attached, and suspended, whereas, if you apply it to any other part of the side it does not become attached. For the power of the lodestone is distributed in all directions ; it merely needs to be in contact with the first stylet at any point ; from this stylet again the power flows, as quick as a thought, all through the second, and from that again to the third. Now, if you imagine a small lodestone hanging in a house, and in contact with it all round a large number of pieces of iron, from them again others, from these others, and so on,—all these pieces of iron must surely become filled with the corpuscles which emanate from the stone ; therefore, this first little stone is likely to become dissipated by disintegrating into these emanations.<sup>2</sup> Further, even if there be no iron in contact with it, it still disperses into the air, particularly if this be also warm.

“Yes,” says Epicurus, “but these corpuscles must be looked on as exceedingly small, so that some of them are a ten-thousandth part of the size of the very smallest particles carried in the air.” Then do you venture to say that so great a weight of iron can be suspended by such small bodies ? If each of them is a ten-thousandth part as large as the dust particles which are borne in the atmosphere, how big must we suppose the hook-like extremities by which they interlock with each other<sup>3</sup> to be ? For of course this is quite the smallest portion of the whole particle.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Ehrlich’s hypothesis of “receptors” in explanation of the “affinities” of animal cells.

Είτα μικρὸν μικρῷ, κινούμενον κινουμένῳ περιπλακὲν οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀποπάλλεται. καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἄλλ' ἄττα πάντως αὐτοῖς, τὰ μὲν ἄνωθεν, τὰ δὲ κάτωθεν, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔμπροσθεν, τὰ δ' ὅπισθεν, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν δεξιῶν, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν ἀριστερῶν ||

50 ἐκρηγνύμενα σείει τε καὶ βράττει καὶ μένειν οὐκ ἔᾳ. καὶ μέντοι καὶ πολλὰ χρὴ νοεῖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἔκαστον ἐκείνων τῶν σμικρῶν σωμάτων ἔχειν ἀγκιστρώδη πέρατα. δι' ἑνὸς μὲν γὰρ ἀλλήλοις συνάπτεται, δι' ἑτέρου δ' ἑνὸς τοῦ μὲν ὑπερκειμένου τῇ λίθῳ, τοῦ δ' ὑποκειμένου τῷ σιδήρῳ. εἰ γὰρ ἄνω μὲν ἔξαφθείη τῆς λίθου, κάτω δὲ τῷ σιδήρῳ μὴ συμπλακείη, πλέον οὐδέν. ὥστε τοῦ μὲν ὑπερκειμένου τὸ ἄνω μέρος ἐκκρέμασθαι χρὴ τῆς λίθου, τοῦ δ' ὑποκειμένου τῷ κάτω πέρατι συνηῆθαι τὸν σιδηρόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κάκ τῶν πλαγίων ἀλλήλοις περιπλέκεται, πάντως που κάνταῦθα ἔχει τὰ ἀγκιστρα. καὶ μέμνησό μοι πρὸ πάντων, ὅπως ὅντα σμικρὰ τὰς τοιαύτας καὶ τοσαύτας ἀποφύσεις ἔχει. καὶ τούτου μᾶλλον ἔτι, πῶς, ἵνα τὸ δεύτερον σιδήριον συναφθῆ τῷ πρώτῳ καὶ τῷ δευτέρῳ τὸ τρίτον κάκείνῳ τὸ τέταρτον, ἀμα μὲν διεξέρχεσθαι χρὴ τοὺς πόρους ταυτὶ τὰ σμικρὰ καὶ ληρώδη ψήγματα, ἀμα δ' ἀποπάλλεσθαι τοῦ μετ' αὐτὸν || τεταγμένου, καίτοι κατὰ πᾶν ὁμοίου τὴν φύσιν ὑπάρχοντος.

51

Οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡ τοιαύτη πάλιν ὑπόθεσις ἄτολμος, ἄλλ', εἰ χρὴ τάληθὲς εἰπεῖν, μακρῷ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἀναισχυντοτέρα, πέντε σιδηρίων ὁμοίων ἀλλή-

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

Then, again, when a small body becomes entangled with another small body, or when a body in motion becomes entangled with another also in motion, they do not rebound at once. For, further, there will of course be others which break in upon them from above, from below, from front and rear, from right and left, and which shake and agitate them and never let them rest. Moreover, we must perforce suppose that each of these small bodies has a large number of these hook-like extremities. For by one it attaches itself to its neighbours, by another—the topmost one—to the lodestone, and by the bottom one to the iron. For if it were attached to the stone above and not interlocked with the iron below, this would be of no use.<sup>1</sup> Thus, the upper part of the superior extremity must hang from the lodestone, and the iron must be attached to the lower end of the inferior extremity ; and, since they interlock with each other by their sides as well, they must, of course, have hooks there too. Keep in mind also, above everything, what small bodies these are which possess all these different kinds of outgrowths. Still more, remember how, in order that the second piece of iron may become attached to the first, the third to the second, and to that the fourth, these absurd little particles must both penetrate the passages in the first piece of iron and at the same time rebound from the piece coming next in the series, although this second piece is naturally in every way similar to the first.

Such an hypothesis, once again, is certainly not lacking in audacity ; in fact, to tell the truth, it is far more shameless than the previous ones ; according

<sup>1</sup> i.e. from the point of view of the theory.

λοις ἐφεξῆς τεταγμένων διὰ τοῦ πρώτου διαδυόμενα ῥαδίως τῆς λίθου τὰ μόρια κατὰ τὸ δεύτερον ἀποπάλλεσθαι καὶ μὴ διὰ τούτου κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἔτοίμως διεξέρχεσθαι. καὶ μὴν ἑκατέρως ἄτοπον. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἀποπάλλεται, πῶς εἰς τὸ τρίτον ὡκέως διεξέρχεται; εἰ δὲ οὐκ ἀποπάλλεται, πῶς κρεμάννυται τὸ δεύτερον ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου; τὴν γὰρ ἀπόπαλσιν αὐτὸς ὑπέθετο δημιουργὸν τῆς ὀλκῆς.

‘Αλλ’, ὅπερ ἔφην, εἰς ἀδολεσχίαν ἀναγκαῖον ἐμπίπτειν, ἐπειδάν τις τοιούτοις ἀνδράσι διαλέγηται. σύντομον οὖν τινα καὶ κεφαλαιώδη λόγου εἰπὼν ἀπαλλάττεσθαι βούλομαι. τοῖς Ἀσκληπιάδον γράμμασιν εἴ τις ἐπιμελῶς ὅμιλήσειε, τὴν τε πρὸς τὰς ἀρχὰς ἀκόλουθίαν τῶν τοιούτων δογμάτων ἀκριβῶς ἀν ἐκμάθοι καὶ τὴν πρὸς τὰ φαινόμενα μάχην. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἐπίκουρος τὰ 52 φαινόμενα φυλάττειν βουλόμενος ἀσχημονεῖ || φιλοτιμούμενος ἐπιδεικνύειν αὐτὰ ταῖς ἀρχαῖς ὅμολογοῦντα· ὁ δὲ Ἀσκληπιάδης τὸ μὲν ἀκόλουθον ταῖς ἀρχαῖς φυλάττει, τοῦ φαινομένου δὲ οὐδὲν αὐτῷ μέλει. ὅστις οὖν βούλεται τὴν ἀτοπίαν ἔξελέγχειν τῶν ὑποθέσεων, εἰ μὲν πρὸς Ἀσκληπιάδην ὁ λόγος αὐτῷ γίγνοιτο, τὴν πρὸς τὸ φαινόμενον ὑπομιμησκέτω μάχης· εἰ δέ πρὸς Ἐπίκουρον, τῆς πρὸς τὰς ἀρχὰς διαφωνίας. αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι σχεδὸν αἱρέσεις αἱ τῶν ὅμοίων ἀρχῶν ἔχόμεναι τελέως ἀπέσβησαν, αὗται δὲ ἔτι μόναι διαρκοῦσιν οὐκ ἀγεννῶς. καίτοι τὰ μὲν Ἀσκληπιάδον Μηνόδοτος ὁ ἐμπειρικὸς ἀφύκτως ἔξελέγχει, τὴν τε πρὸς τὰ φαινόμενα μάχην ὑπομιμῆσκων αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν πρὸς ἄλληλα· τὰ δὲ

to it, when five similar pieces of iron are arranged in a line, the particles of the lodestone which easily traverse the first piece of iron rebound from the second, and do not pass readily through it in the same way. Indeed, it is nonsense, whichever alternative is adopted. For, if they do rebound, how then do they pass through into the third piece? And if they do not rebound, how does the second piece become suspended to the first? For Epicurus himself looked on the rebound as the active agent in attraction.

But, as I have said, one is driven to talk nonsense whenever one gets into discussion with such men. Having, therefore, given a concise and summary statement of the matter, I wish to be done with it. For if one diligently familiarizes oneself with the writings of Asclepiades, one will see clearly their logical dependence on his first principles, but also their disagreement with observed facts. Thus, Epicurus, in his desire to adhere to the facts, cuts an awkward figure by aspiring to show that these agree with his principles, whereas Asclepiades safeguards the sequence of principles, but pays no attention to the obvious fact. Whoever, therefore, wishes to expose the absurdity of their hypotheses, must, if the argument be in answer to Asclepiades, keep in mind his disagreement with observed fact; or if in answer to Epicurus, his discordance with his principles. Almost all the other sects depending on similar principles are now entirely extinct, while these alone maintain a respectable existence still. Yet the tenets of Asclepiades have been unanswerably confuted by Menodotus the Empiricist, who draws his attention to their opposition to phenomena and to each other;

Ἐπικούρου πάλιν ὁ Ἀσκληπιάδης ἔχόμενος ἀεὶ τῆς ἀκολουθίας, ἡς ἐκεῖνος οὐ πάνυ τι φαίνεται φροντίζων.

- ‘Αλλ’ οἱ νῦν ἄνθρωποι, πρὶν καὶ ταύτας ἐκμαθεῖν τὰς αἵρεσεις καὶ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς βελτίους κάπειτα χρόνῳ πολλῷ κρίναί τε καὶ βασανίσαι τὸ καθ’ ἐκάστην αὐτῶν ἀληθές τε καὶ ψεῦδος, οἱ μὲν ἰατροὺς ἑαυτούς, οἱ δὲ φιλοσόφους 53 ὀνομάζουσι μηδὲν εἰδότες. || οὐδὲν οὖν θαυμαστὸν ἐπίσης τοῖς ἀληθέσι τὰ ψευδῆ τετιμῆσθαι. ὅτῳ γάρ ἀν ἔκαστος πρώτῳ περιτύχῃ διδασκάλῳ, τοιοῦτος ἐγένετο, μὴ περιμείνας μηδὲν ἔτι παρ’ ἄλλου μαθεῖν. ἔνιοι δ’ αὐτῶν, εἰ καὶ πλείστιν ἐντύχοιεν, ἀλλ’ οὕτω γ’ εἰσὶν ἀσύνετοί τε καὶ βραδεῖς τὴν διάνοιαν, ὥστε καὶ γεγηρακότες οὕπω συνιάσιν ἀκολουθίαν λόγου. πάλαι δὲ τοὺς τοιούτους ἐπὶ τὰς βαναύσους ἀπέλυνον τέχνας. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἐς ὃ τι τελευτήσει θεὸς οἴδεν.
- ‘Ημεῖς δ’ ἐπειδή, καίτοι φεύγοντες ἀντιλέγειν τοῖς ἐν αὐταῖς ταῖς ἀρχαῖς εὐθὺς ἐσφαλμένοις, ὅμως ἡναγκάσθημεν ὑπ’ αὐτῆς τῶν πραγμάτων τῆς ἀκολουθίας εἰπεῖν τινα καὶ διαλεχθῆναι πρὸς αὐτούς, ἔτι καὶ τοῦτο προσθήσομεν τοῖς εἰρημένοις, ὡς οὐ μόνον τὰ καθαίροντα φάρμακα πέφυκεν ἐπισπᾶσθαι τὰς οἰκείας ποιότητας ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ τοὺς σκόλοπας ἀνάγοντα καὶ τὰς τῶν βελῶν ἀκίδας εἰς πολὺ βάθος σαρκὸς ἐμπεπαρμένας ἐνίστε. καὶ μέντοι καὶ ὅσα τοὺς ἴοὺς τῶν θηρίων ἡ τοὺς ἐμπεφαρμαγμένους τοῖς βέλεσιν ἀνέλκει, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν αὐτὴν ταῖς ἡρακλείαις 54 λίθοις ἐπιδείκνυνται δύναμιν. ἔγωγ’ οὖν οἰδά ποτε καταπεπαρμένον ἐν ποδὶ νεανίσκου σκόλοπα τοῖς

and, again, those of Epicurus have been confuted by Asclepiades, who adhered always to logical sequence, about which Epicurus evidently cares little.

Now people of the present day do not begin by getting a clear comprehension of these sects, as well as of the better ones, thereafter devoting a long time to judging and testing the true and false in each of them ; despite their ignorance, they style themselves, some “physicians” and others “philosophers.” No wonder, then, that they honour the false equally with the true. For everyone becomes like the first teacher that he comes across, without waiting to learn anything from anybody else. And there are some of them, who, even if they meet with more than one teacher, are yet so unintelligent and slow-witted that even by the time they have reached old age they are still incapable of understanding the steps of an argument. . . . In the old days such people used to be set to menial tasks. . . . What will be the end of it God knows !

Now, we usually refrain from arguing with people whose principles are wrong from the outset. Still, having been compelled by the natural course of events to enter into some kind of a discussion with them, we must add this further to what was said—that it is not only cathartic drugs which naturally attract their special qualities,<sup>1</sup> but also those which remove thorns and the points of arrows such as sometimes become deeply embedded in the flesh. Those drugs also which draw out animal poisons or poisons applied to arrows all show the same faculty as does the lodestone. Thus, I myself have seen a thorn which was embedded in a young man’s foot fail to

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 69, note 2.

μὲν δακτύλοις ἔλκουσιν ἡμῖν βιαίως οὐκ ἀκολουθήσαντα, φαρμάκου δ' ἐπιτεθέντος ἀλύπτως τε καὶ διὰ ταχέων ἀνελθόντα. καίτοι καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο τινες ἀντιλέγουσι φάσκοντες, ὅταν ἡ φλεγμονὴ λυθῇ τοῦ μέρους, αὐτόματον ἔξιέναι τὸν σκόλοπα πρὸς οὐδενὸς ἀνελκόμενον. ἀλλ' οὐτοί γε πρώτοι μὲν ἀγνοεῖν ἐοίκασιν, ώς ἄλλα μέν ἔστι φλεγμονῆς, ἄλλα δὲ τῶν οὗτω καταπεπαρμένων ἐλκτικὰ φάρμακα· καίτοι γ' εἴπερ ἀφλεγμάντων γενιομένων ἔξεκρίνετο τὰ παρὰ φύσιν, ὅσα φλεγμονῆς ἔστι λυτικά, ταῦτ' εὐθὺς ἀν ἦν κάκείνων ἐλκτικά.

Δεύτερον δ', ὁ καὶ μᾶλλον ἀν τις θαυμάσειεν, ώς οὐ μόνον ἄλλα μὲν τοὺς σκόλοπας, ἄλλα δὲ τοὺς ἰοὺς ἔξαγει φάρμακα, ἄλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τοὺς ἰοὺς ἐλκόντων τὰ μὲν τὸν τῆς ἔχιδνης, τὰ δὲ τὸν τῆς τρυγόνος, τὰ δ' ἄλλους τινὸς ἐπισπάται καὶ σαφῶς ἔστιν ἵδεῖν τοῖς φαρμάκοις ἐπικειμένους αὐτούς. ἐνταῦθ' οὖν Ἐπίκουρον μὲν 55 ἐπαινεῖν χρὴ τῆς πρὸς || τὸ φαινόμενον αἰδοῦς, μέμφεσθαι δὲ τὸν λόγον τῆς αἰτίας. ὃν γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἔλκουστες τοῖς δακτύλοις οὐκ ἀνηγάγομεν σκόλοπα, τοῦτον ὑπὸ τῶν σμικρῶν ἐκείνων ἀνέλκεσθαι ψηγμάτων, πῶς οὐ παντάπασιν ἄτοπου εἶναι χρὴ νομίζειν;

\*Αρ' οὖν ἥδη πεπείσμεθα τῶν ὄντων ἐκάστῳ δύναμίν τιν' ὑπάρχειν, οὐ τὴν οἰκείαν ἔλκει ποιότητα, τὸ μὲν μᾶλλον, τὸ δ' ἥττον;

\*Η καὶ τὸ τῶν πυρῶν ἔτι παράδειγμα πρ-

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, the two properties should go together in all cases—which they do not. <sup>2</sup> *Trygon pastinaca.*

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

come out when we exerted forcible traction with our fingers, and yet come away painlessly and rapidly on the application of a medicament. Yet even to this some people will object, asserting that when the inflammation is dispersed from the part the thorn comes away of itself, without being pulled out by anything. But these people seem, in the first place, to be unaware that there are certain drugs for drawing out inflammation and different ones for drawing out embedded substances ; and surely if it was on the cessation of an inflammation that the abnormal matters were expelled, then all drugs which disperse inflammations ought, *ipso facto*, to possess the power of extracting these substances as well.<sup>1</sup>

And secondly, these people seem to be unaware of a still more surprising fact, namely, that not merely do certain medicaments draw out thorns and others poisons, but that of the latter there are some which attract the poison of the viper, others that of the sting-ray,<sup>2</sup> and others that of some other animal ; we can, in fact, plainly observe these poisons deposited on the medicaments. Here, then, we must praise Epicurus for the respect he shows towards obvious facts, but find fault with his views as to causation. For how can it be otherwise than extremely foolish to suppose that a thorn which we failed to remove by digital traction could be drawn out by these minute particles ?

Have we now, therefore, convinced ourselves that everything which exists<sup>3</sup> possesses a faculty by which it attracts its proper quality, and that some things do this more, and some less ?

Or shall we also furnish our argument with the

<sup>3</sup> cf. p. 66, note 3.

χειρισόμεθα τῷ λόγῳ; φανήσονται γὰρ οἱμαι καὶ τῶν γεωργῶν αὐτῶν ἀμαθέστεροι περὶ τὴν φύσιν οἱ μηδὲν δλως ὑπὸ μηδενὸς ἔλκεσθαι συγχωροῦντες· ὡς ἔγωγε πρῶτον μὲν ἀκούσας τὸ γιγνόμενον ἐθαύμασα καὶ αὐτὸς ἡβουλήθην αὐτοπτης αὐτοῦ καταστῆναι. μετὰ ταῦτα δέ, ὡς καὶ τὰ τῆς πείρας ὡμολόγει, τὴν αἰτίαν σκοπούμενος ἐν παμπόλλῳ χρόνῳ κατὰ πάσας τὰς αἵρεσεις οὐδεμίᾳν ἄλλην εὑρεῖν οἶος τ' ἦν οὐδ' ἄχρι τοῦ πιθανοῦ προϊοῦσαν ἀλλὰ καταγελάστους τε καὶ σαφῶς ἔξελεγχομένας τὰς ἄλλας ἀπάσας πλὴν τῆς τὴν ὄλκὴν πρεσβευούσης.

"Εστι δὲ τὸ γιγνόμενον τοιόνδε. κατακομίζοντες οἱ παρ' ἡμῖν γεωργοὶ τοὺς || ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν πυροὺς εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν ἀμάξαις τισίν, ὅταν ὑφελέσθαι βουληθῶσιν, ὥστε μὴ φωραθῆναι, κεράμι ἄττα πληρώσαντες ὕδατος μέσοις αὐτοῖς ἐνιστᾶσιν. ἔλκοντες οὖν ἐκεῖνοι διὰ τοῦ κεραμίου τὸ ὑγρὸν εἰς αὐτοὺς δγκον μὲν καὶ βάρος προσκτῶνται, κατάδηλοι δ' οὐ πάνυ γύγνονται τοῖς ὄρῶσιν, εἰ μή τις προπεπυσμένος ἤδη περιεργότερον ἐπισκοποῖτο. καίτοι γ' εἰ βουληθείης ἐν ἡλίῳ καταθεῖναι πάνυ θερμῷ ταῦτὸν ἀγγεῖον, ἐλάχιστον παντελῶς εύρήσεις τὸ δαπανώμενον ἐφ' ἐκάστης ἡμέρας. οὕτως ἄρα καὶ τῆς ἡλιακῆς θερμασίας τῆς σφοδρᾶς ἵσχυροτέραν οἱ πυροὶ δυναμιν ἔχουσιν ἐλκεῖν εἰς ἑαυτοὺς τὴν πλησιάζουσαν ὑγρότητα. λῆρος οὖν ἐνταῦθα μακρὸς ἡ πρὸς τὸ λεπτομερὲς φορὰ τοῦ περιέχοντος ἡμᾶς ἀέρος καὶ μάλισθ' ὅταν ίκανῶς ἡ θερμός,

---

<sup>1</sup> The way that corn can attract moisture.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

illustration afforded by *corn*?<sup>1</sup> For those who refuse to admit that anything is attracted by anything else, will, I imagine, be here proved more ignorant regarding Nature than the very peasants. When, for my own part, I first learned of what happens, I was surprised, and felt anxious to see it with my own eyes. Afterwards, when experience also had confirmed its truth, I sought long among the various sects for an explanation, and, with the exception of that which gave the first place to *attraction*, I could find none which even approached plausibility, all the others being ridiculous and obviously quite untenable.

What happens, then, is the following. When our peasants are bringing corn from the country into the city in wagons, and wish to filch some away without being detected, they fill earthen jars with water and stand them among the corn; the corn then draws the moisture into itself through the jar and acquires additional bulk and weight, but the fact is never detected by the onlookers unless someone who knew about the trick before makes a more careful inspection. Yet, if you care to set down the same vessel in the very hot sun, you will find the daily loss to be very little indeed. Thus corn has a greater power than extreme solar heat of drawing to itself the moisture in its neighbourhood.<sup>2</sup> Thus the theory that the water is carried towards the rarefied part of the air surrounding us<sup>3</sup> (particularly when that is distinctly warm) is utter nonsense; for although it is

<sup>2</sup> Specific attraction of the "proper" quality; cf. p. 85, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Theory of evaporation insufficient to account for it. cf. p. 104, note 1.

πολὺ μὲν ὑπάρχοντος ἡ κατὰ τοὺς πυροὺς λεπτο-  
μερεστέρου, δεχομένου δ' οὐδὲ τὸ δέκατον μέρος  
τῆς εἰς ἐκείνους μεταλαμβανομένης ὑγρότητος.

## XV

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἵκανῶς ἡδολεσχήσαμεν οὐχ ἔκόντες,  
ἀλλ', ως ἡ παροιμία φησί, μαινομένοις ἀναγ-  
57 κασθέντες συμμανῆναι, πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν οὔρων  
ἐπανέλθωμεν διάκρισιν, ἐν ᾧ τῶν μὲν Ἀσκλη-  
πιάδου λήρων ἐπιλαθώμεθα, μετὰ δὲ τῶν πε-  
πεισμένων διηθεῖσθαι τὰ οὐρα διὰ τῶν νεφρῶν,  
τίς ὁ τρόπος τῆς ἐνεργείας ἐστίν, ἐπισκεψώμεθα·  
πάντως γὰρ ἡ ἔξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς φέρεται  
τὰ οὐρα τοῦτο βέλτιον εἶναι νομίζοντα, καθάπερ  
ἡμεῖς, ὅπόταν εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀπίωμεν· ἡ, εἰ τοῦτ'  
ἀδύνατον, ἔτερόν τι χρὴ τῆς φορᾶς αὐτῶν ἐξευρεῖν  
αἴτιον. τί δὴ τοῦτ' ἔστιν; εἰ γὰρ μὴ τοῖς νεφροῖς  
δώσομέν τινα δύναμιν ἐλκτικὴν τῆς τοιαύτης  
ποιότητος, ως Ἰπποκράτης ἐνόμιζεν, οὐδὲν ἔτερον  
ἐξευρήσομεν. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ἦτοι τούτους ἐλκειν  
αὐτὸ προσῆκεν ἡ τὰς φλέβας πέμπειν, εἴπερ γε μὴ  
ἔξ ἑαυτοῦ φέρεται, παντί που δῆλον. ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν  
αἱ φλέβες περιστελλόμεναι προωθοῦεν, οὐκ ἐκεῖνο  
μόνον, ἀλλὰ σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ πᾶν αἷμα τὸ  
περιεχόμενον ἐν ἑαυταῖς εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ἐκ-  
θλίψουσιν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτ' ἀδύνατον, ως δείξομεν,  
λείπεται τοὺς νεφροὺς ἐλκειν.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv.-xv

much more rarefied there than it is amongst the corn, yet it does not take up a tenth part of the moisture which the corn does.

### XV

SINCE, then, we have talked sufficient nonsense—not willingly, but because we were forced, as the proverb says, “to behave madly among madmen”—let us return again to the subject of urinary secretion. Here let us forget the absurdities of Asclepiades, and, in company with those who are persuaded that the urine does pass through the kidneys, let us consider what is the character of this function. For, most assuredly, either the urine is conveyed by its own motion to the kidneys, considering this the better course (as do we when we go off to market!<sup>1</sup>), or, if this be impossible, then some other reason for its conveyance must be found. What, then, is this? If we are not going to grant the kidneys a faculty for attracting this particular quality,<sup>2</sup> as Hippocrates held, we shall discover no other reason. For, surely everyone sees that either the kidneys must attract the urine, or the veins must propel it—if, that is, it does not move of itself. But if the veins did exert a propulsive action when they contract, they would squeeze out into the kidneys not merely the urine, but along with it the whole of the blood which they contain.<sup>3</sup> And if this is impossible, as we shall show, the remaining explanation is that the kidneys do exert traction.

<sup>1</sup> Playful suggestion of free-will in the urine.

<sup>2</sup> Specific attraction. *cf.* p. 87, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. there would be no selective action.

- Πῶς οὖν ἀδύνατον τοῦτο; τῶν νεφρῶν ἡ θέσις  
 ἀντιβαίνει. οὐ γὰρ δὴ οὕτω γ' ὑπόκεινται τῇ  
 58 κοίλῃ φλεβὶ || καθάπερ τοῖς ἐξ ἐγκεφάλου  
 περιττώμασιν ἐν τε τῇ ρινὶ καὶ κατὰ τὴν ὑπερφάν  
 οἱ τοῖς ἡθμοῖς ὅμοιοι πόροι, ἀλλ' ἐκατέρωθεν  
 αὐτῇ παράκεινται. καὶ μήν, εἴπερ ὅμοίως τοῖς  
 ἡθμοῖς ὅσον ἀν γέ λεπτότερον καὶ τελέως ὄρρωδες,  
 τοῦτο μὲν ἔτοιμως διαπέμπουσι, τὸ δὲ παχύτερον  
 ἀποστέγουσιν, ἅπαν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἵέναι χρὴ τὸ  
 αἷμα τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν τῇ κοίλῃ φλεβὶ, καθάπερ  
 εἰς τοὺς τρυγητοὺς ὁ πᾶς οἶνος ἐμβάλλεται. καὶ  
 μέν γε καὶ τὸ τοῦ γάλακτος τοῦ τυρουμένου  
 παράδειγμα σαφῶς ἄν, δὲ βούλομαι λέγειν,  
 ἐνδείξαιτο. καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο πᾶν ἐμβληθὲν  
 εἰς τοὺς ταλάρους οὐ πᾶν διηθεῖται, ἀλλ' ὅσον  
 μὲν ἀν γέ λεπτότερον τῆς εὔρυτητος τῶν πλοκά-  
 μων, εἰς τὸ κάταντες φέρεται καὶ τοῦτο μὲν  
 ὄρρος ἐπονομάζεται· τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ τὸ παχὺ τὸ  
 μέλλον ἔσεσθαι τυρός, ὡς ἀν οὐ παραδεχομένων  
 αὐτὸ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ταλάροις πόρων, οὐ διεκπίπτει  
 κάτω. καὶ τοίνυν, εἴπερ οὕτω μέλλει διηθεῖσθαι  
 τῶν νεφρῶν ὁ τοῦ αἷματος ὄρρος, ἅπαν ἐπ'  
 αὐτοὺς ἥκειν χρὴ τὸ αἷμα καὶ μὴ τὸ μὲν ναί, τὸ  
 δ' οὔ. ||
- 59 Πῶς οὖν ἔχει τὸ φαινόμενον ἐκ τῆς ἀνατομῆς;  
 Τὸ μὲν ἔτερον μέρος τῆς κοίλης ἄνω πρὸς τὴν  
 καρδίαν ἀναφέρεται, τὸ λοιπὸν δ' ἐπιβαίνει τῇ  
 ράχῃ καθ' ὅλης αὐτῆς ἐκτεινόμενον ἄχρι τῶν  
 σκελῶν, ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἔτερον οὐδὲ ἐγγὺς ἀφικνεῖται

<sup>1</sup> Nasal mucus was supposed to be the non-utilizable part of the nutriment conveyed to the brain. cf. p. 214, note 3.

And how is propulsion by the veins impossible? The situation of the kidneys is against it. They do not occupy a position beneath the hollow vein [vena cava] as does the sieve-like [ethmoid] passage in the nose and palate in relation to the surplus matter from the brain;<sup>1</sup> they are situated on both sides of it. Besides, if the kidneys are like sieves, and readily let the thinner serous [whey-like] portion through, and keep out the thicker portion, then the whole of the blood contained in the vena cava must go to them, just as the whole of the wine is thrown into the filters. Further, the example of milk being made into cheese will show clearly what I mean. For this, too, although it is all thrown into the wicker strainers, does not all percolate through; such part of it as is too fine in proportion to the width of the meshes passes downwards, and this is called *whey* [serum]; the remaining thick portion which is destined to become cheese cannot get down, since the pores of the strainers will not admit it. Thus it is that, if the blood-serum has similarly to percolate through the kidneys, the whole of the blood must come to them, and not merely one part of it.

What, then, is the appearance as found on dissection?

One division of the vena cava is carried upwards<sup>2</sup> to the heart, and the other mounts upon the spine and extends along its whole length as far as the legs; thus one division does not even come near the

<sup>2</sup> He means from its origin in the liver (*i.e.* in the three hepatic veins). His idea was that the upper division took nutriment to heart, lungs, head, etc., and the lower division to lower part of body. On the relation of right auricle to vena cava and right ventricle, *cf.* p. 321, notes 4 and 5.

τῶν νεφρῶν, τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ πλησιάζει μέν, οὐ μὴν εἰς αὐτούς γε καταφύεται. ἐχρῆν δ', εἴπερ ἔμελλεν ώς δι' ἡθμῶν αὐτῶν καθαρθήσεσθαι τὸ αἷμα, πᾶν ἐμπίπτειν εἰς αὐτοὺς καπεῖτα κάτω μὲν φέρεσθαι τὸ λεπτόν, ἵσχεσθαι δ' ἄνω τὸ παχύ. νυνὶ δ' οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει· πλάγιοι γὰρ ἑκατέρωθεν τῆς κοιλῆς φλεβὸς οἱ νεφροὶ κεῖνται. οὔκουν ώς ἡθμοὶ διηθοῦσι, πεμπούσης μὲν ἐκείνης, αὐτοὶ δ' οὐδεμίαν εἰσφερόμενοι δύναμιν, ἀλλ' ἔλκουσι δηλονότι τοῦτο γὰρ ἔτι λείπεται.

Πῶς οὖν ἔλκουσιν; εἰ μέν, ως Ἐπίκουρος οἴεται τὰς ὄλκὰς ἀπάσας γίγνεσθαι κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἀτόμων ἀποπάλσεις τε καὶ περιπλοκάς, ἅμεινον ἦν ὅντως εἰπεῖν αὐτοὺς μηδὲ ἔλκειν δλῶς· πολὺ γὰρ ἀν οὕτω γε τῶν ἐπὶ τῆς ἡρακλείας λίθου 60 μικρῷ πρόσθεν εἰρημένων ὁ λόγος ἐξεταζόμενος εὑρεθείη γελοιότερος· ἀλλ' ως Ἰπποκράτης ἥβούλετο. λεχθήσεται δὲ σαφέστερον ἐπὶ προήκοντι τῷ λόγῳ. νυνὶ γὰρ οὐ τοῦτο πρόκειται διδάσκειν, ἀλλ' ως οὗτ' ἄλλο τι δυνατὸν εἰπεῖν αἵτιον είναι τῆς τῶν οὔρων διακρίσεως πλὴν τῆς ὄλκῆς τῶν νεφρῶν οὕθ' οὕτω γίγνεσθαι τὴν ὄλκήν, ως οἱ μηδεμίαν οἰκείαν διδόντες τῇ φύσει δύναμιν οἴονται γίγνεσθαι.

Τούτου γὰρ ὁμολογηθέντος, ως ἔστιν δλῶς τις ἐν τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως διοικουμένοις δύναμις ἐλκτική, ληρώδης νομίζοιτ' ἀν ὁ περὶ ἀναδόσεως τροφῆς ἄλλο τι λέγειν ἐπιχειρῶν.

<sup>1</sup> We arrive at our belief by excluding other possibilities.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. the mechanistic physicists. cf. pp. 45-47.

<sup>3</sup> cf. p. 85, note 3.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xv

kidneys, while the other approaches them but is certainly not inserted into them. Now, if the blood were destined to be purified by them as if they were sieves, the whole of it would have to fall into them, the thin part being thereafter conveyed downwards, and the thick part retained above. But, as a matter of fact, this is not so. For the kidneys lie on either side of the vena cava. They therefore do not act like sieves, filtering fluid sent to them by the vena cava, and themselves contributing no force. They obviously exert traction ; for this is the only remaining alternative.

*How, then, do they exert this traction ? If, as Epicurus thinks, all attraction takes place by virtue of the *rebounds* and *entanglements* of atoms, it would be certainly better to maintain that the kidneys have no attractive action at all ; for his theory, when examined, would be found as it stands to be much more ridiculous even than the theory of the lodestone, mentioned a little while ago. Attraction occurs in the way that Hippocrates laid down ; this will be stated more clearly as the discussion proceeds ; for the present our task is not to demonstrate this, but to point out that no other cause of the secretion of urine can be given except that of attraction by the kidneys,<sup>1</sup> and that this attraction does not take place in the way imagined by people who do not allow Nature a faculty of her own.<sup>2</sup>*

For if it be granted that there is any attractive faculty at all in those things which are governed by Nature,<sup>3</sup> a person who attempted to say anything else about the absorption of nutriment<sup>4</sup> would be considered a fool.

<sup>1</sup> The subject of *anadosis* is taken up in the next chapter. cf. also p. 62, note 1.

## XVI

Ἐρασίστρατος δ' οὐκ οἰδ' ὅπως ἐτέραις μέν τισι δόξαις εὐήθεσιν ἀντεῖπε διὰ μακρῶν, ὑπερέβη δὲ τελέως τὴν Ἰπποκράτους, οὐδ' ἄχρι τοῦ μνημονεύσαι μόνον αὐτῆς, ως ἐν τοῖς περὶ καταπόσεως ἐποίησεν, ἀξιώσας. ἐν ἐκείνοις μὲν γὰρ ἄχρι τοσούτου φαίνεται μνημονεύσων, ως τοῦνομ' εἰπεῖν τῆς ὄλκῆς μόνον ὠδέ πως γράφων.

“Ολκὴ μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμίᾳ φαίνεται εἶναι”. περὶ δὲ τῆς || ἀναδόσεως τὸν λόγον ποιούμενος οὐδ' ἄχρι συλλαβῆς μᾶς ἐμνημόνευσε τῆς Ἰπποκρατείου δόξης. καίτοι γ' ἐπήρκεσεν ἀν ἡμῖν, εἰ καὶ τοῦτ' ἔγραψε μόνον, ως Ἰπποκράτης εἰπὼν “Σάρκες ὄλκοὶ καὶ ἐκ κοιλίης καὶ ἔξωθεν” ψεύδεται· οὕτε γὰρ ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας οὕτ' ἔξωθεν ἔλκειν δύνανται. εἰ δὲ καὶ ὅτι μήτρας αἰτιώμενος ἄρρωστον αὐχένα κακῶς εἴπεν “Οὐ γὰρ δύναται αὐτέης ὁ στόμαχος εἰρύσαι τὴν γονήν,” ἦ εἰ καὶ τι τοιοῦτον ἄλλο γράφειν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἤξιώσε, τότ' ἀν καὶ ἡμεῖς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπολογούμενοι εἴπομεν.

“Ω γενναῖε, μὴ ῥήτορικῶς ἡμῶν κατάτρεχε χωρὶς ἀποδείξεως, ἀλλ' εἰπέ τινα κατηγορίαν τοῦ δόγματος, ἵν' ἡ πεισθῶμέν σοι ως καλῶς ἔξελεγχοντι τὸν παλαιὸν λόγον ἡ μεταπείσωμεν

---

<sup>1</sup> On Erasistratus *v.* Introd. p. xii. His view that the stomach exerts no *holké*, or attraction, is dealt with more fully in Book III., chap. viii.

## XVI

Now, while Erasistratus<sup>1</sup> for some reason replied at great length to certain other foolish doctrines, he entirely passed over the view held by Hippocrates, not even thinking it worth while to mention it, as he did in his work "On Deglutition"; in that work, as may be seen, he did go so far as at least to make mention of the word *attraction*, writing somewhat as follows:

"Now, the stomach does not appear to exercise any attraction."<sup>1</sup> But when he is dealing with *anadosis* he does not mention the Hippocratic view even to the extent of a single syllable. Yet we should have been satisfied if he had even merely written this: "Hippocrates lies in saying 'The flesh<sup>2</sup> attracts both from the stomach and from without,' for it cannot attract either from the stomach or from without." Or if he had thought it worth while to state that Hippocrates was wrong in criticizing the weakness of the neck of the uterus, "seeing that the orifice of the uterus has no power of attracting semen,"<sup>3</sup> or if he [Erasistratus] had thought proper to write any other similar opinion, then we in our turn would have defended ourselves in the following terms:

"My good sir, do not run us down in this rhetorical fashion without some proof; state some definite objection to our view, in order that either you may convince us by a brilliant refutation of the ancient doctrine, or that, on the other hand, we may convert you from your ignorance." Yet why do I

<sup>2</sup> i.e. the tissues.

<sup>3</sup> cf. p. 291.

## GALEN

- ώς ἀγνοοῦντα. καίτοι τί λέγω ῥητορικῶς; μὴ γάρ, ἐπειδή τινες τῶν ῥητόρων, ἂ μάλιστ' ἀδυνατοῦσι διαλύεσθαι, ταῦτα διαγελάσαντες οὐδὲ ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἀντιλέγειν, ἥδη που τοῦτο καὶ ἡμεῖς ἡγώμεθ' εἶναι τὸ ῥητορικῶς· τὸ γὰρ διὰ λόγου  
62 πιθανοῦ ἔστι τὸ || ῥητορικῶς, τὸ δὲ ἄνευ λόγου βωμολοχικόν, οὐ ῥητορικόν. οὔκουν οὕτε ῥητορικῶς οὗτε διαλεκτικῶς ἀντεῖπεν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐν τῷ περὶ τῆς καταπόσεως λόγῳ. τί γάρ φησιν; “Ολκὴ μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἶναι.” πάλιν οὖν αὐτῷ παρ’ ἡμῶν ἀντιμαρτυρῶν ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος ἀντιπαραβαλλέσθω· περιστολὴ μὲν οὖν τοῦ στομάχου οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἶναι. καὶ πῶς οὐ φαίνεται; τάχ’ ἀν ἵσως εἴποι τις τῶν ἀπ’ αὐτοῦ· τὸ γὰρ ἀεὶ τῶν ἄνωθεν αὐτοῦ μερῶν συστελλομένων διαστέλλεσθαι τὰ κάτω πῶς οὐκ ἔστι τῆς περιστολῆς ἐνδεικτικόν; αὐθις οὖν ἡμεῖς, καὶ πῶς οὐ φαίνεται, φήσομεν, ἡ τῆς κοιλίας ὄλκή; τὸ γὰρ ἀεὶ τῶν κάτωθεν μερῶν τοῦ στομάχου διαστελλομένων συστέλλεσθαι τὰ ἄνω πῶς οὐκ ἔστι τῆς ὄλκῆς ἐνδεικτικόν; εἰ δὲ σωφρονήσειέ ποτε καὶ γνοίτη τὸ φαινόμενον τοῦτο μηδὲν μᾶλλον τῆς ἑτέρας τῶν δοξῶν ὑπάρχειν ἐνδεικτικὸν ἀλλ’ ἀμφοτέρων εἶναι κοινόν, οὕτως ἀν ἥδη δείξαιμεν αὐτῷ τὴν ὄρθην ὄδὸν τῆς τοῦ ἀληθοῦς εὑρέσεως.  
‘Αλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῆς κοιλίας αὐθις. ἡ δὲ τῆς  
63 τροφῆς ἀνάδοσις οὐδὲν δεῖται || τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολοιθίας ἅπαξ γε τῆς ἐλκτικῆς δυνάμεως

say "rhetorical"? For we too are not to suppose that when certain rhetoricians pour ridicule upon that which they are quite incapable of refuting, without any attempt at argument, their words are really thereby constituted rhetoric. For rhetoric proceeds by persuasive reasoning; words without reasoning are buffoonery rather than rhetoric. Therefore, the reply of Erasistratus in his treatise "On Deglutition" was neither rhetoric nor logic. For what is it that he says? "Now, the stomach does not appear to exercise any traction." Let us testify against him in return, and set our argument beside his in the same form. *Now, there appears to be no peristalsis<sup>1</sup> of the gullet.* "And how does this appear?" one of his adherents may perchance ask. "For is it not indicative of *peristalsis* that always when the upper parts of the gullet contract the lower parts dilate?" Again, then, we say, "And in what way does the attraction of the stomach not appear? For is it not indicative of *attraction* that always when the lower parts of the gullet dilate the upper parts contract?" Now, if he would but be sensible and recognize that this phenomenon is not more indicative of the one than of the other view, but that it applies equally to both,<sup>2</sup> we should then show him without further delay the proper way to the discovery of truth.

We will, however, speak about the stomach again. And the dispersal of nutriment [anadosis] need not make us have recourse to the theory regarding the

<sup>1</sup> *Peristalsis* may be used here to translate Gk. *peristole*, meaning the contraction and dilation of muscle-fibres *circularly* round a lumen. cf. p. 263, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> For a demonstration that this phenomenon is a conclusive proof neither of *peristole* nor of real vital *attraction*, but is found even in dead bodies v. p. 267.

ἐπὶ τῶν νεφρῶν ὡμολογημένης, ἦν καίτοι πάνυ σαφῶς ἀληθῆ γιγνώσκων ὑπάρχειν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὕτ' ἐμνημόνευσεν οὕτ' ἀντεῖπεν οὕθ' δλως ἀπεφήνατο, τίν' ἔχει δόξαν ὑπὲρ τῆς τῶν οὔρων διακρίσεως.

“Η διὰ τί προειπὼν εὐθὺς κατ’ ἀρχὰς τῶν καθ’ ὅλου λόγων, ὡς ὑπὲρ τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν ἔρει, πρῶτον τίνει τ’ εἰσὶ καὶ πῶς γίγνονται καὶ διὰ τίνων τόπων, ἐπὶ τῆς τῶν οὔρων διακρίσεως, ὅτι μὲν διὰ νεφρῶν, ἀπεφήνατο, τὸ δ’ ὅπως γίγνεται παρέλιπε; μάτην οὖν ἡμᾶς καὶ περὶ τῆς πέψεως ἐδίδαξεν, ὅπως γίγνεται, καὶ περὶ τῆς τοῦ χολώδους περιττώματος διακρίσεως κατατρίβει. ἥρκει γὰρ εἰπεῖν κάνταῦθα τὰ μόρια, δι’ ὧν γίγνεται, τὸ δ’ ὅπως παραλιπεῖν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν ἐκείνων εἶχε λέγειν, οὐ μόνον δι’ ὧν ὄργάνων ἀλλὰ καὶ καθ’ ὄντινα γίγνεται τρόπου, ὥσπερ οἷμαι καὶ περὶ τῆς ἀναδόσεως· οὐ γὰρ ἥρκεσεν εἰπεῖν αὐτῷ μόνον, ὅτι διὰ φλεβῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ πῶς ἐπεξῆλθεν, ὅτι τῇ 64 πρὸς || τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ· περὶ δὲ τῶν οὔρων τῆς διακρίσεως, ὅτι μὲν διὰ νεφρῶν γίγνεται, γράφει, τὸ δ’ ὅπως οὐκέτι προστίθησιν. οὐδὲ γὰρ οἷμαι τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ ἦν εἰπεῖν· οὕτω γὰρ ἀν οὐδεὶς ὑπ’ ἴσχουρίας ἀπέθανεν οὐδέποτε μὴ δυναμένου πλείονος ἐπιρ-

---

<sup>1</sup> This was Erasistratus's favourite principle, known in Latin as the “horror vacui” and in English as “Nature’s abhorrence of a vacuum,” although these terms are not an exact translation of the Greek. *τὸ κενούμενον* probably means

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvi

*natural tendency of a vacuum to become refilled,*<sup>1</sup> when once we have granted the attractive faculty of the kidneys. Now, although Erasistratus knew that this faculty most certainly existed, he neither mentioned it nor denied it, nor did he make any statement as to his views on the secretion of urine.

Why did he give notice at the very beginning of his "General Principles" that he was going to speak about natural activities—firstly what they are, how they take place, and in what situations—and then, in the case of urinary secretion, declared that this took place through the kidneys, but left out its method of occurrence? It must, then, have been for no purpose that he told us how digestion occurs, or spends time upon the secretion of biliary superfluities;<sup>2</sup> for in these cases also it would have been sufficient to have named the parts through which the function takes place, and to have omitted the method. On the contrary, in these cases he was able to tell us not merely through what organs, but also in what way it occurs—as he also did, I think, in the case of *anadosis*; for he was not satisfied with saying that this took place through the veins, but he also considered fully the method, which he held to be from the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled. Concerning the secretion of urine, however, he writes that this occurs through the kidneys, but does not add in what *way* it occurs. I do not think he could say that this was from the tendency of matter to fill a vacuum,<sup>3</sup> for, if this were so, nobody would have ever died of retention of urine, since no more can

*the vacuum, not the matter evacuated*, although Galen elsewhere uses *κεντω* in the latter (non-classical) sense, e.g. pp. 67, 215. Akolouthia is a *following-up*, a *sequence*, almost a *consequence*.      <sup>2</sup> v. p. 123.      <sup>3</sup> cf. Book II., chap. i.

ρήν ἀναί τοτε πιστὰ τὸ κενούμενον ἀλλης γάρ αἰτίας μηδεμιᾶς προστεθείσης, ἀλλὰ μόνης τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας ποδηγούσης τὸ συνεχές, οὐκ ἐγχωρεῖ πλέον ἐπιρρυῆναι ποτε τοῦ κενούμενου. ἀλλ ὅνδ' ἀλλην τινὰ προσθεῖναι πιθανὴν αἰτίαν εἰχεν, ως ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναδόσεως τὴν ἔκθλιψιν τῆς γαστρός. ἀλλ' αὕτη γ' ἐπὶ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν κοίλην αἴματος ἀπωλώλει τελέως, οὐ τῷ μήκει μόνον τῆς ἀποστάσεως ἐκλυθεῖσα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ τὴν καρδίαν ὑπερκειμένην ἔξαρπάζειν αὐτῆς σφοδρῶς καθ' ἐκάστην διαστολὴν οὐκ ὀλίγον αἷμα.

Μόνη δή τις ἔτι καὶ πάντων ἔρημος ἀπελείπετο τῶν σοφισμάτων ἐν τοῖς κάτω τῆς κοίλης ἡ πρὸς ||  
 65 τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία, διά τε τοὺς ἐπὶ ταῖς ἴσχουρίαις ἀποθνήσκοντας ἀπολωλεκυῖα τὴν πιθανότητα καὶ διὰ τὴν τῶν νεφρῶν θέσιν οὐδὲν ἥττον. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἄπαν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἐφέρετο τὸ αἷμα, δεόντως ἄν τις ἄπαν ἔφασκεν αὐτὸν καθαίρεσθαι. νυνὶ δέ, οὐ γὰρ ὅλον ἀλλὰ τοσοῦτον αὐτοῦ μέρος, ὅσον αἱ μέχρι νεφρῶν δέχονται φλέβες, ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἔρχεται, μόνον ἐκεῖνο καθαρθήσεται. καὶ τὸ μὲν ὄρρῳδες αὐτοῦ καὶ λεπτὸν οίον δι' ἡθμῶν τινων τῶν νεφρῶν διαδύσεται· τὸ δ' αἵματῷδές τε καὶ παχὺ κατὰ τὰς φλέβας ὑπομένον ἐμποδὼν στήσεται τῷ κατόπιν ἐπιρρέοντι. παλινδρομεῖν οὖν αὐτὸ προτερον ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην ἀναγκαῖον καὶ κενὰς οὕτως ἐργάζεσθαι τὰς ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς ἰούσας φλέβας, αἱ δεύτερον οὐκέτι

<sup>1</sup> Vital factor necessary over and above the mechanical.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 119, note 2.      <sup>3</sup> pp. 91, 93.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvi

flow into a vacuum than has run out. For, if no other factor comes into operation<sup>1</sup> save only this tendency by which a vacuum becomes refilled, no more could ever flow in than had been evacuated. Nor could he suggest any other plausible cause, such, for example, as the expression of nutriment by the stomach<sup>2</sup> which occurs in the process of anadosis; this had been entirely disproved in the case of blood in the vena cava;<sup>3</sup> it is excluded, not merely owing to the long distance, but also from the fact that the overlying heart, at each diastole, robs the vena cava by violence of a considerable quantity of blood.

In relation to the lower part of the vena cava<sup>4</sup> there would still remain, solitary and abandoned, the specious theory concerning the filling of a vacuum. This, however, is deprived of plausibility by the fact that people die of retention of urine, and also, no less, by the situation of the kidneys. For, if the whole of the blood were carried to the kidneys, one might properly maintain that it all undergoes purification there. But, as a matter of fact, the whole of it does not go to them, but only so much as can be contained in the veins going to the kidneys;<sup>5</sup> this portion only, therefore, will be purified. Further, the thin serous part of this will pass through the kidneys as if through a sieve, while the thick sanguineous portion remaining in the veins will obstruct the blood flowing in from behind; this will first, therefore, have to run back to the vena cava, and so to empty the veins going to the kidneys; these veins will no longer be able to

<sup>1</sup> i.e. the part below the liver; cf. p. 91, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Renal veins.

παρακομιοῦσιν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἀκάθαρτον αἷμα· κατειληφότος γὰρ αὐτὰς τοῦ προτέρου πάροδος οὐδεμία λέλειπται. τίς οὖν ἡμῖν ἡ δύναμις ἀπάξει πάλιν ὅπίσω τῶν νεφρῶν τὸ καθαρὸν αἷμα; τίς δὲ τοῦτο μὲν διαδεξαμένη κελεύσει πάλιν πρὸς τὸ κάτω μέρος ἴεναι τῆς κοίλης, ἔτερῳ δ' ἄνωθεν 66 ἐπιφερομένῳ προστάξει, πρὶν || ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς ἀπελθεῖν, μὴ φέρεσθαι κάτω;

Ταῦτ' οὖν ἄπαντα συνιδὼν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἀποριῶν μεστὰ καὶ μίαν μόνην δόξαν εὕπορον εὑρὼν ἐν ἄπασι τὴν τῆς ὀλκῆς, οὗτ' ἀπορεύσθαι βουλόμενος οὔτε τὴν Ἰπποκράτους ἐθέλων λέγειν ἄμεινον ὑπέλαβε σιωπητέον εἶναι περὶ τοῦ τρόπου τῆς διακρίσεως.

'Αλλ' εἰ κάκεῖνος ἐσίγησεν, ἡμεῖς οὐ σιωπήσομεν· ἵσμεν γάρ, ως οὐκ ἐνδέχεται παρελθόντα τὴν Ἰπποκράτειον δόξαν, εἴθ' ἔτερόν τι περὶ νεφρῶν ἐνεργείας εἰπόντα μὴ οὐ καταγέλαστον εἶναι παντάπασι. διὰ τοῦτ' Ἐρασίστρατος μὲν ἐσιώπησεν, Ἀσκληπιάδης δ' ἐψεύσατο παραπλησίως οἰκέταις λάλοις μὲν τὰ πρόσθεν τοῦ βίου καὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις ἐγκλήματα διαλυσαμένοις ὑπὸ περιττῆς πανουργίας, ἐπ' αὐτοφώρῳ δέ ποτε κατειλημμένοις, εἰτ' οὐδὲν ἐξευρίσκουσι σόφισμα κᾱπειτ' ἐνταῦθα τοῦ μὲν αἰδημονεστέρου σιωπῶντος, οίον ἀποπληξίᾳ τινὶ κατειλημμένου, τοῦ δ' ἀναισχυντοτέρου κρύπτοντος μὲν ἔθ' ὑπὸ μάλης τὸ ζητούμενον, ἐξομνυμένου δὲ καὶ μηδ' ἐωρακέναι πώποτε φάσκοντος. οὕτω γάρ τοι καὶ ὁ Ἀσκληπιάδης || ἐπιλειπόντων αὐτὸν τῶν τῆς πανουργίας σοφισμάτων καὶ μήτε τῆς πρὸς τὸ λεπτομερὲς

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvi

conduct a second quantity of unpurified blood to the kidneys—occupied as they are by the blood which had preceded, there is no passage left. What power have we, then, which will draw back the purified blood from the kidneys? And what power, in the next place, will bid this blood retire to the lower part of the vena cava, and will enjoin on another quantity coming from above not to proceed downwards before turning off into the kidneys?

Now Erasistratus realized that all these ideas were open to many objections, and he could only find one idea which held good in all respects—namely, that of *attraction*. Since, therefore, he did not wish either to get into difficulties or to mention the view of Hippocrates, he deemed it better to say nothing at all as to the manner in which secretion occurs.

But even if he kept silence, I am not going to do so. For I know that if one passes over the Hippocratic view and makes some other pronouncement about the function of the kidneys, one cannot fail to make oneself utterly ridiculous. It was for this reason that Erasistratus kept silence and Asclepiades lied; they are like slaves who have had plenty to say in the early part of their career, and have managed by excessive rascality to escape many and frequent accusations, but who, later, when caught in the act of thieving, cannot find any excuse; the more modest one then keeps silence, as though thunderstruck, whilst the more shameless continues to hide the missing article beneath his arm and denies on oath that he has ever seen it. For it was in this way also that Asclepiades, when all subtle excuses had failed him and there was no longer any room for nonsense about “conveyance towards the

φορᾶς ἔχούσης ἔτι χώραν ἐνταυθοῖ ληρεῦσθαι μήθ' ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν γεννᾶται τουτὶ τὸ περίττωμα, καθάπερ ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν ἥπατι πόρων ἡ χολή, δυνατὸν δὲ εἰπόντα μὴ οὐ μέγιστον ὀφλεῖν γέλωτα, ἔξομνυται τε καὶ ψεύδεται φανερῶς, οὐ διήκειν λέγων ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς τὸ οὖρον ἀλλ' ἀτμοειδῶς εὐθὺς ἐκ τῶν κατὰ τὴν κοίλην μερῶν εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἀθροίζεσθαι.

Οὗτοι μὲν οὖν τοῖς ἐπ' αὐτοφώρῳ κατειλημμένοις οἰκέταις ὁμοίως ἐκπλαγέντες ὁ μὲν ἐσιώπησεν, ὁ δὲ ἀναισχύντως ψεύδεται.

## XVII

Τῶν δὲ νεωτέρων ὅσοι τοῖς τούτων ὀνόμασιν ἔαυτοὺς ἐσέμνυναν Ἐρασιστρατείους τε καὶ Ἀσκληπιαδείους ἐπονομάσαντες, ὁμοίως τοῖς ὑπὸ τοῦ βελτίστου Μενάνδρου κατὰ τὰς κωμῳδίας εἰσαγομένοις οἰκέταις, Δάοις τέ τισι καὶ Γέταις, οὐδὲν ἡγουμένοις σφίσι πεπρᾶχθαι γενναῖον, εἰ μὴ τρὶς ἔξαπατήσειαν τὸν δεσπότην, οὗτο καὶ αὐτὸι κατὰ πολλὴν σχολὴν ἀναίσχυντα σοφίσματα συνέθεσαν, οἱ μὲν, ἵνα μηδὲ ὄλως ἔξελεγχθείη ποτ' || 68 Ἀσκληπιάδης ψευδόμενος, οἱ δὲ, ἵνα κακῶς εἴπωσιν, ἀ καλῶς ἐσιώπησεν Ἐρασιστρατος.

'Αλλὰ τῶν μὲν Ἀσκληπιαδείων ἄλις. οἱ δὲ Ἐρασιστράτειοι λέγειν ἐπιχειροῦντες, ὅπως οἱ νεφροὶ διηθοῦσι τὸ οὖρον, ἀπαντα δρῶσί τε καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 87, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> κοίλην : the usual reading is κοιλίαν, which would make

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvi.-xvii

rarefied part [of the air],"<sup>1</sup> and when it was impossible without incurring the greatest derision to say that this superfluity [*i.e.* the urine] is generated by the kidneys as is bile by the canals in the liver—he, then, I say, clearly lied when he swore that the urine does not reach the kidneys, and maintained that it passes, in the form of vapour, straight from the region of the *vena cava*,<sup>2</sup> to collect in the bladder.

Like slaves, then, caught in the act of stealing, these two are quite bewildered, and while the one says nothing, the other indulges in shameless lying.

## XVII

Now such of the younger men as have dignified themselves with the names of these two authorities by taking the appellations "Erasistrateans" or "Asclepiadeans" are like the *Davi* and *Getae*—the slaves introduced by the excellent Menander into his comedies. As these slaves held that they had done nothing fine unless they had cheated their master three times, so also the men I am discussing have taken their time over the construction of impudent sophisms, the one party striving to prevent the lies of Asclepiades from ever being refuted, and the other saying stupidly what Erasistratus had the sense to keep silence about.

But enough about the Asclepiadeans. The Erasistrateans, in attempting to say how the kidneys let the urine through, will do anything or suffer anything

it "from the region of the alimentary canal." cf. p. 118, note 1.

πάσχουσι καὶ παντοῖοι γίγνονται πιθανὸν ἔξευρεν τι ζητοῦντες αἴτιον ὀλκῆς μὴ δεόμενον.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ πλησίον Ἐρασιστράτου τοῖς χρόνοις γενόμενοι τὰ μὲν ἄνω τῶν νεφρῶν μόρια καθαρὸν αἷμα λαμβάνειν φασί, τῷ δὲ βάρος ἔχειν τὸ ὑδατῶδες περίττωμα βρίθειν τε καὶ ὑπορρεῦν κάτω· διηθούμενον δ' ἐνταῦθα κατὰ τοὺς νεφροὺς αὐτοὺς χρηστὸν οὕτω γενόμενον ἅπασι τοῖς κάτω τῶν νεφρῶν ἐπιπέμπεσθαι τὸ αἷμα.

Καὶ μέχρι γέ τινος εὐδοκίμησεν ἥδε ἡ δόξα καὶ ἥκμασε καὶ ἀληθῆς ἐνομίσθη· χρόνῳ δὲ ὑστερον καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις ὑποπτος ἐφάνη καὶ τελευτῶντες ἀπέστησαν αὐτῆς. αἰτεῖσθαι γὰρ ἐδόκουν δύο ταῦτα μήτε συγχωρούμενα πρός τινος ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ἀποδειχθῆναι δυνάμενα, πρῶτον μὲν τὸ βάρος τῆς ὁρρώδους ὑγρότητος ἐν τῇ 69 κοίλῃ || φλεβὶ γεννώμενον, ὕσπερ οὐκ ἔξ ἀρχῆς ὑπάρχον, ὅπότ' ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας εἰς ἡπαρ ἀνεφέρετο. τί δὴ οὖν οὐκ εὐθὺς ἐν ἐκείνοις τοῖς χωρίοις ὑπέρρει κάτω; πῶς δ' ἂν τῷ δόξειν εὐλόγως εἰρησθαι συντελεῦν εἰς τὴν ἀνάδοσιν ἡ ὑδατώδης ὑγρότης, εἴπερ οὕτως ἐστὶ βαρεῖα;

Δεύτερον δ' ἄτοπον, ὅτι κάν κάτω συγχωρηθῆ φέρεσθαι πᾶσα καὶ μὴ κατ' ἄλλο χωρίον ἢ τὴν κοίλην φλέβα, τίνα τρόπον εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ἐμπεσεῖται, χαλεπόν, μᾶλλον δὲ ἀδύνατον εἰπεῖν, μήτ' ἐν τοῖς κάτω μέρεσι κειμένων αὐτῶν τῆς φλεβὸς ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν πλαγίων μήτ' ἐμφυομένης εἰς αὐτοὺς τῆς κοίλης ἀλλ' ἀπόφυσίν τινα μόνον

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvii

or try any shift in order to find some plausible explanation which does not demand the principle of attraction.

Now those near the times of Erasistratus maintain that the parts above the kidneys receive pure blood, whilst the watery residue, being heavy, tends to run downwards; that this, after percolating through the kidneys themselves, is thus rendered serviceable, and is sent, as blood, to all the parts below the kidneys.

For a certain period at least this view also found favour and flourished, and was held to be true; after a time, however, it became suspect to the Erasistrateans themselves, and at last they abandoned it. For apparently the following two points were assumed, neither of which is conceded by anyone, nor is even capable of being proved. The first is the heaviness of the serous fluid, which was said to be produced in the vena cava, and which did not exist, apparently, at the beginning, when this fluid was being carried up from the stomach to the liver. Why, then, did it not at once run downwards when it was in these situations? And if the watery fluid is so heavy, what plausibility can anyone find in the statement that it assists in the process of *anadosis*?

In the second place there is this absurdity, that even if it be agreed that all the watery fluid does fall downwards, and only when it is in the vena cava,<sup>1</sup> still it is difficult, or, rather, impossible, to say through what means it is going to fall into the kidneys, seeing that these are not situated below, but on either side of the vena cava, and that the vena cava is not inserted into them, but merely sends a branch<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Not at an earlier stage, when it is still on its way from the alimentary canal to the liver.      <sup>2</sup> i.e. a renal vein.

εἰς ἑκάτερον πεμπούσης, ὥσπερ καὶ εἰς τὰλλα πάντα μόρια.

Τίς οὖν ἡ διαδεξαμένη ταύτην δόξα καταγωσθεῖσαν; ἐμοὶ μὲν ἡλιθιωτέρα μακρῷ φαίνεται τῆς προτέρας. ἡκμασε δ' οὖν καὶ αὐτῇ ποτέ. φασὶ γάρ, εἴ κατὰ τῆς γῆς ἑκχυθείη μεμιγμένου ἔλαιον ὕδατι, διάφορον ἑκάτερον ὄδὸν βαδιεῖσθαι καὶ ῥυήσεσθαι τὸ μὲν τῆδε, τὸ δὲ τῆδε. θαυμαστὸν οὖν οὐδὲν εἶναι φασιν, εἴ τὸ μὲν ὕδατῶδες ὑγρὸν εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ῥεῖ, τὸ δ' αἷμα διὰ τῆς κοίλης φέρεται κάτω. κατέγνωσται οὖν ἥδη καὶ ἥδε ἡ δόξα. διὰ τί γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς κοίλης μυρίων ἐκπεφυκυιῶν φλεβῶν αἷμα μὲν εἰς τὰς ἄλλας ἀπάσας, ἡ δ' ὀρρώδης ὑγρότης εἰς τὰς ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς φερομένας ἐκτρέπεται; τοῦτ' αὐτὸ τὸ ζητούμενον οὐκ εἰρήκασιν, ἀλλὰ τὸ γιγνόμενον εἰπόντες μόνον οἴονται τὴν αἰτίαν ἀποδεδωκέναι.

70 Πάλιν οὖν, τὸ τρίτον τῷ σωτῆρι, τὴν χειρίστην ἀπασῶν δόξαν ἔξευρημένην υῦν ὑπὸ Λύκου τοῦ Μακεδόνος, εὔδοκιμούσαν δὲ διὰ τὸ καινὸν ἥδη λέγωμεν. ἀπεφήνατο γὰρ δὴ ὁ Λύκος οὗτος, ὥσπερ ἔξ ἀδύτου τινὸς χρησμὸν ἀποφθεγγόμενος, περίττωμα τῆς τῶν νεφρῶν θρέψεως εἶναι τὸ οὐρον. ὅτι μὲν οὖν αὐτὸ τὸ πινόμενον ἄπαν οὐρον γίγνεται, πλὴν εἴ τι μετὰ τῶν διαχωρημάτων ὑπῆλθεν ἡ εἰς ἴδρωτας ἀπεχώρησεν ἡ εἰς τὴν ἄδηλον διαπνοήν, ἐναργῶς ἐνδείκνυται τὸ πλῆθος τῶν καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν οὐρουμένων. ἐν χειμῶνι δὲ μάλιστα μαθεῖν ἔστιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀργούντων μέν, κωθωνιζομένων δέ, καὶ μάλιστ' 71 εἰ λεπτὸς ὁ οἶνος εἴη καὶ πόριμος. οὐροῦσι || γὰρ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvii

into each of them, as it also does into all the other parts.

What doctrine, then, took the place of this one when it was condemned? One which to me seems far more foolish than the first, although it also flourished at one time. For they say, that if oil be mixed with water and poured upon the ground, each will take a different route, the one flowing this way and the other that, and that, therefore, it is not surprising that the watery fluid runs into the kidneys, while the blood falls downwards along the vena cava. Now this doctrine also stands already condemned. For why, of the countless veins which spring from the vena cava, should blood flow into all the others, and the serous fluid be diverted to those going to the kidneys? They have not answered the question which was asked; they merely state what happens and imagine they have thereby assigned the reason.

Once again, then (the third cup to the Saviour!),<sup>1</sup> let us now speak of the worst doctrine of all, lately invented by Lycus of Macedonia,<sup>2</sup> but which is popular owing to its novelty. This Lycus, then, maintains, as though uttering an oracle from the inner sanctuary, that urine is *residual matter from the nutrition of the kidneys!*<sup>3</sup> Now, the amount of urine passed every day shows clearly that it is the whole of the fluid drunk which becomes urine, except for that which comes away with the dejections or passes off as sweat or insensible perspiration. This is most easily recognized in winter in those who are doing no work but are carousing, especially if the wine be thin and diffusible;

<sup>1</sup> In a toast, the third cup was drunk to Zeus Sôtêr (the Saviour).

<sup>2</sup> An anatomist of the Alexandrian school.

<sup>3</sup> cf. nasal mucus, p. 90, note 1.

οὗτοι διὰ ταχέων ὀλίγου δεῦν, ὅσουπερ καὶ πίνουσιν. ὅτι δὲ καὶ ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὕτως ἐγύγνωσκεν, οἱ τὸ πρῶτον ἀνεγνωκότες αὐτοῦ σύγγραμμα τῶν καθόλου λόγων ἐπίστανται. ὥσθ' ὁ Λύκος οὗτ' ἀληθῆ φαίνεται λέγων οὗτ' Ἐρασίστράτεια, δῆλον δ' ὡς οὐδὲ Ἀσκληπιάδεια, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον οὐδὲ Ἰπποκράτεια. λευκῷ τοίνυν κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν ἔσικε κόρακι μήτ' αὐτοῖς τοῖς κόραξιν ἀναμιχθῆναι δυναμένῳ διὰ τὴν χρόαν μήτε ταῖς περιστεραῖς διὰ τὸ μέγεθος, ἀλλ ὅτι που τούτου γ' ἔνεκα παροπτέος· ἵσως γάρ τι λέγει θαυμαστόν, δι μηδεὶς τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἔγνω.

Τὸ μὲν οὖν ἄπαντα τὰ τρεφόμενα μόρια ποιεῦν τι περίττωμα συγχωρούμενον, τὸ δὲ τοὺς νεφροὺς μόνους, οὗτω σμικρὰ σώματα, χόας δλούς τέτταρας ἡ καὶ πλείους ἵσχειν ἐνίστε περιττώματος οὕθ' ὁμολογούμενον οὕτε λόγουν ἔχον<sup>1</sup> τὸ γάρ ἐκάστου τῶν μειζόνων σπλάγχνων περίττωμα πλείουν ἀναγκαῖον ὑπάρχειν. οἷον αὐτίκα τὸ τοῦ πνεύμονος, εἴπερ ἀνάλογον τῷ μεγέθει τοῦ 72 σπλάγχνου γίγνοιτο, πολλαπλάσιον ἔσται δῆτον τοῦ κατὰ τοὺς νεφρούς, ὥσθ' ὅλος μὲν ὁ θώραξ ἐμπλησθήσεται, πνιγήσεται δ' αὐτίκα τὸ ξῶν. ἀλλ' εἰ ἴσον φήσει τις γίγνεσθαι τὸ καθ' ἐκαστον τῶν ἄλλων μορίων περίττωμα, διὰ ποίων κύστεων ἐκκρίνεται; εἰ γάρ οἱ νεφροὶ τοῖς κωθωνιζομένοις τρεῖς ἡ τέτταρας ἐνίστε χόας ποιοῦσι περιττώματος, ἐκάστου τῶν ἄλλων σπλάγχνων πολλῷ πλείους ἔσονται καὶ πίθου τινὸς οὕτω μεγίστου δεήσει τοῦ δεξομένου τὰ πάντων περιτ-

<sup>1</sup> “Sur l'Ensemble des Choses” (Daremberg).

these people rapidly pass almost the same quantity as they drink. And that even Erasistratus was aware of this is known to those who have read the first book of his "General Principles."<sup>1</sup> Thus Lycus is speaking neither good Erasistratism, nor good Asclepiadism, far less good Hippocratism. He is, therefore, as the saying is, like a white crow, which cannot mix with the genuine crows owing to its colour, nor with the pigeons owing to its size. For all this, however, he is not to be disregarded; he may, perhaps, be stating some wonderful truth, unknown to any of his predecessors.

Now it is agreed that all parts which are undergoing nutrition produce a certain amount of residue, but it is neither agreed nor is it likely, that the kidneys alone, small bodies as they are, could hold four whole *congii*,<sup>2</sup> and sometimes even more, of residual matter. For this surplus must necessarily be greater in quantity in each of the larger viscera; thus, for example, that of the lung, if it corresponds in amount to the size of the viscus, will obviously be many times more than that in the kidneys, and thus the whole of the thorax will become filled, and the animal will be at once suffocated. But if it be said that the residual matter is equal in amount in each of the other parts, where are the *bladders*, one may ask, through which it is excreted? For, if the kidneys produce in drinkers three and sometimes four *congii* of superfluous matter, that of each of the other viscera will be much more, and thus an enormous barrel will be needed to contain the waste products of them all.

<sup>1</sup> About twelve quarts. This is about five times as much as the average daily excretion, and could only be passed if a very large amount of wine were drunk.

τώματα. καίτοι πολλάκις, ὅσου ἔπιέ τις, ὀλίγου  
δεῖν οὔρησεν ἄπαν, ως ἀν ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς φερο-  
μένου τοῦ πόματος ἄπαντος.

Ἐοικεν οὖν ὁ τὸ τρίτον ἔξαπατῶν οὗτος οὐδὲν  
ἀνύειν ἀλλ’ εὐθὺς γεγονέναι κατάφωρος καὶ μένειν  
ἔτι τὸ ἔξ ἀρχῆς ἄπορον Ἐρασιστράτῳ τε καὶ τοῖς  
ἄλλοις ἄπασι πλὴν Ἰπποκράτους. διατρίβω δ’  
ἐκὼν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ σαφῶς εἰδώς, ὅτι μηδὲν εἰπεῖν  
ἔχει μηδεὶς ἄλλος περὶ τῆς τῶν νεφρῶν ἐνεργείας,  
ἀλλ’ ἀναγκαῖον ἡ τῶν μαγείρων ἀμαθεστέρους  
φαίνεσθαι μηδ’ ὅτι διηθεῖται δι’ αὐτῶν τὸ οὔρον  
73 ὁμολογοῦντας ἡ. || τοῦτο συγχωρήσαντας μηδὲν  
ἔτ’ ᔭχειν εἰπεῖν ἔτερον αἴτιον τῆς διακρίσεως  
πλὴν τῆς ὄλκῆς.

Ἄλλ’ εἰ μὴ τῶν οὔρων ἡ φορὰ τῇ πρὸς τὸ  
κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ γίγνεται, δῆλον, ως οὐδὲν ἡ  
τοῦ αἵματος οὐδὲν ἡ τῆς χολῆς ἡ εἴπερ ἐκείνων καὶ  
τούτου· πάντα γὰρ ὥσταύτως ἀναγκαῖον ἐπιτε-  
λεῖσθαι καὶ κατ’ αὐτὸν τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον.

Εἰρήσεται δ’ ἐπὶ πλέον ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ μετὰ  
ταῦτα γράμματι.



## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvii

Yet one often urinates practically the same quantity as one has drunk, which would show that the whole of what one drinks goes to the kidneys.

Thus the author of this third piece of trickery would appear to have achieved nothing, but to have been at once detected, and there still remains the original difficulty which was insoluble by Erasistratus and by all others except Hippocrates. I dwell purposely on this topic, knowing well that nobody else has anything to say about the function of the kidneys, but that either we must prove more foolish than the very butchers<sup>1</sup> if we do not agree that the urine passes through the kidneys; or, if one acknowledges this, that then one cannot possibly give any other reason for the secretion than the principle of attraction.

Now, if the movement of urine does not depend on the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled,<sup>2</sup> it is clear that neither does that of the blood nor that of the bile; or if that of these latter does so, then so also does that of the former. For they must all be accomplished in one and the same way, even according to Erasistratus himself.

This matter, however, will be discussed more fully in the book following this.

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 51.    <sup>2</sup> Horror vacui. Note analogical reasoning; cf. p. 289, note 1.



## **BOOK II**

## B

## I

74 "Οτι μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαῖόν ἐστιν οὐκ Ἐρασι-  
 στράτῳ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν, ὅσοι  
 μέλλουσι περὶ διακρίσεως οὕρων ἔρεῦν τι χρη-  
 στόν, ὁμολογῆσαι δύναμίν τιν' ὑπάρχειν τοῖς  
 νεφροῖς ἔλκουσαν εἰς ἑαυτοὺς ποιότητα τοιαύτην,  
 οἷα ἐν τοῖς οὔροις ἐστί, διὰ τοῦ πρόσθεν ἐπιδέ-  
 δεικται γράμματος, ἀναμμινησκόντων ἀμ' αὐτῷ  
 καὶ τοῦθ' ἡμῶν, ώς οὐκ ἄλλως μὲν εἰς τὴν κύστιν  
 φέρεται τὰ οὐρα διὰ τῶν νεφρῶν, ἄλλως δ' εἰς  
 ἄπαντα τοῦ ζφου τὰ μόρια τὸ αἷμα, κατ' ἄλλουν  
 δέ τινα τρόπον ἡ ξανθὴ χολὴ διακρίνεται. δειχ-  
 75 θείσης γὰρ ἐναργῶς ἐφ' ἐνδὲ || οὐτινοσοῦν ὄργανου  
 τῆς ἐλκτικῆς τε καὶ ἐπισπαστικῆς ὀνομαζομένης  
 δυνάμεως οὐδὲν ἔτι χαλεπὸν ἐπὶ τὰ λοιπὰ μετα-  
 φέρειν αὐτήν· οὐ γὰρ δὴ τοῖς μὲν νεφροῖς ἡ φύσις  
 ἔδωκέ τινα τοιαύτην δύναμιν, οὐχὶ δέ γε καὶ τοῖς  
 τὸ χολῶδες ὑγρὸν ἔλκουσιν ἀγγείοις οὐδὲ τούτοις  
 μέν, οὐκέτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων μορίων ἐκάστῳ.  
 καὶ μὴν εἰ τοῦτ' ἀληθές ἐστι, θαυμάζειν χρὴ τοῦ  
 Ἐρασιστράτου ψευδεῖς οὗτω λόγους ὑπὲρ ἀνα-

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 89.      <sup>2</sup> This term is nowadays limited to the drawing action of a blister. cf. p. 223.

## BOOK II

### I

IN the previous book we demonstrated that not only Erasistratus, but also all others who would say anything to the purpose about urinary secretion, must acknowledge that the kidneys possess some faculty which attracts to them this particular quality existing in the urine.<sup>1</sup> Besides this we drew attention to the fact that the urine is not carried through the kidneys into the bladder by one method, the blood into parts of the animal by another, and the yellow bile separated out on yet another principle. For when once there has been demonstrated in any one organ, the drawing, or so-called *epispastic*<sup>2</sup> faculty, there is then no difficulty in transferring it to the rest. Certainly Nature did not give a power such as this to the kidneys without giving it also to the vessels which abstract the biliary fluid,<sup>3</sup> nor did she give it to the latter without also giving it to each of the other parts. And, assuredly, if this is true, we must marvel that Erasistratus should make statements concerning the delivery of nutriment from the food-canal<sup>4</sup> which are

<sup>3</sup> The radicles of the hepatic ducts in the liver were supposed to be the active agents in extracting bile from the blood. cf. pp. 145-149.   <sup>4</sup> *Anadosis*; cf. p. 13, note 5.

δόσεως τροφῆς εἰπόντος, ώς μηδ' Ἀσκληπιάδην λαθεῖν. καίτοι γ' οἴεται παντὸς μᾶλλον ἀληθὲς ὑπάρχειν, ώς, εἴπερ ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν ἀπορρέου τι, δυοῦν θάτερον ἡ κενὸς ἔσται τόπος ἀθρόως ἡ τὸ συνεχὲς ἐπιρρυήσεται τὴν βάσιν ἀναπληροῦν. τοῦ κενουμένου. ἀλλ' ὅ γ' Ἀσκληπιάδης οὐ δυοῦν θάτερόν φησιν, ἀλλὰ τριῶν ἐν τι χρῆναι λέγειν ἐπὶ τοῦς κενουμένους ἀγγείους ἐπεσθαι ἡ κενὸν ἀθρόως τόπον ἡ τὸ συνεχὲς ἀκολουθήσειν ἡ συσταλήσεσθαι τὸ ἀγγεῖον. ἐπὶ μὲν γὰρ τῶν καλάμων καὶ τῶν αὐλίσκων τῶν εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ καθιεμένων ἀληθὲς εἰπεῖν, ὅτι κενουμένου τοῦ 76 περιεχομένου κατὰ τὴν || εύρυχωρίαν αὐτῶν ἀέρος ἡ κενὸς ἀθρόως ἔσται τόπος ἡ ἀκολουθήσει τὸ συνεχές· ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν φλεβῶν οὐκέτ' ἐγχωρεῖ, δυνα- μένου δὴ τοῦ χιτῶνος αὐτῶν εἰς ἑαυτὸν συνιζάνειν καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καταπίπτειν εἰς τὴν ἐντὸς εύρυ- χωρίαν. οὕτω μὲν δὴ ψευδής ἡ περὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας οὐκ ἀπόδειξις μὰ Δὲ εἴποιμ' ἀν ἄλλ' ὑπόθεσις Ἐρασιστράτειος.

Καθ' ἔτερον δ' αὖ τρόπον, εἰ καὶ ἀληθὴς εἴη, περιττή, τῆς μὲν κοιλίας ἐνθλίβειν ταῖς φλεψὶ δυναμένης, ώς αὐτὸς ὑπέθετο, τῶν φλεβῶν δ' αὖ περιστέλλεσθαι τῷ ἐνυπάρχοντι καὶ προωθεῖν αὐτό. τά τε γὰρ ἄλλα καὶ πλῆθος οὐκ ἀν ἐν τῷ σώματι γένοιτο, τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ μόνῃ τῆς ἀναδόσεως ἐπιτελουμένης. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἡ τῆς γαστρὸς ἐνθλιψις ἐκλύεται προϊοῦσα καὶ

---

<sup>1</sup> The term *κοιλία* is used both specifically for the stomach proper and also (as probably here) in a somewhat wider sense for the stomach *region*, including the adjacent part of the small intestine; this was the part of the alimentary canal

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. 1

so false as to be detected even by Asclepiades. Now, Erasistratus considers it absolutely certain that, if anything flows from the veins, one of two things must happen: either a completely empty space will result, or the contiguous quantum of fluid will run in and take the place of that which has been evacuated. Asclepiades, however, holds that not one of two, but one of three things must be said to result in the emptied vessels: either there will be an entirely empty space, or the contiguous portion will flow in, or the vessel will contract. For whereas, in the case of reeds and tubes it is true to say that, if these be submerged in water, and are emptied of the air which they contain in their lumens, then either a completely empty space will be left, or the contiguous portion will move onwards; in the case of veins this no longer holds, since their coats can collapse and so fall in upon the interior cavity. It may be seen, then, how false this hypothesis—by Zeus, I cannot call it a demonstration!—of Erasistratus is.

And, from another point of view, even if it were true, it is superfluous, if the stomach<sup>1</sup> has the power of compressing the veins, as he himself supposed, and the veins again of contracting upon their contents and propelling them forwards.<sup>2</sup> For, apart from other considerations, no *plethora*<sup>3</sup> would ever take place in the body, if delivery of nutriment resulted merely from the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled. Now, if the compression of the stomach becomes weaker the further it goes, and cannot reach to an extent from which nutriment was believed to be absorbed by the mesenteric veins; cf. p. 309, note 2.

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 100, note 2; p. 167, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> A characteristic “lesion” in Erasistratus’s pathology.

μέχρι παντὸς ἀδυνατός ἔστιν ἐξικνεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ  
τοῦτ' ἄλλης τινὸς δεῖ μηχανῆς εἰς τὴν πάντη  
φορὰν τοῦ αἵματος, ἀναγκαίᾳ μὲν ἡ πρὸς τὸ  
κενούμενον ἀκολουθία προσεξεύρηται· πλῆθος δ'  
77 ἐν οὐδενὶ τῶν μεθ' ἡπαρ ἔσται || μορίων, ἥ, εἴπερ  
ἄρα, περὶ τὴν καρδίαν τε καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα. μόνη  
γὰρ αὕτη τῶν μεθ' ἡπαρ εἰς τὴν δεξιὰν αὐτῆς  
κοιλίαν ἔλκει τὴν τροφήν, εἰτα διὰ τῆς φλεβὸς  
τῆς ἀρτηριώδους ἐκπέμπει τῷ πνεύμονι· τῶν γὰρ  
ἄλλων οὐδὲν οὐδὲν αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐκ καρ-  
δίας βούλεται τρέφεσθαι διὰ τὴν τῶν ύμένων  
ἐπίφυσιν. εἰ δέ γ', ἵνα πλῆθος γένηται, φυλάξομεν  
ἄχρι παντὸς τὴν ράμην τῆς κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν  
ἐνθλίψεως, οὐδὲν ἔτι δεόμεθα τῆς πρὸς τὰ κενού-  
μενον ἀκολουθίας, μάλιστ' εἰ καὶ τὴν τῶν φλεβῶν  
συνυποθοίμεθα περιστολήν, ώς αὖ καὶ τοῦτ' αὐτῷ  
πάλιν ἀρέσκει τῷ Ἐρασιστράτῳ.

## II

'Αναμνηστέον οὖν αὐθις αὐτόν, καὶ μὴ βού-  
ληται, τῶν νεφρῶν καὶ λεκτέον, ώς ἔλεγχος  
οὗτοι φανερώτατος ἀπάντων τῶν ἀποχωρούντων  
τῆς ὀλκῆς· οὐδεὶς γὰρ οὐδὲν οὔτ' εἴπε πιθανόν,  
ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἐξευρεῖν εἶχε κατ' οὐδένα τρόπον, ώς

<sup>1</sup> A certain subordinate place allowed to the horror vacui.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. the parts to which the veins convey blood after it leaves the liver—second stage of *anadosis*; cf. p. 91, note 2; p. 13, note 5.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. I.—II

indefinite distance, and if, therefore, there is need of some other mechanism to explain why the blood is conveyed in all directions, then the principle of the refilling of a vacuum may be looked on as a necessary addition;<sup>1</sup> there will not, however, be a plethora in any of the parts coming after the liver,<sup>2</sup> or, if there be, it will be in the region of the heart and lungs; for the heart alone of the parts which come after the liver draws the nutriment into its right ventricle, thereafter sending it through the *arteriod vein*<sup>3</sup> to the lungs (for Erasistratus himself will have it that, owing to the membranous excrescences,<sup>4</sup> no other parts save the lungs receive nourishment from the heart). If, however, in order to explain how plethora comes about, we suppose the force of compression by the stomach to persist indefinitely, we have no further need of the principle of the refilling of a vacuum, especially if we assume contraction of the veins in addition—as is, again, agreeable to Erasistratus himself.

## II

LET me draw his attention, then, once again, even if he does not wish it, to the kidneys, and let me state that these confute in the very clearest manner such people as object to the principle of *attraction*. Nobody has ever said anything plausible, nor, as we previously showed, has anyone been able to discover,

<sup>3</sup> What we now call the pulmonary artery. Galen believed that the right ventricle existed for the purpose of sending nutrient blood to the lungs.

<sup>4</sup> Lit. owing to the ongrowth (*epiphysis*) of membranes; he means the tricuspid valve; cf. p. 314, note 2; p. 321, note 4.

ἐμπροσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν, ἔτερον αἵτιον οὔρων διακρίσεως, ἀλλ' ἀναγκαῖον ἡ μαίνεσθαι δοκεῖν, εἰ  
 78 φήσαιμεν ἀτμοει||δῶς εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἵέναι τὸ οὔρον  
 ἡ ἀσχημονεῖν τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας  
 μυημονεύοντας, ληρώδους μὲν οὔσης κὰπὶ τοῦ  
 αἷματος, ἀδυνάτου δὲ καὶ ἡλιθίου παντάπασιν  
 ἐπὶ τῶν οὔρων.

Ἐν μὲν δὴ τοῦτο σφάλμα τῶν ἀποστάντων τῆς  
 ὄλκῆς· ἔτερον δὲ τὸ περὶ τῆς κατὰ τὴν ξανθὴν  
 χολὴν διακρίσεως. οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ ἐκεῖ παραρρέ-  
 οντος τοῦ αἷματος τὰ στόματα τῶν χοληδόχων  
 ἀγγείων ἀκριβῶς διακριθήσεται τὸ χολῶδες  
 περίττωμα. καὶ μὴ διακρινέσθω, φασίν, ἀλλὰ  
 συναναφερέσθω τῷ αἷματι πάντη τοῦ σώματος.  
 ἀλλ', ὡς σοφώτατοι, προνοητικὴν τοῦ ζώου καὶ  
 τεχνικὴν αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ὑπέθετο τὴν  
 φυσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ χολῶδες ὑγρὸν ἄχρηστον  
 εἶναι πανταπάσι τοῖς ζώοις ἔφασκεν. οὐ συμ-  
 βαίνει δ' ἀλλήλοις ἅμφω ταῦτα. πῶς γὰρ ἀν  
 ἔτι προνοεῖσθαι τοῦ ζώου δόξειεν ἐπιτρέπουσα  
 συναναφέρεσθαι τῷ αἷματι μοχθηρὸν οὕτω χυμόν;  
 Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν σμικρά· τὸ δὲ μέγιστον καὶ  
 σαφέστατον πάλιν ἐνταῦθ' ἀμάρτημα καὶ δὴ  
 φράσω. εἴπερ γὰρ δι' οὐδὲν ἄλλ' ἡ ὅτι παχύτερον  
 79 μέν ἔστι τὸ αἷμα, λεπτοτέρα δὲ || ξανθὴ χολὴ  
 καὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν φλεβῶν εὐρύτερα στόματα, τὰ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. II

by any means, any other cause for the secretion of urine; we necessarily appear mad if we maintain that the urine passes into the kidneys in the form of vapour, and we certainly cut a poor figure when we talk about the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled;<sup>1</sup> this idea is foolish in the case of blood, and impossible, nay, perfectly nonsensical, in the case of the urine.<sup>2</sup>

This, then, is one blunder made by those who dissociate themselves from the principle of attraction. Another is that which they make about the *secretion of yellow bile*. For in this case, too, it is not a fact that when the blood runs past the mouths [stomata] of the bile-ducts there will be a thorough separation out [secretion] of biliary waste-matter. "Well," say they, "let us suppose that it is not secreted but carried with the blood all over the body." But, you sapient folk, Erasistratus himself supposed that Nature took thought for the animals' future, and was workmanlike in her method; and at the same time he maintained that the biliary fluid was useless in every way for the animals. Now these two things are incompatible. For how could Nature be still looked on as exercising forethought for the animal when she allowed a noxious humour such as this to be carried off and distributed with the blood? . . .

This, however, is a small matter. I shall again point out here the greatest and most obvious error. For if the yellow bile adjusts itself to the narrower vessels and stomata, and the blood to the wider ones, for no other reason than that blood is thicker and bile thinner, and that the stomata of the veins are

<sup>1</sup> Horror vacui.      <sup>2</sup> But Erasistratus had never upheld this in the case of urinary secretion. cf. p. 99.

δὲ τῶν χοληδόχων ἀγγείων στενότερα, διὰ τοῦθ' ἡ μὲν χολὴ τοῖς στενοτέροις ἀγγείοις τε καὶ στόμασιν ἐναρμόττει, τὸ δὲ αἷμα τοῖς εὐρυτέροις, δῆλον, ὡς καὶ τὸ ὑδατώδες τοῦτο καὶ ὄρρωδες περίττωμα τοσούτῳ πρότερον εἰσρυήσεται τοῖς χοληδόχοις ἀγγείοις, ὅσῳ λεπτότερόν ἔστι τῆς χολῆς. πῶς οὖν οὐκ εἰσρεῖ; ὅτι παχύτερόν ἔστι νῆ Δία τὸ οὐρον τῆς χολῆς· τοῦτο γάρ ἐτόλμησέ τις εἰπεῖν τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς Ἐρασιστρατείων ἀποστὰς δηλονότι τῶν αἰσθήσεων, αἱς ἐπίστευσεν ἐπὶ τε τῆς χολῆς καὶ τοῦ αἷματος. εἴτε γάρ ὅτι μᾶλλον ἡ χολὴ τοῦ αἷματος ῥεῖ, διὰ τοῦτο λεπτοτέραν αὐτὴν ἡμῖν ἔστι νομιστέον, εἴθ' ὅτι δὶ' ὅθύνης ἡ ῥάκους ἡ τινος ἡθμοῦ ῥᾶσιν διεξέρχεται καὶ ταύτης τὸ ὄρρωδες περίττωμα, κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ γνωρίσματα παχυτέρα τῆς ὑδατώδους ὑγρότητος καὶ αὕτη γενησέται. πάλιν γάρ οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα λόγος οὐδείς ἔστιν, δις ἀποδείξει λεπτότεραν τὴν χολὴν τῶν ὄρρωδῶν περιττωμάτων.

'Αλλ' ὅταν τις ἀναισχυντῆ περιπλέκων τε καὶ 80 μήπω καταπεπτωκέναι συγχωρῶν, || ὅμοιος ἔσται τοῖς ἴδιώταις τῶν παλαιστῶν, οἱ καταβληθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν παλαιστρικῶν καὶ κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπτιοι κείμενοι τοσούτου δέουσι τὸ πτῶμα γνωρίζειν, ὥστε καὶ κρατοῦσι τῶν αὐχένων αὐτοὺς τοὺς καταβαλόντας οὐκ ἐῶντες ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, καν τούτῳ νικᾶν ὑπολαμβάνουσι.

---

<sup>1</sup> This was the characteristically "anatomical" explanation of bile-secretion made by Erasistratus. cf. p. 170, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. II

wider and those of the bile-ducts narrower,<sup>1</sup> then it is clear that this watery and serous superfluity,<sup>2</sup> too, will run out into the bile-ducts quicker than does the bile, exactly in proportion as it is thinner than the bile! How is it, then, that it does not run out? "Because," it may be said, "urine is thicker than bile!" This was what one of our Erasistrateans ventured to say, herein clearly disregarding the evidence of his senses, although he had trusted these in the case of the bile and blood. For, if it be that we are to look on bile as thinner than blood because it runs more, then, since the serous residue<sup>2</sup> passes through fine linen or lint or a sieve more easily even than does bile, by these tokens bile must also be thicker than the watery fluid. For here, again, there is no argument which will demonstrate that bile is thinner than the serous superfluities.

But when a man shamelessly goes on using circumlocutions, and never acknowledges when he has had a fall, he is like the amateur wrestlers, who, when they have been overthrown by the experts and are lying on their backs on the ground, so far from recognizing their fall, actually seize their victorious adversaries by the necks and prevent them from getting away, thus supposing themselves to be the winners!

Why, then, says Galen, does not urine, rather than bile, enter the bile-ducts?<sup>3</sup> Urine, or, more exactly, blood-serum.

## III

Λῆρος οὖν μακρὸς ἄπασα πόρων ὑπόθεσις εἰς φυσικὴν ἐνέργειαν. εἰ μὴ γὰρ δύναμις τις σύμφυτος ἐκάστῳ τῶν ὄργάνων ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως εὐθὺς ἔξ ἀρχῆς δοθείη, διαρκεῖν οὐ δυνήσεται τὰ ξῶα, μὴ δτι τοσοῦτον ἀριθμὸν ἐτῶν ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ἡμερῶν ὀλιγίστων· ἀνεπιτρόπευτα γὰρ ἔασαντες αὐτὰ καὶ τέχνης καὶ προνοίας ἔρημα μόναις ταῖς τῶν ὑλῶν οἰακιζόμενα ροπαῖς, οὐδαμοῦ δυνάμεως οὐδεμιᾶς τῆς μὲν ἐλκούσης τὸ προσῆκον ἕαυτῇ, τῆς δ' ἀπωθούσης τὸ ἀλλότριον, τῆς δ' ἀλλοιούσης τε καὶ προσφυούσης τὸ θρέψον, οὐκ οἶδεν διπώς οὐκ ἀν εἴημεν καταγέλαστοι περί τε τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν διαλεγόμενοι καὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἔτι περὶ

81 τῶν ψυχικῶν καὶ || συμπάσης γε τῆς ζωῆς.

Οὐδὲ γὰρ ξῆν οὐδὲ διαμένειν οὐδενὶ τῶν ξώων οὐδὲ εἰς ἐλάχιστον χρόνον ἔσται δυνατόν, εἰ τοσαῦτα κεκτημένον ἐν ἕαυτῷ μόρια καὶ οὕτω διαφέροντα μήδ' ἐλκτικὴ τῶν οἰκείων χρήσεται δυνάμει μήτ' ἀποκριτικὴ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων μήτ' ἀλλοιωτικὴ τῶν θρεψόντων. καὶ μὴν εἰ ταύτας ἔχοιμεν, οὐδὲν ἔτι πόρων μικρῶν ἢ μεγάλων ἔξ ὑποθέσεως ἀναποδείκτου λαμβανομένων εἰς οὔρου καὶ χολῆς διάκρισιν δεόμεθα καί τινος ἐπικαίρου θέσεως, ἐν ω̄ μόνῳ σωφρονεῖν ἔοικεν οἱ Ἐρασίστρατος ἄπαντα καλῶς τεθῆναι τε καὶ διαπλασ-

<sup>1</sup> Or ducts, canals, conduits, *i.e.* morphological factors.

<sup>2</sup> Or artistic skill, "artistry." cf. Book I., chap. xii.

<sup>3</sup> "Only"; cf. Introd., p. xxviii.

<sup>4</sup> Note how Galen, although he has not yet clearly differ-

## III

THUS, every hypothesis of *channels*<sup>1</sup> as an explanation of natural functioning is perfect nonsense. For, if there were not *an inborn faculty* given by Nature to each one of the organs at the very beginning, then animals could not continue to live even for a few days, far less for the number of years which they actually do. For let us suppose they were under no guardianship, lacking in creative ingenuity<sup>2</sup> and fore-thought; let us suppose they were steered only by material forces,<sup>3</sup> and not by any special *faculties* (the one attracting what is proper to it, another rejecting what is foreign, and yet another causing alteration and adhesion of the matter destined to nourish it); if we suppose this, I am sure it would be ridiculous for us to discuss natural, or, still more, psychical, activities—or, in fact, life as a whole.<sup>4</sup>

For there is not a single animal which could live or endure for the shortest time if, possessing within itself so many different parts, it did not employ faculties which were attractive of what is appropriate, eliminative of what is foreign, and alterative of what is destined for nutrition. On the other hand, if we have these faculties, we no longer need *channels*, little or big, resting on an unproven hypothesis, for explaining the secretion of urine and bile, and the conception of some *favourable situation* (in which point alone Erasistratus shows some common sense, since he does regard all the parts of the body as entiated physiological from physical processes (both are “natural”) yet separates them definitely from the psychical. cf. p. 2, footnote. A *psychical* function or activity is, in Latin, *actio animalis* (from *anima* = *psyche*).

*θῆναι τὰ μόρια τοῦ σώματος ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως οἰόμενος.*

'Αλλ' εὶ παρακολουθήσειεν ἑαυτῷ φύσιν ὄνομάζοντι τεχνικήν, εὐθὺς μὲν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἅπαντα καλῶς διαπλάσασάν τε καὶ διαθεῖσαν τοῦ ζώου τὰ μόρια, μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐνέργειαν, ώς οὐδὲν ἔλειπεν, ἔτι προαγαγοῦσαν εἰς φῶς αὐτὸς σύν τισι δυνάμεσιν, ὡν ἄνευ ζῆν οὐκ ἡδύνατο, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα κατὰ βραχὺ προσαυξήσασαν ἄχρι τοῦ πρέποντος μεγέθους, οὐκ οἶδα πῶς ὑπομένει

- 82 πόρων σμικρότησιν || ἡ μεγέθεσιν ἡ τισιν ἄλλαις οὕτω ληρώδεσιν ὑποθέσεσι φυσικὰς ἐνεργείας ἐπιτρέπειν. ἡ γὰρ διαπλάττουσα τὰ μόρια φύσις ἐκείνη καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ προσαύξουσα πάντως δήπου δι' ὅλων αὐτῶν ἐκτέταται· καὶ γὰρ ὅλα δι' ὅλων οὐκ ἔξωθεν μόνον αὐτὰ διαπλάττει τε καὶ τρέφει καὶ προσαύξει. Πραξιτέλης μὲν γὰρ ἡ Φειδίας ἡ τις ἄλλος ἀγαλματοποιὸς ἔξωθεν μόνον ἐκόσμουν τὰς ὕλας, καθὰ καὶ ψαύειν αὐτῶν ἡδύναντο, τὸ βάθος δ' ἀκόσμητον καὶ ἀργὸν καὶ ἄτεχνον καὶ ἀπρονόητον ἀπέλιπον, ώς ἂν μὴ δυνάμενοι κατελθεῖν εἰς αὐτὸν καὶ καταδύναι καὶ θιγεῖν ἀπάντων τῆς ὕλης τῶν μερῶν. ἡ φύσις δ' οὐχ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν ὁστοῦ μέρος ἅπαν ὁστοῦν ἀποτελεῖ, τὸ δὲ σαρκὸς σάρκα, τὸ δὲ πιμελῆς πιμελὴν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκαστον· οὐδὲν γάρ ἔστιν ἄψαυστον αὐτῇ μέρος οὐδ' ἀνεξέργαστον οὐδ' ἀκόσμητον. ἀλλὰ τὸν μὲν κηρὸν ὁ Φειδίας οὐκ ἡδύνατο ποιεῦν ἐλέφαντα καὶ χρυσόν, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τὸν χρυσὸν κηρόν· ἔκαστον γὰρ αὐτῶν μένον, οἷον ἦν ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἔξωθεν μόνον ἡμφιεσμένον εἰδός τι

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. m

having been well and truly placed and shaped by Nature).

But let us suppose he remained true to his own statement that Nature is "artistic"—this Nature which, at the beginning, well and truly shaped and disposed all the parts of the animal,<sup>1</sup> and, after carrying out this function (for she left nothing undone), brought it forward to the light of day, endowed with certain faculties necessary for its very existence, and, thereafter, gradually increased it until it reached its due size. If he argued consistently on this principle, I fail to see how he can continue to refer natural functions to the smallness or largeness of canals, or to any other similarly absurd hypothesis. For this Nature which shapes and gradually adds to the parts is most certainly extended throughout their whole substance. Yes indeed, she shapes and nourishes and increases them through and through, not on the outside only. For Praxiteles and Phidias and all the other statuaries used merely to decorate their material on the outside, in so far as they were able to touch it; but its inner parts they left unembellished, unwrought, unaffected by art or forethought, since they were unable to penetrate therein and to reach and handle all portions of the material. It is not so, however, with Nature. Every part of a bone she makes bone, every part of the flesh she makes flesh, and so with fat and all the rest; there is no part which she has not touched, elaborated, and embellished. Phidias, on the other hand, could not turn wax into ivory and gold, nor yet gold into wax: for each of these remains as it was at the commencement, and becomes a perfect statue

<sup>1</sup> The stage of organogenesis or *diaplasia*; cf. p. 25, note 4.

83 καὶ σχῆμα τεχνικόν, ἄγαλμα τέλειον || γέγονεν. ἡ φύσις δ' οὐδεμιᾶς ἔτι φυλάττει τῶν ὑλῶν τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἰδέαν· αἷμα γὰρ ἀν ἦν οὔτως ἅπαντα τοῦ ζώου τὰ μόρια, τὸ παρὰ τῆς κυούσης ἐπιρρέον τῷ σπέρματι, δίκην κηροῦ τινος ὕλη μία καὶ μονοειδής ὑποβεβλημένη τῷ τεχνίτῃ. γίγνεται δ' ἐξ αὐτῆς οὐδὲν τῶν τοῦ ζώου μορίων οὕτ' ἐρυθρὸν οὔτως οὕθ' ὑγρόν. ὅστοῦν γὰρ καὶ ἀρτηρία καὶ φλὲψ καὶ νεῦρον καὶ χόνδρος καὶ πιμελὴ καὶ ἀδήν καὶ ὑμήν καὶ μυελὸς ἄναιμα μέν, ἐξ αἵματος δὲ γέγονε.

Τίνος ἀλλοιώσαντος καὶ τίνος πήξαντος καὶ τίνος διαπλάσαντος ἐδεόμην ἂν μοι τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον αὐτὸν ἀποκρίνασθαι. πάντως γὰρ ἀν εἰπεν ἥτοι τὴν φύσιν ἡ τὸ σπέρμα, ταύτὸν μὲν λέγων καθ' ἑκάτερον, διαφόροις δ' ἐπινοίαις ἐρμηνεύων· δὲ γὰρ ἦν πρότερον σπέρμα, τοῦθ', ὅταν ἄρξηται φύειν τε καὶ διαπλάττειν τὸ ζῷον, φύσις τις γίγνεται. καθάπερ γὰρ ὁ Φειδίας εἶχε μὲν τὰς δυνάμεις τῆς τέχνης καὶ πρὶν ψαύειν τῆς ὕλης, ἐνήργει δ' αὐταῖς περὶ τὴν ὕλην—ἄπασα γὰρ δύναμις ἀργεῖ ἀποροῦσα τῆς οἰκείας ὕλης—, οὕτω καὶ τὸ σπέρμα τὰς μὲν || δυνάμεις οἴκοθεν ἐκέκτητο, τὰς δὲ ἐνεργείας οὐκ ἐκ τῆς ὕλης ἔλαβεν, ἀλλὰ περὶ τὴν ὕλην ἐπεδείξατο.

Καὶ μὴν εἰ πολλῷ μὲν ἐπικλύζοιτο τῷ αἵματι τὸ σπέρμα, διαφθείροιτ' ἄν· εἰ δὲ ὅλως ἀποροίη

<sup>1</sup> The spermatozoon now becomes an “organism” proper.

<sup>2</sup> Galen attributed to the *sperma* or *semen* what we should

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

simply by being clothed externally in a form and artificial shape. But Nature does not preserve the original character of any kind of matter; if she did so, then all parts of the animal would be blood—that blood, namely, which flows to the semen from the impregnated female and which is, so to speak, like the statuary's wax, a single uniform matter, subjected to the artificer. From this blood there arises no part of the animal which is as red and moist [as blood is], for bone, artery, vein, nerve, cartilage, fat, gland, membrane, and marrow are not blood, though they arise from it.

I would then ask Erasistratus himself to inform me what the altering, coagulating, and shaping agent is. He would doubtless say, “Either Nature or the semen,” meaning the same thing in both cases, but explaining it by different devices. For that which was previously semen, when it begins to procreate and to shape the animal, becomes, so to say, a special *nature*.<sup>1</sup> For in the same way that Phidias possessed the faculties of his art even before touching his material, and then activated these in connection with this material (for every faculty remains inoperative in the absence of its proper material), so it is with the semen: its faculties it possessed from the beginning,<sup>2</sup> while its activities it does not receive from its material, but it manifests them in connection therewith.

And, of course, if it were to be overwhelmed with a great quantity of blood, it would perish, while if it were to be entirely deprived of blood to the fertilized ovum: to him the maternal contribution is purely passive—mere food for the sperm. The epoch-making Ovum Theory was not developed till the seventeenth century. cf. p. 19, note 3.

παντάπασιν ἀργοῦν, οὐκ ἀν γένοιτο φύσις. ἵν' οὖν μήτε φθείρηται καὶ γίγνηται φύσις ἀντὶ σπέρματος, ὀλίγον ἐπιρρεῖν ἀναγκαῖον αὐτῷ τοῦ αἵματος, μᾶλλον δ' οὐκ ὀλίγον λέγειν χρή, ἀλλὰ σύμμετρον τῷ πλήθει τοῦ σπέρματος. τίς οὖν ὁ μετρῶν αὐτοῦ τὸ ποσὸν τῆς ἐπιρροῆς; τίς ὁ κωλύων ἴέναι πλέον; τίς ὁ προτρέπων, ἵν' ἐνδεέστερον μὴ ἵη; τίνα ζητήσομεν ἐνταῦθα τρίτον ἐπιστάτην τοῦ ζώου τῆς γενέσεως, δις χορηγήσει τῷ σπέρματι τὸ σύμμετρον αἷμα; τί ἀν εἰπεν 'Ἐρασίστρατος, εἰς ζῶν ταῦτ' ἡρωτήθη; τὸ σπέρμα αὐτὸ δηλονότι· τοῦτο γάρ ἔστιν ὁ τεχνίτης ὁ ἀναλογῶν τῷ Φειδίᾳ, τὸ δ' αἷμα τῷ κηρῷ προσέοικεν.

Οὕκουν πρέπει τὸν κηρὸν αὐτὸν ἔαυτῷ τὸ μέτρον ἔξευρίσκειν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Φειδίαν. ἔλξει δὴ τοσοῦτον αἵματος ὁ τεχνίτης εἰς ἔαυτόν, ὅπόσου δεῖται. ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα χρὴ προσέχειν ἥδη τὸν νοῦν καὶ σκοπεῖν, μή πως λάθωμεν τῷ σπέρματι λογισμόν τινα καὶ νοῦν χαρισάμενοι· οὕτω γὰρ ἀν οὔτε σπέρμα ποιήσαιμεν οὔτε φύσιν ἀλλ' ἥδη ζώον αὐτό. καὶ μὴν εἰ φυλάξομεν ἀμφότερα, τήν θ' ὄλκὴν τοῦ συμμέτρου καὶ τὸ χωρὶς λογισμοῦ, δύναμίν τινα, καθάπερ ἡ λίθος ἐλκτικὴν εἶχε τοῦ σιδήρου, καὶ τῷ σπέρματι φήσομεν ὑπάρχειν αἵματος ἐπισπαστικήν. ἡναγκάσθημεν οὖν πάλιν κάνταῦθα, καθάπερ ἥδη πολλάκις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐλκτικήν τινα δύναμιν ὁμολογῆσαι κατὰ τὸ σπέρμα.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. we should be talking psychology, not biology; cf. stomach, p. 307, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> Attraction now described not merely as *qualitative* but also as *quantitative*. cf. p. 85, note 3.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

it would remain inoperative and would not turn into a *nature*. Therefore, in order that it may not perish, but may become a *nature* in place of semen, there must be an afflux to it of a little blood—or, rather, one should not say a little, but a quantity commensurate with that of the semen. What is it then that measures the quantity of this afflux? What prevents more from coming? What ensures against a deficiency? What is this third overseer of animal generation that we are to look for, which will furnish the semen with a due amount of blood? What would Erasistratus have said if he had been alive, and had been asked this question? Obviously, the semen itself. This, in fact, is the artificer analogous with Phidias, whilst the blood corresponds to the statuary's wax.

Now, it is not for the wax to discover for itself how much of it is required; that is the business of Phidias. Accordingly the artificer will draw to itself as much blood as it needs. Here, however, we must pay attention and take care not unwittingly to credit the semen with reason and intelligence; if we were to do this, we would be making neither semen nor a nature, but an actual living animal.<sup>1</sup> And if we retain these two principles—that of proportionate attraction<sup>2</sup> and that of the non-participation of intelligence—we shall ascribe to the semen a faculty for attracting blood similar to that possessed by the lodestone for iron.<sup>3</sup> Here, then, again, in the case of the semen, as in so many previous instances, we have been compelled to acknowledge some kind of attractive faculty.

\* He still tends either to biologize physics, or to physicize biology—whichever way we prefer to look at it. cf. Book I., chap. xiv.

Τί δ' ἡν τὸ σπέρμα; ή ἀρχὴ τοῦ ζώου δηλονότι  
 ἡ δραστική· ἡ γάρ ύλικὴ τὸ καταμήνιόν ἐστιν.  
 εἰτ' αὐτῆς τῆς ἀρχῆς πρώτη ταύτη τῇ δυνάμει  
 χρωμένης, ἵνα γένηται τῶν ὑπ' αὐτῆς τι δεδη-  
 μιουργημένων, ἀμοιρον εἶναι τῆς οἰκείας δυνάμεως  
 οὐκ ἴνδέχεται. πῶς οὖν Ἐρασίστρατος αὐτὴν  
 οὐκ οὐδεν, εἰ δὴ πρώτη μὲν αὕτη τοῦ σπέρματος  
 ἐνέργη οα τὸ σύμμετρον αἷματος ἐπισπᾶσθαι πρὸς  
 έαυτό; σύμμετρον δ' ἀν εἴη τὸ λεπτὸν οὔτω καὶ  
 ἀτμῶδες, ὥστ' εὐθὺς εἰς πᾶν μόριον ἐλκόμενον τοῦ

86 σπέρματος δροσοειδῶς μηδαμοῦ τὴν || έαυτοῦ  
 παρεμφαίνειν ἴδεαν. οὔτω γάρ αὐτοῦ καὶ κρατή-  
 σει ῥαδίως τὸ σπέρμα καὶ ταχέως ἔξομοιώσει καὶ  
 τροφὴν έαυτῷ ποιήσεται κάπειτ', οἵμαι δεύτερον  
 ἐπισπάσεται καὶ τρίτον, ως ὅγκον έαυτῷ καὶ  
 πλῆθος ἀξιόλογον ἐργάσασθαι τραφέντι. καὶ  
 μὴν ἡδη καὶ ἡ ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμις ἔξεύρηται μηδ  
 αὐτὴ πρὸς Ἐρασιστράτου γεγραμμένη. τρίτη δ'  
 ἀν ἡ διαπλαστικὴ φανείη, καθ' ἡν πρώτον μὲν  
 οἷον ἐπίπαγόν τινα λεπτὸν ὑμένα περιτίθησιν  
 έαυτῷ τὸ σπέρμα, τὸν ὑφ' Ἰπποκράτους ἐπὶ τῆς  
 ἕκταιας γονῆς, ἡν ἐκπεσεῖν ἔλεγε τῆς μουσουργοῦ,  
 τῷ τῶν ὡῶν είκασθέντα χιτῶνι μετὰ δὲ τούτου  
 ἡδη καὶ τάλλο', ὅσα πρὸς ἐκείνου λέγεται διὰ τοῦ  
 περὶ φύσιος παιδίου συγγράμματος.

Αλλ' εἰ τῶν διαπλασθέντων ἔκαστον οὔτω  
 μείνειε σμικρόν, ως ἔξ ἀρχῆς ἐγένετο, τί ἀν εἴη  
 πλέον; αὐξάνεσθαι τοίνυν αὐτὰ χρή. πῶς οὖν

<sup>1</sup> Aristotelian and Stoic duality of an active and a passive principle.

<sup>2</sup> Note that early embryonic development is described as a process of nutrition. cf. p. 130, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

And what is the semen? Clearly the active principle of the animal, the material principle being the menstrual blood.<sup>1</sup> Next, seeing that the active principle employs this faculty primarily, therefore, in order that any one of the things fashioned by it may come into existence, it [the principle] must necessarily be possessed of its own faculty. How, then, was Erasistratus unaware of it, if the primary function of the semen be to draw to itself a due proportion of blood? Now, this fluid would be in due proportion if it were so thin and vaporous, that, as soon as it was drawn like dew into every part of the semen, it would everywhere cease to display its own particular character; for so the semen will easily dominate and quickly assimilate it—in fact, will use it as food. It will then, I imagine, draw to itself a second and a third quantum, and thus by feeding it acquires for itself considerable bulk and quantity.<sup>2</sup> In fact, *the alterative faculty* has now been discovered as well, although about this also Erasistratus has not written a word. And, thirdly the *shaping*<sup>3</sup> faculty will become evident, by virtue of which the semen firstly surrounds itself with a thin membrane like a kind of superficial condensation; this is what was described by Hippocrates in the sixth-day birth, which, according to his statement, fell from the singing-girl and resembled the pellicle of an egg. And following this all the other stages will occur, such as are described by him in his work “On the Child’s Nature.”

But if each of the parts formed were to remain as small as when it first came into existence, of what use would that be? They have, then, to grow.

<sup>3</sup> On the *alterative* and *shaping* faculties cf. p. 18, note 1.

87 αὐξηθήσεται; πάντη διατεινόμενα θ ἄμα καὶ τρεφόμενα. καὶ μοι τῶν ἔμπροσθεν εἰρημένων ἐπὶ τῆς κύστεως, ἷν οἱ παῖδες ἐμφυσῶντες ἔτριβον, ἀναμνησθεὶς μαθήσῃ μᾶλλον || κάκ τῶν νῦν ῥηθησομένων.

Ἐννόησον γὰρ δὴ τὴν καρδίαν οὕτω μὲν μικρὰν εἶναι κατ' ἀρχάς, ώς κέγχρου μηδὲν διαφέρειν ἦ, εἰ βούλει, κυάμου, καὶ ζητησον, ὅπως ἀν ἄλλως αὗτη γένοιτο μεγάλη χωρὶς τοῦ πάντη διατεινομένην τρέφεσθαι δι' ὅλης ἑαυτῆς, ώς ὀλύγῳ πρόσθεν ἐδείκνυτο τὸ σπέρμα τρεφόμενον. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τοῦτ' Ἐρασίστρατος οἴδεν ὁ τὴν τέχνην τῆς φύσεως ὑμνῶν, ἀλλ' οὕτως αὐξάνεσθαι τὰ ζῷα νομίζει καθάπερ τινὰ κρητέραν ἢ σειρὰν ἢ σάκκουν ἢ τάλαρον, ὃν ἐκάστῳ κατὰ τὸ πέρας ἐπιπλεκομένων ὄμοιών ἐτέρων τοῖς ἐξ ἀρχῆς αὐτὰ συντιθεῖσιν ἢ πρόσθεσις γίγνεται.

88 'Αλλὰ τοῦτό γ' οὐκ αὐξησίς ἐστιν ἀλλὰ γένεσις, ὡς σοφώτατε· γίγνεται γὰρ ὁ θύλακος ἔτι καὶ ὁ σάκκος καὶ θοιμάτιον καὶ ἡ οἰκία καὶ τὸ πλοῖον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκαστον, ὅταν μηδέπω τὸ προσῆκον εἴδος, οὐ χάριν ὑπὸ τοῦ τεχνίτου δημιουργεῖται, συμπεπληρωμένον ἢ. πότ' οὖν αὐξάνεται; ὅταν ἡδη τέλειος ὃν ὁ τάλαρος, ώς ἔχειν πυθμένα τέ τινα καὶ στόμα καὶ οἷον γαστέρα καὶ τὰ τούτων μεταξύ, μείζων ἅπασι τούτοις γένηται. καὶ πῶς || ἔσται τοῦτο; φήσει τις. πῶς δ' ἄλλως ἢ εἰ ζῷον ἐξαίφνης ἢ φυτὸν ὁ τάλαρος ἡμῖν γένοιτο; μόνων γὰρ τῶν ζώντων ἡ αὐξησίς. σὺ δ' ἵσως οἴει τὴν οἰκίαν οἰκοδομουμένην αὐξάνε-

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

Now, how will they grow? By becoming extended in all directions and at the same time receiving nourishment. And if you will recall what I previously said about the bladder which the children blew up and rubbed,<sup>1</sup> you will also understand my meaning better as expressed in what I am now about to say.

Imagine the heart to be, at the beginning, so small as to differ in no respect from a millet-seed, or, if you will, a bean; and consider how otherwise it is to become large than by being extended in all directions and acquiring nourishment throughout its whole substance, in the way that, as I showed a short while ago, the semen is nourished. But even this was unknown to Erasistratus—the man who sings the artistic skill of Nature! He imagines that animals grow like webs, ropes, sacks, or baskets, each of which has, woven on to its end or margin, other material similar to that of which it was originally composed.

But this, most sapient sir, is not growth, but genesis! For a bag, sack, garment, house, ship, or the like is said to be still coming into existence [undergoing genesis] so long as the appropriate form for the sake of which it is being constructed by the artificer is still incomplete. Then, when does it grow? Only when the basket, being complete, with a bottom, a mouth, and a belly, as it were, as well as the intermediate parts, now becomes larger in all these respects. "And how can this happen?" someone will ask. Only by our basket suddenly becoming an animal or a plant; for growth belongs to living things alone. Possibly you imagine that a house *grows* when it is being built, or a basket when being

<sup>1</sup> pp. 27-29.

*σθαι καὶ τὸν τάλαρον πλεκόμενον καὶ θοιμάτιον ὑφαινόμενον. ἀλλ' οὐχ ὡδὸς ἔχει· τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἥδη συμπεπληρωμένου κατὰ τὸ εἶδος ἡ αὔξησις, τοῦ δὲ ἔτι γιγνομένου ἡ εἰς τὸ εἶδος ὄδος οὐκ αὔξησις ἀλλὰ γένεσις ὄνομάζεται· αὔξανεται μὲν γὰρ τὸ ὅν, γίγνεται δὲ τὸ οὐκ ὅν.*

## IV

*Καὶ ταῦτ' Ἐρασίστρατος οὐκ οἶδεν, ὃν οὐδὲν λανθάνει, εἴπερ ὅλως ἀληθεύουσιν οἱ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ φάσκοντες ὡμιληκέναι τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφοις αὐτόν. ἄχρι μὲν οὗν τοῦ τὴν φύσιν ὑμνεῖν ὡς τεχνικὴν κάγὼ γνωρίζω τὰ τοῦ περιπάτου δόγματα, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων οὐδὲν οὐδὲν ἐγγύς. εἰ γάρ τις ὁμιλήσειε τοῖς Ἀριστοτέλους καὶ Θεοφράστου γράμμασι, τῆς Ἰπποκράτους ἀν αὐτὰ δόξειε φυσιολογίας ὑπομνήματα συγκεῖσθαι,*

89 *τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν || καὶ τὸ ξηρὸν καὶ τὸ ὑγρὸν εἰς ἄλληλα δρῶντα καὶ πάσχοντα καὶ τούτων αὐτῶν δραστικώτατον μὲν τὸ θερμόν, δεύτερον δὲ τῇ δυνάμει τὸ ψυχρὸν Ἰπποκράτους ταῦτα σύμπαντα πρώτου, δευτέρου δὲ Ἀριστοτέλους εἰπόντος. τρέφεσθαι δὲ δι' ὅλων αὐτῶν τὰ τρεφόμενα καὶ κεράννυσθαι δι' ὅλων τὰ κεραννύμενα καὶ ἀλλοιοῦσθαι δι' ὅλων τὰ ἀλλοιούμενα, καὶ ταῦθ' Ἰπποκράτειά θ' ἄμα καὶ Ἀριστοτέλεια. καὶ τὴν πέψιν ἀλλοίωσίν τιν'*

<sup>1</sup> cf. Introduction, p. xxvi.<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 15.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III.-IV

plaited, or a garment when being woven? It is not so, however. Growth belongs to that which has already been completed in respect to its form, whereas the process by which that which is still *becoming* attains its form is termed not growth but genesis. That which *is*, grows, while that which *is not*, becomes.

### IV

THIS also was unknown to Erasistratus, whom nothing escaped, if his followers speak in any way truly in maintaining that he was familiar with the Peripatetic philosophers. Now, in so far as he acclaims Nature as being an artist in construction, even I recognize the Peripatetic teachings, but in other respects he does not come near them. For if anyone will make himself acquainted with the writings of Aristotle and Theophrastus, these will appear to him to consist of commentaries on the Nature-lore [physiology]<sup>1</sup> of Hippocrates—according to which the principles of heat, cold, dryness and moisture act upon and are acted upon by one another, the hot principle being the most active, and the cold coming next to it in power; all this was stated in the first place by Hippocrates and secondly by Aristotle.<sup>2</sup> Further, it is at once the Hippocratic and the Aristotelian teaching that the parts which are being nourished receive that nourishment throughout their whole substance, and that, similarly, processes of *mingling* and *alteration* involve the entire substance.<sup>3</sup> Moreover, that digestion is a species of

<sup>1</sup> For definitions of *alteration* and *mingling* (*crasis*, “temperament”) cf. Book I., chaps. ii. and iii.

## GALEN

ὑπάρχειν καὶ μεταβολὴν τοῦ τρέφοντος εἰς τὴν  
οἰκείαν τοῦ τρεφομένου ποιότητα, τὴν δὲ ἔξαι-  
μάτωσιν ἀλλοίωσιν εἶναι καὶ τὴν θρέψιν ὡσαύτως  
καὶ τὴν αὔξησιν ἐκ τῆς πάντη διατάσεως καὶ  
θρέψεως γίγνεσθαι, τὴν δὲ ἀλλοίωσιν ὑπὸ τοῦ  
θερμοῦ μάλιστα συντελεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καὶ  
τὴν πέψιν καὶ τὴν θρέψιν καὶ τὴν τῶν χυμῶν  
ἀπάντων γένεσιν, ἥδη δὲ καὶ τοῖς περιπτώμασι  
τὰς ποιότητας ὑπὸ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας ἐγγί-  
γνεσθαι, ταῦτα σύμπαντα καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ἔτερα  
πολλὰ τά τε τῶν προειρημένων δυνάμεων καὶ  
90 τὰ || τῶν νοσημάτων τῆς γενέσεως καὶ τὰ τῶν  
ἰαμάτων τῆς εὐρέσεως Ἰπποκράτης μὲν πρῶτος  
ἀπάντων ὡν ἵσμεν ὄρθως εἰπεν, Ἀριστοτέλης δὲ  
δεύτερος ὄρθως ἔξηγήσατο. καὶ μὴν εἰ ταῦτα  
σύμπαντα τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου δοκεῖ, καθάπερ  
οὖν δοκεῖ, μηδὲν δὲ αὐτῶν ἀρέσκει τῷ Ἐρασιστρά-  
τῳ, τί ποτε βούλεται τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις ἡ  
προς τοὺς φιλοσόφους ἐκείνους τοῦ τῆς αἱρέσεως  
αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνος ὄμιλίᾳ; θαυμάζουσι μὲν γὰρ  
αὐτὸν ὡς θεὸν καὶ πάντ' ἀληθεύειν νομίζουσιν.  
εἰ δὲ οὕτως ἔχει ταῦτα, πάμπολυ δήπου τῆς  
ἀληθείας ἐσφάλθαι χρὴ νομίζειν τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ  
περιπάτου φιλοσόφους, οὓς μηδὲν ὡν Ἐρασί-  
στρατος ὑπελάμβανεν ἀρέσκει. καὶ μὴν ὥσπερ  
τιν' εὐγένειαν αὐτῷ τῆς φυσιολογίας τὴν πρὸς  
τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐκείνους συννουσίαν ἐκπορίζουσι.

Πάλιν οὖν ἀναστρέψωμεν τὸν λόγον ἔτέρως ἡ  
ὡς ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν ἐτύχομεν εἰπόντες. εἴπερ γὰρ  
οἱ ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου καλῶς ἐφυσιολόγησαν,  
οὐδὲν ἀν εἴη ληρωδέστερον Ἐρασιστράτου καὶ  
δίδωμι τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις αὐτοῖς τὴν αἱρεσιν·

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. iv

alteration—a transmutation of the nutriment into the proper quality of the thing receiving it; that blood-production also is an alteration, and nutrition as well; that growth results from extension in all directions, combined with nutrition; that alteration is effected mainly by the warm principle, and that therefore digestion, nutrition, and the generation of the various humours, as well as the qualities of the surplus substances, result from the *innate heat*;<sup>1</sup> all these and many other points besides in regard to the aforesaid faculties, the origin of diseases, and the discovery of remedies, were correctly stated first by Hippocrates of all writers whom we know, and were in the second place correctly expounded by Aristotle. Now, if all these views meet with the approval of the Peripatetics, as they undoubtedly do, and if none of them satisfy Erasistratus, what can the Erasistrateans possibly mean by claiming that their leader was associated with these philosophers? The fact is, they revere him as a god, and think that everything he says is true. If this be so, then we must suppose the Peripatetics to have strayed very far from truth, since they approve of none of the ideas of Erasistratus. And, indeed, the disciples of the latter produce his connection with the Peripatetics in order to furnish his Nature-lore with a respectable pedigree.

Now, let us reverse our argument and put it in a different way from that which we have just employed. For if the Peripatetics were correct in their teaching about Nature, there could be nothing more absurd than the contentions of Erasistratus. And, I will leave it to the Erasistrateans themselves to decide;

<sup>1</sup> i.e. are associated with oxidation? cf. p. 41, note 3.

91 ἡ γὰρ τὸν πρότερον λόγον ἡ τοῦτον || προσήσονται.  
λέγει δ' ὁ μὲν πρότερος οὐδὲν ὀρθῶς ἐγνωκέναι  
περὶ φύσεως τοὺς περιπατητικούς, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος  
Ἐρασίστρατον. ἐμὸν μὲν οὖν ὑπομνῆσαι τῶν  
δογμάτων τὴν μάχην, ἐκείνων δ' ἡ αἴρεσις.

'Αλλ' οὐκ ἀν ἀποσταῖν τοῦ θαυμάζειν Ἐρασί-  
στρατον· οὐκοῦν σιωπάτωσαν περὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ  
περιπάτου φιλοσόφων. παμπόλλων γὰρ ὅντων  
δογμάτων φυσικῶν περὶ τε γένεσιν καὶ φθορὰν  
τῶν ζῴων καὶ ὑγίειαν καὶ νόσους καὶ τὰς θερα-  
πείας αὐτῶν ἐν μόνον εὑρεθήσεται ταῦτὸν Ἐρασί-  
στράτῳ κάκείνοις τοῖς ἀνδράσι, τό τινος ἔνεκα  
πάντα ποιεῖν τὴν φύσιν καὶ μάτην μηδέν.

'Αλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο μέχρι λόγου κοινόν,  
ἔργῳ δὲ μυριάκις Ἐρασίστρατος αὐτὸ διαφθείρει.  
μάτην μὲν γὰρ ὁ σπλὴν ἐγένετο, μάτην δὲ τὸ  
ἐπίπλοον, μάτην δ' αἱ εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ἀρτηρίαι  
καταφυόμεναι, σχεδὸν ἀπασῶν τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς  
μεγάλης ἀρτηρίας ἀποβλαστανουσῶν οὖσαι  
μέγισται, μάτην δ' ἄλλα μυρία κατά γε τὸν  
Ἐρασιστράτειον λόγον· ἄπερ εἰ μὲν οὐδ' ὅλως  
γιγνώσκει, βραχεῖ μαγείρου σοφώτερός ἐστιν ἐν  
ταῖς ἀνατομαῖς, εἰ δ' εἰδὼς οὐ λέγει τὴν χρείαν  
92 αὐτῶν, οἵεται || δηλονότι παραπλησίως τῷ σπληνὶ  
μάτην αὐτὰ γεγονέναι. καίτοι τί ταῦτ' ἐπεξ-  
έρχομαι τῆς περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας  
ὅντα μελλούσης ήμīν ἴδιᾳ περαίνεσθαι;

<sup>1</sup> "Useless" organs; cf. p. 56, note 2. For fallacy of Erasistratus's view on the spleen v. p. 205.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. iv

they must either advance the one proposition or the other. According to the former one the Peripatetics had no accurate acquaintance with Nature, and according to the second, Erasistratus. It is my task, then, to point out the opposition between the two doctrines, and theirs to make the choice. . . .

But they certainly will not abandon their reverence for Erasistratus. Very well, then; let them stop talking about the Peripatetic philosophers. For among the numerous physiological teachings regarding the genesis and destruction of animals, their health, their diseases, and the methods of treating these, there will be found one only which is common to Erasistratus and the Peripatetics—namely, the view that Nature does everything for some purpose, and nothing in vain.

But even as regards this doctrine their agreement is only verbal; in practice Erasistratus makes havoc of it a thousand times over. For, according to him, the spleen was made for no purpose, as also the omentum; similarly, too, the arteries which are inserted into kidneys<sup>1</sup>—although these are practically the largest of all those that spring from the great artery [aorta]! And to judge by the Erasistratean argument, there must be countless other useless structures; for, if he knows nothing at all about these structures, he has little more anatomical knowledge than a butcher, while, if he is acquainted with them and yet does not state their use, he clearly imagines that they were made for no purpose, like the spleen. Why, however, should I discuss these structures fully, belonging as they do to the treatise “On the Use of Parts,” which I am personally about to complete?

Πάλιν ούν ἀναλάβωμεν τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον εἰπόντες τέ τι βραχὺ πρὸς τοὺς Ἐρασιστρατείους ἔτι τῶν ἐφεξῆς ἔχωμεθα. δοκοῦσι γάρ μοι μηδὲν ἀνεγνωκέναι τῶν Ἀριστοτέλους οὗτοι συγγραμμάτων, ἀλλ’ ἄλλων ἀκούοντες, ώς δεινὸς ἦν περὶ φύσιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ώς οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς στοᾶς κατ’ ἵχνη τῆς ἐκείνου φυσιολογίας βαδίζουσιν, εἴθ’ ευρόντες ἐν τι τῶν περιφερομένων δογμάτων κοινὸν αὐτῷ πρὸς Ἐρασίστρατον ἀναπλάσαι τινὰ συννουσίαν αὐτοῦ πρὸς ἐκείνους τοὺς ἄνδρας. ἀλλ’ ὅτι μὲν τῆς Ἀριστοτέλους φυσιολογίας οὐδὲν Ἐρασιστράτῳ μέτεστιν, ὁ κατάλογος τῶν προειρημένων ἐνδείκνυται δογμάτων, ἢ πρώτου μὲν Ἰπποκράτους ἦν, δευτέρου δὲ Ἀριστοτέλους, τρίτων δὲ τῶν Στωϊκῶν, ἐνὸς μόνου μετατιθεμένου τοῦ τὰς ποιότητας εἶναι σώματα.

93 Τάχα δ’ ἀν τῆς λογικῆς ἐνεκα θεωρίας ὡμιλητέναι φαῖεν τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφοις, οὐκ εἰδότες, ώς ἐκεῖνοι μὲν ψευδεῖς καὶ ἀπεράντους οὐκ ἔγραψαν λόγους, τὰ δὲ Ἐρασιστράτεια βιβλία παμπόλλους ἔχει τοὺς τοιούτους.

Τάχ’ ἀν οὖν ἥδη τις θαυμάζοι καὶ διαποροίη, τί παθὼν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος εἰς τοσοῦτον τῶν Ἰπποκράτους δογμάτων ἀπετράπετο καὶ διὰ τί τῶν ἐν ἥπατι πόρων τῶν χοληδόχων, ἄλις γάρ ἥδη νεφρῶν, ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἐλκτικὴν δύναμιν ἐπίκαιρον αἰτιᾶται θέσιν καὶ στομάτων

<sup>1</sup> The Stoics.

<sup>2</sup> The Peripatetics (Aristotelians).

<sup>3</sup> Aristotle regarded the *qualitative* differences apprehended by our senses (the cold, the warm, the moist, and the dry) as fundamental, while the Stoics held the four corporeal elements

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. iv

Let us, then, sum up again this same argument, and, having said a few words more in answer to the Erasistrateans, proceed to our next topic. The fact is, these people seem to me to have read none of Aristotle's writings, but to have heard from others how great an authority he was on "Nature," and that those of the Porch<sup>1</sup> follow in the steps of his Nature-lore ; apparently they then discovered a single one of the current ideas which is common to Aristotle and Erasistratus, and made up some story of a connection between Erasistratus and these people.<sup>2</sup> That Erasistratus, however, has no share in the Nature-lore of Aristotle is shown by an enumeration of the aforesaid doctrines, which emanated first from Hippocrates, secondly from Aristotle, thirdly from the Stoics (with a single modification, namely, that for them the *qualities* are *bodies*).<sup>3</sup>

Perhaps, however, they will maintain that it was in the matter of *logic* that Erasistratus associated himself with the Peripatetic philosophers? Here they show ignorance of the fact that these philosophers never brought forward false or inconclusive arguments, while the Erasistratean books are full of them.

So perhaps somebody may already be asking, in some surprise, what possessed Erasistratus that he turned so completely from the doctrines of Hippocrates, and why it is that he takes away the attractive faculty from the biliary<sup>4</sup> passages in the liver—for we have sufficiently discussed the kidneys—alleging [as the cause of bile-secretion] a favourable situation, the narrowness of vessels, and a (earth, air, fire, and water) to be still more fundamental. *cf. p. 8, note 3.*      <sup>4</sup> Lit. bile-receiving (*choledochous*).

στενότητα καὶ χώραν τινὰ κοινήν, εἰς ἣν παράγουσι μὲν αἱ ἀπὸ τῶν πυλῶν τὸ ἀκάθαρτον αἷμα, μεταλαμβάνουσι δὲ πρότεροι μὲν οἱ πόροι τὴν χολήν, δεύτεραι δὲ αἱ ἀπὸ τῆς κοίλης φλεβὸς τὸ καθαρὸν αἷμα. πρὸς γὰρ τῷ μηδὲν ἄν βλαβῆναι τὴν ὄλκὴν εἰπὼν ἄλλων μυρίων ἔμελλεν ἀμφισβητουμένων ἀπαλλάξεσθαι λόγων.

## V

‘Ως νῦν γε πόλεμος οὐ σμικρός ἐστι τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις οὐ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς ἄλληλους, οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ὅπως ἔξηγήσωνται τὴν ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου τῶν καθόλου 94 λόγων λέξιν, ἐν ᾧ φησιν· “Εἰς τὸ || αὐτὸ δὲ ἀνεστοματικῶν ἑτέρων δύο ἀγγείων τῶν τ’ ἐπὶ τὴν χοληδόχου τεινόντων καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην φλέβα συμβαίνει τῆς ἀναφερομένης ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας τροφῆς τὰ ἐναρμόζοντα ἑκατέροις τῶν στομάτων εἰς ἑκάτερα τῶν ἀγγείων μεταλαμβάνεσθαι καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν χοληδόχου φέρεσθαι, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην φλέβα περαιούσθαι.” τὸ γὰρ “εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀνεστοματικῶν,” δὲ κατ’ ἀρχὰς τῆς λέξεως γέγραπται, τί ποτε χρὴ νοῆσαι, χαλεπὸν εἰπεῖν. ἡτοι γὰρ οὕτως εἰς ταῦτον, ὥστε τῷ τῆς ἐν τοῖς σιμοῖς φλεβὸς πέρατι συνάπτειν δύο ἔτερα πέρατα, τό τ’ ἐν τοῖς

---

<sup>1</sup> *Jecoris portae*, the transverse fissure, by which the portal vein enters the liver.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. iv.-v

*common space* into which the veins from the gateway [of the liver]<sup>1</sup> conduct the unpurified blood, and from which, in the first place, the [biliary] passages take over the bile, and secondly, the [branches] of the vena cava take over the purified blood. For it would not only have done him no harm to have mentioned the idea of *attraction*, but he would thereby have been able to get rid of countless other disputed questions.

### V

AT the actual moment, however, the Erasistrateans are engaged in a considerable battle, not only with others but also amongst themselves, and so they cannot explain the passage from the first book of the "General Principles," in which Erasistratus says, "Since there are two kinds of vessels opening<sup>2</sup> at the same place, the one kind extending to the gall-bladder and the other to the vena cava, the result is that, of the nutriment carried up from the alimentary canal, that part which fits both kinds of stomata is received into both kinds of vessels, some being carried into the gall-bladder, and the rest passing over into the vena cava." For it is difficult to say what we are to understand by the words "opening at the same place" which are written at the beginning of this passage. Either they mean there is a *junction*<sup>3</sup> between the termination of the vein which is on the concave surface of the liver<sup>4</sup> and two other vascular terminations (that of the vessel on the convex surface of the liver<sup>5</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Lit. "anastomosing."

<sup>3</sup> More literally, "synapse."

<sup>4</sup> The portal vein.

<sup>5</sup> The hepatic vein or veins.

## GALEN

κυρτοῖς καὶ τὸ τοῦ χοληδόχου πόρου, ἦ, εἰ μὴ οὕτω, χώραν τινὰ κοινὴν ἐπινοήσαι χρὴ τῶν τριῶν ἀγγείων οἷον δεξαμενήν τινα, πληρουμένην μὲν ὑπὸ τῆς κάτω φλεβοῦ, ἐκκενουμένην δ' εἴς τε τοὺς χοληδόχους πόρους καὶ τὰς τῆς κοίλης ἀποσχίδας· καθ' ἐκατέραν δὲ τῶν ἔξηγήσεων ἄτοπα πολλά, περὶ ὧν εἰ πάντων λέγοιμι, λάθοιμ' ἀν ἐμαυτὸν ἔξηγήσεις Ἐρασιστράτου γράφων, οὐχ, ὅπερ ἔξ ἀρχῆς προύθέμην, περαίνων. κοινὸν δ' ἀμφοτέραις ταῖς ἔξηγήσεσιν ἄτοπον τὸ μὴ || 95 καθαίρεσθαι πᾶν τὸ αἷμα. χρὴ γὰρ ὡς εἰς ἡθμόν τινα τὸ χοληδόχον ἀγγεῖον ἐμπίπτειν αὐτό, οὐ παρέρχεσθαι καὶ παραρρεῖν ὥκεως εἰς τὸ μεῖζον στόμα τῇ ρύμῃ τῆς ἀναδόσεως φερόμενον.

'Αρ' οὖν ἐν τούτοις μόνον ἀπορίαις ἀφύκτοις ὁ Ἐρασιστράτου λόγος ἐνέχεται μὴ βουληθέντος χρήσασθαι ταῖς ἐλκτικαῖς δυνάμεσιν εἰς μηδέν, ἢ σφοδρότατα μὲν ἐν τούτοις καὶ σαφῶς οὕτως, ὡς ἀν μηδὲ παῖδα λαθεῖν;

## VI

Εἰ δ' ἐπισκοποῖτό τις ἐπιμελῶς, οὐδ' ὁ περὶ θρέψεως αὐτοῦ λόγος, δν ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ τῶν καθόλου λόγων διεξέρχεται, τὰς αὐτὰς ἀπορίας ἐκφεύγει. τῇ γὰρ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ συγχωρηθέντος ἐνὸς λήμματος, ὡς πρόσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν, ἐπέραινέ τι περὶ φλεβῶν μόνων καὶ τοῦ κατ' αὐτὰς αἷματος. ἐκρέοντος γάρ τινος

<sup>1</sup> The portal vein.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 120, note 1.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. v.-vi

and that of the bile-duct), or, if not, then we must suppose that there is, as it were, a common space for all three vessels, which becomes filled from the lower vein,<sup>1</sup> and empties itself both into the bile-duct and into the branches of the vena cava. Now, there are many difficulties in both of these explanations, but if I were to state them all, I should find myself inadvertently writing an exposition of the teaching of Erasistratus, instead of carrying out my original undertaking. There is, however, one difficulty common to both these explanations, namely, that the whole of the blood does not become purified. For it ought to fall into the bile-duct as into a kind of sieve, instead of going (running, in fact, rapidly) past it, into the larger stoma, by virtue of the impulse of *anadosis*.

Are these, then, the only inevitable difficulties in which the argument of Erasistratus becomes involved through his disinclination to make any use of the attractive faculty, or is it that the difficulty is greatest here, and also so obvious that even a child could not avoid seeing it?

## VI

AND if one looks carefully into the matter one will find that even Erasistratus's reasoning on the subject of *nutrition*, which he takes up in the second book of his "General Principles," fails to escape this same difficulty. For, having conceded one premise to the principle that matter tends to fill a vacuum, as we previously showed, he was only able to draw a conclusion in the case of the veins and their contained blood.<sup>2</sup> That is to say, when

κατὰ τὰ στόματ' αὐτῶν καὶ διαφορουμένου καὶ μήτ' ἀθρόως τόπου κενοῦ δυναμένου γενέσθαι μήτε τῶν φλεβῶν συμπεσεῖν, τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν τὸ παραλειπόμενον, ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἐπεσθαι τὸ συνεχὲς ἀναπληροῦν τοῦ κενοῦ<sup>||</sup> μένου τὴν βάσιν. αἱ μὲν δὴ φλέβες ἡμῖν οὕτω θρέψονται τοῦ περιεχομένου κατ' αὐτὰς αἴματος ἀπολαύουσαι· τὰ δὲ νεῦρα πῶς; οὐ γὰρ δὴ κάν τούτοις ἔστιν αἷμα. πρόχειρον μὲν γὰρ ἦν εἰπεῖν, ἔλκοντα παρὰ τῶν φλεβῶν ἀλλ᾽ οὐ βούλεται. τί ποτ' οὖν κάνταῦθα ἐπιτεχνᾶται; φλέβας ἔχειν ἐν ἑαυτῷ καὶ ἀρτηρίας τὸ νεῦρον ὥσπερ τινὰ σειρὰν ἐκ τριῶν ιμάντων διαφερόντων τῇ φύσει πεπλεγμένην. φήθη γὰρ ἐκ ταύτης τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἐκφεύξεσθαι τῷ λόγῳ τὴν ὄλκήν<sup>•</sup> οὐ γὰρ ἀν ἔτι δεήσεσθαι τὸ νεῦρον ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιέχον αἴματος ἀγγείον ἐπιρρύτουν τινὸς ἔξωθεν ἐκ τῆς παρακειμένης φλεβὸς τῆς ἀληθινῆς αἵματος ἐτέρου, ἀλλ᾽ ἵκανὸν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὴν θρέψιν ἐσεσθαι τὸ κατεψευσμένον ἀγγείον ἐκεῖνο τὸ λόγῳ θεωρητόν.

97 Ἀλλὰ κάνταῦθα πάλιν αὐτὸν ὁμοία τις ἀπορίᾳ διεδέξατο. τουτὶ γὰρ τὸ σμικρὸν ἀγγείον ἑαυτὸ μὲν θρέψει, τὸ παρακείμενον μέντοι νεῦρον ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἢ τὴν ἀρτηρίαν οὐχ οἷόν τ' ἔσται τρέφειν ἄνευ τοῦ σύμφυτόν τιν' υπάρχειν αὐτοῖς ὄλκὴν τῆς τροφῆς. || τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ πῶς ἀν ἔτι δύναιτο τὴν τροφὴν ἐπισπᾶσθαι τὸ ἀπλοῦν νεῦρον, ὥσπερ αἱ φλέβες

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 272, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. one might assume an attraction.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

blood is running away through the stomata of the veins, and is being dispersed, then, since an absolutely empty space cannot result, and the veins cannot collapse (for this was what he overlooked), it was therefore shown to be necessary that the adjoining quantum of fluid should flow in and fill the place of the fluid evacuated. It is in this way that we may suppose the veins to be nourished; they get the benefit of the blood which they contain. But how about the nerves?<sup>1</sup> For they do not also contain blood. One might obviously say that they draw their supply from the veins.<sup>2</sup> But Erasistratus will not have it so. What further contrivance, then, does he suppose? He says that a nerve has within itself veins and arteries, like a rope woven by Nature out of three different strands. By means of this hypothesis he imagined that his theory would escape from the idea of *attraction*. For if the nerve contain within itself a blood-vessel it will no longer need the adventitious flow of other blood from the real vein lying adjacent; this fictitious vessel, perceptible only in theory,<sup>3</sup> will suffice it for nourishment.

But this, again, is succeeded by another similar difficulty. For this small vessel will nourish itself, but it will not be able to nourish this adjacent simple nerve or artery, unless these possess some innate proclivity for attracting nutriment. For how could the *nerve*, being simple, attract its nourishment, as do the composite veins, by virtue of the tendency

<sup>3</sup> i.e. visible to the mind's eye as distinguished from the bodily eye. cf. p. 21, note 4. *Theoreton* without qualification means merely *visible*, not *theoretic*. cf. p. 205, note 1.

αἱ σύνθετοι; κοιλότης μὲν γάρ τίς ἐστιν ἐν αὐτῷ κατ' αὐτόν, ἀλλ' οὐχ αἷματος αὕτη γ' ἀλλὰ πνεύματος ψυχικοῦ μεστή. δεόμεθα δ' ἡμεῖς οὐκ εἰς τὴν κοιλότητα ταύτην εἰσάγειν τῷ λόγῳ τὴν τροφὴν ἀλλ' εἰς τὸ περιέχον αὐτὴν ἄγγειον, εἴτ' οὖν τρέφεσθαι μόνον εἴτε καὶ αὔξεσθαι δέοιτο. πῶς οὖν εἰσάξομεν; οὕτω γάρ ἐστι σμικρὸν ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἄγγειον καὶ μέντοι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἑκάτερον, ὥστ', εἰ τῇ λεπτοτάτῃ βελόνῃ νύξειάς τι μέρος, ἅμα διαιρήσεις τὰ τρία. τόπος οὖν αἰσθητὸς ἀθρόως κενὸς οὐκ ἀν ποτ' ἐν αὐτῷ γένοιτο· λόγῳ δὲ θεωρητὸς τόπος κενούμενος οὐκ ἦν ἀναγκαστικὸς τῆς τοῦ συνεχοῦς ἀκολουθίας.

'Ηβουλόμην δ' αὖ πάλιν μοι κάνταῦθα τὸν 'Ερασίστρατον αὐτὸν ἀποκρίνασθαι περὶ τοῦ στοιχειώδους ἐκείνου νεύρου τοῦ σμικροῦ, πότερον ἐν τι καὶ συνεχὲς ἀκριβῶς ἐστιν ἢ ἐκ πολλῶν καὶ σμικρῶν σωμάτων, ὧν 'Επίκουρος καὶ Λεύκιππος καὶ Δημόκριτος ὑπέθεντο, σύγκειται. καὶ γὰρ καὶ περὶ τούτου τοὺς 'Ερασιστρατείους ὄρῳ διαφερομένους. . οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐν τι καὶ συνεχὲς αὐτὸν νομίζουσιν ἢ οὐκ ἀν ἀπλοῦν εἰρῆσθαι πρὸς αὐτοῦ φασι· τινὲς δὲ καὶ τοῦτο διαλύειν εἰς ἔτερα στοιχειώδη τολμῶσιν. ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν ἐν τι καὶ συνεχές ἐστι, τὸ κενούμενον ἐξ αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὴν ἄδηλον ὑπὸ τῶν ἰατρῶν ὄνομαζομένην διαπνοὴν

---

<sup>1</sup> According to the Pneumatist school, certain of whose ideas were accepted by Erasistratus, the air, breath, pneuma, or spirit was brought by inspiration into the left side of the heart, where it was converted into natural, vital, and psychic pneuma; the latter then went to the brain, whence it was distributed through the nervous system; practically

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

of a vacuum to become refilled? For, although according to Erasistratus, it contains within itself a cavity of sorts, this is not occupied with blood, but with *psychic pneuma*,<sup>1</sup> and we are required to imagine the nutriment introduced, not into this cavity, but into the vessel containing it, whether it needs merely to be nourished, or to grow as well. How, then, are we to imagine it introduced? For this simple vessel [*i.e.* nerve] is so small—as are also the other two—that if you prick it at any part with the finest needle you will tear the whole three of them at once. Thus there could never be in it a perceptible space entirely empty. And an emptied space which merely existed in theory could not compel the adjacent fluid to come and fill it.

At this point, again, I should like Erasistratus himself to answer regarding this small elementary nerve, whether it is actually one and definitely continuous, or whether it consists of many small bodies, such as those assumed by Epicurus, Leucippus, and Democritus.<sup>2</sup> For I see that the Erasistrateans are at variance on this subject. Some of them consider it one and continuous, for otherwise, as they say, he would not have called it *simple*; and some venture to resolve it into yet other elementary bodies. But if it be one and continuous, then what is evacuated from it in the so-called *insensible transpiration* of the

this teaching involved the idea of a *psyche*, or conscious vital principle. “*Psychic pneuma*” is in Latin *spiritus animalis* (*anima = psyche*); cf. p. 126, note 4. Introduction, p. xxxiv.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that Erasistratus’s “simple nerve” may be almost looked on as an anticipation of the *cell*. The question Galen now asks is whether this vessel is a “unit mass of living matter,” or merely an agglomeration of *atoms* subject to mechanical law. cf. Galen’s “fibres,” p. 329.

οὐδεμίαν ἐν ἑαυτῷ καταλείψει χώραν κενήν. οὕτω γάρ οὐχ ἐν ἀλλὰ πολλὰ γενήσεται, διειργόμενα δήπου ταῖς κεναῖς χώραις. εἰ δ' ἐκ πολλῶν σύγκειται, τῇ κηπαίᾳ κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν πρὸς Ἀσκληπιάδην ἀπεχωρήσαμεν ἄναρμά τινα στοιχεῖα τιθέμενοι. πάλιν οὖν ἀτεχνος ἡμῖν ἡ φύσις λεγέσθω· τοῖς γὰρ τοιούτοις στοιχείοις ἔξι ἀνάγκης τοῦθ' ἔπειται.

Διὸ δή μοι καὶ δοκοῦσιν ἀμαθῶς πάνυ τὴν εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα στοιχεῖα τῶν ἀπλῶν ἀγγείων εἰσάγειν διάλυσιν ἔνιοι τῶν Ἐρασίστρατείων. ἐμοὶ γοῦν οὐδὲν διαφέρει. καθ' ἐκατέρους γὰρ ἄτοπος ὁ τῆς θρέψεως ἔσται λόγος, ἐκείνοις τοῖς ἀπλοῖς ἀγγείοις τοῖς σμικροῖς τοῖς συντιθεῖσι τὰ μεγάλα ||

- 99 τε καὶ αἰσθητὰ νεῦρα κατὰ μὲν τοὺς συνεχῆ φυλάττοντας αὐτὰ μὴ δυναμένης γενέσθαι τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας, ὅτι μηδὲν ἐν τῷ συνεχεῖ γίγνεται κενόν, καν ἀπορρέη τι· συνέρχεται γὰρ πρὸς ἄλληλα τὰ καταλειπόμενα μόρια, καθάπερ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄντος ὄρᾶται, καὶ πάλιν ἐν γίγνεται πάντα τὴν χώραν τοῦ διαφορηθέντος αὐτὰ καταλαμβάνοντα· κατὰ δὲ τοὺς ἑτέρους, ὅτι τῶν στοιχείων ἐκείνων οὐδὲν δεῖται τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας. ἐπὶ γὰρ τῶν αἰσθητῶν μόνων, οὐκ ἐπὶ τῶν λόγω θεωρητῶν ἔχει δύναμιν, ὡς αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ὁμολογεῖ διαρρήδην, οὐ περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κενοῦ φάσκων ἐκάστοτε ποιεῖσθαι τὸν λόγον, ὃ κατὰ βραχὺ παρέσπαρται τοῖς σώμασιν, ἀλλὰ περὶ τοῦ σαφοῦς καὶ αἰσθητοῦ καὶ ἀθρόου καὶ μεγάλου καὶ ἐναργοῦς καὶ ὥπως ἀν ἄλλως ὀνομάζειν ἐθέλης. Ἐρασίστρατος μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸς αἰσθητὸν ἀθρόως οὐ φησι δύνασθαι

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

physicians will leave no empty space in it; otherwise it would not be one body but many, separated by empty spaces. But if it consists of many bodies, then we have "escaped by the back door," as the saying is, to Asclepiades, seeing that we have postulated certain *inharmonious elements*. Once again, then, we must call Nature "inartistic"; for this necessarily follows the assumption of such elements.

For this reason some of the Erasistrateans seem to me to have done very foolishly in reducing the simple vessels to elements such as these. Yet it makes no difference to me, since the theory of both parties regarding nutrition will be shown to be absurd. For in these minute simple vessels constituting the large perceptible nerves, it is impossible, according to the theory of those who would keep the former continuous, that any "refilling of a vacuum" should take place, since no vacuum can occur in a continuum even if anything does run away; for the parts left come together (as is seen in the case of water) and again become one, taking up the whole space of that which previously separated them. Nor will any "refilling" occur if we accept the argument of the other Erasistrateans, since none of their *elements* need it. For this principle only holds of things which are perceptible, and not of those which exist merely in theory; this Erasistratus expressly acknowledges, for he states that it is not a vacuum such as this, interspersed in small portions among the corpuscles, that his various treatises deal with, but a vacuum which is clear, perceptible, complete in itself, large in size, evident, or however else one cares to term it (for, what Erasistratus himself says is, that "there cannot be a

γενέσθαι κενόν· ἐγὼ δ' ἐκ περιουσίας εὐπορήσας  
ὄνομάτων ταύτὸν δηλοῦν ἔν γε τῷ νῦν προκειμένῳ  
λόγῳ δυναμένων καὶ τάλλα προσέθηκα.

100 Κάλλιον οὖν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ || ἡμᾶς τι συνεισενέγκασθαι τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις, ἐπειδὴ κατὰ τοῦτο γεγόναμεν, καὶ συμβουλεῦσαι τοῖς τὸ πρῶτον ἐκεῖνο καὶ ἀπλοῦν ὑπ' Ἐρασιστράτου καλούμενον ἀγγείον εἰς ἕτερόν ἄττα σώματα στοιχειώδη διαλύουσιν ἀποστῆναι τῆς ὑπολήψεως, ὡς πρὸς τῷ μηδὲν ἔχειν πλέον ἔτι καὶ διαφερομένοις Ἐρασιστράτῳ. ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν ἔχει πλέον, ἐπιδέδεικται σαφῶς· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡδυνήθη διαφυγεῖν τὴν περὶ τῆς θρέψεως ἀπορίαν ἡ ὑπόθεσις· ὅτι δ' οὐδ' Ἐρασιστράτῳ σύμφωνός ἐστιν, δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἀπλοῦν καὶ πρῶτον ὄνομάζει, σύνθετον ἀποφαίνουσα, καὶ τὴν τῆς φύσεως τέχνην ἀναιροῦσα, πρόδηλον καὶ τοῦτ' εἶναι μοι δοκεῖ. εἰ μὴ γὰρ κάν τοῖς ἀπλοῖς τούτοις ἔνωσίν τινα τῆς οὐσίας ἀπολείψομεν, ἀλλ' εἰς ἄναρμα καὶ ἀμέριστα καταβησόμεθα στοιχεῖα, παντάπασιν ἀναιρήσομεν τῆς φύσεως τὴν τέχνην, ὥσπερ καὶ πάντες οἱ ἐκ ταύτης ὁρμώμενοι τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἰατροί· καὶ φιλόσοφοι. δευτέρα γὰρ τῶν τοῦ ζῷου μορίων κατὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ὑπόθεσιν ἡ φύσις, οὐ πρώτη γίγνεται. διαπλάττειν δὲ || καὶ δημιουργεῖν οὐ τοῦ δευτέρου γεγονότος, ἀλλὰ τοῦ προϋπάρχοντός ἐστιν· ὥστ' ἀναγκαῖον ἐστιν εὐθὺς ἐκ σπερμάτων ὑποθέσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις τῆς φύσεως, αἷς δια-

<sup>1</sup> cf. Book I., chap. xii.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. in biology we must begin with living substance—with something which is specifically alive—here with the “unit mass of living matter.” cf. p. 73, note 3.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

perceptible space which is entirely empty"; while I, for my part, being abundantly equipped with terms which are equally elucidatory, at least in relation to the present topic of discussion, have added them as well).

Thus it seems to me better that we also should help the Erasistrateans with some contribution, since we are on the subject, and should advise those who reduce the vessel called *primary* and *simple* by Erasistratus into other elementary bodies to give up their opinion; for not only do they gain nothing by it, but they are also at variance with Erasistratus in this matter. That they gain nothing by it has been clearly demonstrated; for this hypothesis could not escape the difficulty regarding *nutrition*. And it also seems perfectly evident to me that this hypothesis is not in consonance with the view of Erasistratus, when it declares that what he calls simple and primary is composite, and when it destroys the principle of Nature's artistic skill.<sup>1</sup> For, if we do not grant a certain *unity of substance*<sup>2</sup> to these simple structures as well, and if we arrive eventually at inharmonious and indivisible elements,<sup>3</sup> we shall most assuredly deprive Nature of her artistic skill, as do all the physicians and philosophers who start from this hypothesis. For, according to such a hypothesis, Nature does not precede, but is secondary to the *parts* of the animal.<sup>4</sup> Now, it is not the province of what comes secondarily, but of what pre-exists, to shape and to construct. Thus we must necessarily suppose that the faculties of Nature, by which she

<sup>3</sup> "Ad elementa quae nec coalescere possunt nec in partes dividi" (Linacre). On the two contrasted schools cf. p. 45.

<sup>4</sup> cf. loc. cit.

πλάττει τε καὶ αὐξάνει καὶ τρέφει τὸ ζῷον· ἀλλ' ἐκείνων τῶν σωμάτων τῶν ἀνάρμων καὶ ἄμερῶν οὐδὲν ἐν ἑαυτῷ διαπλαστικὴν ἔχει δύναμιν ἢ αὐξητικὴν ἢ θρεπτικὴν ἢ ὅλως τεχνικὴν· ἀπαθὲς γάρ καὶ ἀμετάβλητον ὑπόκειται. τῶν δ' εἰρημένων οὐδὲν ἄνευ μεταβολῆς καὶ ἀλλοιώσεως καὶ τῆς δι' ὅλων κράσεως γίγνεται, καθάπερ καὶ διὰ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἐνεδειξάμεθα. καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἀνάγκην οὐκ ἔχοντες, ὅπως τὰ ἀκόλουθα τοῖς στοιχείοις, οἷς ὑπέθεντο, φυλάττοιεν, οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων αἱρέσεων ἀπαντεῖς ἀτεχνον ἡναγκάσθησαν ἀποφήνασθαι τὴν φύσιν. καίτοι ταῦτα γ' οὐ παρ' ἡμῶν ἔχρην μανθάνειν τοὺς Ἐρασι-στρατείους, ἀλλὰ παρ' αὐτῶν τῶν φιλοσόφων, οὓς μάλιστα δοκεῖ πρῶτον ἐπισκοπεῖσθαι τὰ στοιχεῖα τῶν ὅντων ἀπάντων.

Οὔκουν οὐδὲ Ἐρασίστρατον ἄν τις ὄρθως ἄχρι τοσαύτης ἀμαθίας νομίζοι προήκειν, ώς μηδὲ 102 ταύτην γνωρίσαι δυνηθῆναι τὴν ἀκολούθιαν, ἀλλ' ἄμα μὲν ὑποθέσθαι τεχνικὴν τὴν φύσιν, ἄμα δ' εἰς ἀπαθῆ καὶ ἀναρμα καὶ ἀμετάβλητα στοιχεῖα καταθραῦσαι τὴν οὐσίαν. καὶ μὴν εἰ δώσει τιν' ἐν τοῖς στοιχείοις ἀλλοιώσιν τε καὶ μεταβολὴν καὶ ἔνωσιν καὶ συνέχειαν, ἐν ἀσύνθετον αὐτῷ τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἀγγεῖον ἐκεῖνο, καθάπερ καὶ αὐτὸς ὀνομάζει, γενήσεται. ἀλλ' ή μὲν ἀπλῆ φλέψι ἐξ αὐτῆς τραφήσεται, τὸ νεῦρον δὲ καὶ ή ἀρτηρία παρὰ τῆς φλεβός.

<sup>1</sup> “Auxetic.” cf. p. 28, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> “At corporum quae nec una committi nec dividi possunt nullum in se formatricem, auctricem, nutricem, aut

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

shapes the animal, and makes it grow and receive nourishment, are present from the seed onwards; whereas none of these inharmonious and non-partite corpuscles contains within itself any formative, incremental,<sup>1</sup> nutritive, or, in a word, any artistic power; it is, by hypothesis, unimpressionable and untransformable,<sup>2</sup> whereas, as we have previously shown,<sup>3</sup> none of the processes mentioned takes place without transformation, alteration, and complete intermixture. And, owing to this necessity, those who belong to these sects are unable to follow out the consequences of their supposed elements, and they are all therefore forced to declare Nature devoid of art. It is not from us, however, that the Erasistrateans should have learnt this, but from those very philosophers who lay most stress on a preliminary investigation into the elements of all existing things.

Now, one can hardly be right in supposing that Erasistratus could reach such a pitch of foolishness as to be incapable of recognizing the logical consequences of this theory, and that, while assuming Nature to be artistically creative, he would at the same time break up substance into insensible, inharmonious, and untransformable elements. If, however, he will grant that there occurs in the elements a process of alteration and transformation, and that there exists in them unity and continuity, then that *simple vessel* of his (as he himself names it) will turn out to be single and uncompounded. And the simple vein will receive nourishment from itself, and the nerve and artery from the vein. How, and in what

in summa artificem facultatem habet; quippe quod im-  
patibile esse immutibileque praesumitur" (Linacre).

<sup>3</sup> Book I., chaps. v.-xi.

πῶς καὶ τίνα τρόπου; ἐν τούτῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ πρόσθεν γενόμενοι τῷ λόγῳ τῆς τῶν Ἐρασιστρατείων διαφωνίας ἐμυημονεύσαμεν, ἐπεδείξαμεν δὲ καὶ καθ' ἑκατέρους μὲν ἄπορον εἶναι τὴν τῶν ἀπλῶν ἔκεινων ἀγγείων θρέψιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κρῖναι τὴν μάχην αὐτῶν οὐκ ὡκνήσαμεν καὶ τιμῆσαι τὸν Ἐρασιστρατὸν εἰς τὴν βελτίονα μεταστήσαντες αἴρεσιν.

Αὐθις οὖν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐν ἀπλοῦν ἡνωμένου ἑαυτῷ πάντη τὸ στοιχειώδες ἔκεινο νεῦρον ὑποτιθεμένην αἴρεσιν ὁ λόγος μεταβὰς ἐπισκοπείσθω, πῶς τραφήσεται· τὸ γὰρ εὔρεθὲν ἐνταῦθα κοινὸν ἀν ἥδη καὶ τῆς Ἰπποκράτους αἰρέσεως γένοιτο.

103 Κάλλιον δ' ἂν μοι δοκῶ τὸ ζητούμμενον ἐπὶ τῶν νενοσηκότων καὶ σφόδρα καταλελεπτυσμένων βασανισθῆναι. πάντα γὰρ τούτοις ἐναργῶς φαίνεται τὰ μόρια τοῦ σώματος ἄτροφα καὶ λεπτὰ καὶ πολλῆς προσθήκης τε καὶ ἀναθρέψεως δεόμενα. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ τὸ νεῦρον τοῦτο τὸ αἰσθητόν, ἐφ' οὐπερ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐποιησάμην τὸν λόγον, ἵσχυὸν μὲν ἴκανῶς γέγονε, δεῖται δὲ θρέψεως. ἔχει δ' ἐν ἑαυτῷ μέρη πάμπολλα μὲν ἔκεινα τὰ πρώτα καὶ ἀόρατα νεῦρα τὰ σμικρὰ καὶ τινας ἀρτηρίας ἀπλᾶς ὀλίγας καὶ φλέβας ὅμοίως. ἅπαντ' οὖν αὐτοῦ τὰ νεῦρα τὰ στοιχειώδη καταλελέπτυνται δηλονότι καὶ αὐτά, ἦ, εἰ μηδ' ἔκεινα, οὐδὲ τὸ ὅλον. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ θρέψεως οὐ τὸ μὲν ὅλον δεῖται νεῦρον, ἔκαστον δ' ἔκεινων οὐ δεῖται. καὶ μὴν εἰ δεῖται μὲν ἀναθρέψεως, οὐδὲν δ' ἡ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

way? For, when we were at this point before, we drew attention to the disagreement among the Erasistrateans,<sup>1</sup> and we showed that the nutrition of these simple vessels was impracticable according to the teachings of both parties, although we did not hesitate to adjudicate in their quarrel and to do Erasistratus the honour of placing him in the better sect.<sup>2</sup>

Let our argument, then, be transferred again to the doctrine which assumes this *elementary nerve*<sup>3</sup> to be a single, simple, and entirely unified structure, and let us consider how it is to be nourished; for what is discovered here will at once be found to be common also to the school of Hippocrates.

It seems to me that our enquiry can be most rigorously pursued in subjects who are suffering from illness and have become very emaciated, since in these people all parts of the body are obviously atrophied and thin, and in need of additional substance and feeding-up; for the same reason the ordinary *perceptible* nerve, regarding which we originally began this discussion, has become thin, and requires nourishment. Now, this contains within itself various parts, namely, a great many of these primary, invisible, minute nerves, a few simple arteries, and similarly also veins. Thus, all its elementary nerves have themselves also obviously become emaciated; for, if they had not, neither would the nerve as a whole; and of course, in such a case, the whole nerve cannot require nourishment without each of these requiring it too. Now, if on the one hand they stand in need of feeding-up, and if on the

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 153.

<sup>2</sup> On account of his idea of a simple tissue not susceptible of further analysis.      <sup>3</sup> Or "cell"; cf. p. 153, note 2.

βοηθεῖν αὐτοῖς δύναται διά τε τὰς ἔμπροσθεν εἰρημένας ἀπορίας καὶ διὰ τὴν ὑπόγυιον ἰσχυότητα, καθάπερ δεῖξω, ζητητέον ἡμῖν ἐστιν ἔτέραν αἰτίαν θρέψεως.

Πῶς οὖν ἡ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία τρέφειν ἀδύνατός ἐστι τὸν οὕτω διακείμενον; 104 ὅτι τοσοῦτον ἀκολουθεῖν || ἀναγκάζει τῶν συνεχῶν, ὅσον ἀπορρεῖ. τοῦτο δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῶν εὐεκτούντων ἴκανόν ἐστιν εἰς τὴν θρέψιν, ἵσα γὰρ ἐπ’ αὐτῶν εἶναι χρὴ τοῖς ἀπορρέουσι τὰ προστιθέμενα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν ἐσχάτως ἰσχυῶν καὶ πολλῆς ἀναθρέψεως δεομένων εἰ μὴ πολλαπλάσιον εἴη τὸ προστιθέμενον τοῦ κενουμένου, τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἔξιν ἀναλαβεῖν οὐκ ἄν ποτε δύναιντο. δῆλον οὖν, ὡς ἔλκειν αὐτὰ δεήσει τοσούτῳ πλεῖον, ὅσῳ καὶ δεῖται πλείονος. Ἐρασίστρατος δὲ κάνταῦθα πρότερον ποιήσας τὸ δεύτερον οὐκ οἰδέ̄ ὅπως οὐκ αἰσθάνεται. διότι γάρ, φησί, πολλὴ πρόσθεσις εἰς ἀνάθρεψιν γίγνεται τοῖς νενοσηκόσι, διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἡ πρὸς ταύτην ἀκολουθία πολλή. πῶς δὲ ἄν πολλὴ πρόσθεσις γένοιτο μὴ προηγουμένης ἀναδόσεως δαψιλοῦς; εἰ δὲ τὴν διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν φορὰν τῆς τροφῆς ἀνάδοσιν καλεῖ, τὴν δὲ εἰς ἔκαστον τῶν ἀπλῶν καὶ ἀοράτων ἐκείνων νεύρων καὶ ἀρτηριῶν μετάληψιν οὐκ ἀνάδοσιν ἀλλὰ διάδοσιν, ὡς τινες ὀνομάζειν 105 ἡξίωσαν, εἴτα || τὴν διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν μόνη τῇ

<sup>1</sup> The horror vacui.

<sup>2</sup> Prosthesis of nutriment; cf. p. 39, note 6.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

other the principle of the refilling of a vacuum<sup>1</sup> can give them no help—both by reason of the difficulties previously mentioned and the actual thinness, as I shall show—we must then seek another cause for nutrition.

How is it, then, that the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled is unable to afford nourishment to one in such a condition? Because its rule is that only so much of the contiguous matter should succeed as has flowed away. Now this is sufficient for nourishment in the case of those who are in good condition, for, in them, what is *presented*<sup>2</sup> must be equal to what has flowed away. But in the case of those who are very emaciated and who need a great restoration of nutrition, unless what was presented were many times greater than what has been emptied out, they would never be able to regain their original habit. It is clear, therefore, that these parts will have to exert a greater amount of *attraction*, in so far as their requirements are greater. And I fail to understand how Erasistratus does not perceive that here again he is putting the cart before the horse. Because, in the case of the sick, there must be a large amount of *presentation*<sup>2</sup> in order to feed them up, he argues that the factor of "refilling"<sup>1</sup> must play an equally large part. And how could much *presentation* take place if it were not preceded by an abundant *delivery*<sup>3</sup> of nutriment? And if he calls the conveyance of food through the veins *delivery*, and its assumption by each of these simple and visible nerves and arteries *not delivery* but *distribution*,<sup>4</sup> as some people have thought fit to name it, and then ascribes conveyance

<sup>3</sup> *Anadosis*, "absorption"; cf. p. 13, note 5.   <sup>4</sup> Lit. *diadosis*.

πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ φησὶ γίγνεσθαι, τὴν εἰς τὰ λόγῳ θεωρητὰ μετάληψιν ἡμῖν ἐξηγησάσθω. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐκέτ’ ἐπὶ τούτων ἡ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία λέγεσθαι δύναται καὶ μάλιστ’ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐσχάτων ἴσχυντων, ἀποδέδεικται. τί δέ φησιν ἐπ’ αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ τῶν καθόλου λόγων ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος, ἄξιον ἐπακοῦσαι τῆς λέξεως· “Τοῦς δὲ ἐσχάτοις τε καὶ ἀπλοῖς, λεπτοῖς τε καὶ στενοῖς οὖσιν, ἐκ τῶν παρακειμένων ἀγγείων ἡ πρόσθεσις συμβαίνει εἰς τὰ κενώματα τῶν ἀπενεχθέντων κατὰ τὰ πλάγια τῶν ἀγγείων ἐλκομένης τῆς τροφῆς καὶ καταχωριζομένης.” ἐκ ταύτης τῆς λέξεως πρῶτον μὲν τὸ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια προσίεμαί τε καὶ ἀποδέχομαι· κατὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τὸ ἀπλοῦν νεῦρον οὐκ ἀν δύνατο δεχόμενον τὴν τροφὴν οὕτως εἰς δλον ἑαυτὸ διανέμειν· ἀνάκειται γὰρ ἐκεῖνο τῷ ψυχικῷ πνεύματι· κατὰ δὲ τὸ πλάγιον ἐκ τῆς παρακειμένης φλεβὸς τῆς ἀπλῆς ἐγχωρεῖ λαβεῖν αὐτό. δεύτερον δὲ ἀποδέχομαι τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἐρασιστράτου λέξεως ὀνομάτων τὸ 106 γεγραμμένον ἐφεξῆς τῷ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια. || τί γάρ φησι; “Κατὰ τὰ πλάγια τῶν ἀγγείων ἐλκομένης τῆς τροφῆς.” ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἐλκεται, καὶ ἡμεῖς ὄμολογούμεν, ὅτι δὲ οὐ τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ, δέδεικται πρόσθεν.

## VII

Ἐξεύρωμεν οὖν κοινῆ, πῶς ἐλκεται. πῶς δὲ ἄλλως ἡ ὡς ὁ σίδηρος ὑπὸ τῆς ἡρακλείας λίθου

<sup>1</sup> i.e. let him explain the *diadosis*.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi.-vii

through the veins to the principle of vacuum-refilling alone, let him explain to us the assumption of food by the hypothetical elements.<sup>1</sup> For it has been shown that at least in relation to these there is no question of the refilling of a vacuum being in operation, and especially where the parts are very attenuated. It is worth while listening to what Erasistratus says about these cases in the second book of his "General Principles": "In the ultimate simple [vessels], which are thin and narrow, presentation takes place from the adjacent vessels, the nutriment being attracted through the sides of the vessels and deposited in the empty spaces left by the matter which has been carried away." Now, in this statement firstly I admit and accept the words "through the sides." For, if the simple nerve were actually to take in the food through its mouth, it could not distribute it through its whole substance; for the mouth is dedicated to the psychic pneuma.<sup>2</sup> It can, however, take it in through its sides from the adjacent simple vein. Secondly, I also accept in Erasistratus's statement the expression which precedes "through the sides." What does this say? "The nutriment being attracted through the sides of the vessels." Now I, too, agree that it is attracted, but it has been previously shown that this is not through the tendency of evacuated matter to be replaced.

## VII

LET US, then, consider together how it is attracted. How else than in the way that iron is attracted by

\* "Spiritus animalis"; cf. p. 152, note 1. The nutriment was for the *walls* of the vessels, not for their cavities. cf. p. 319, note 3.

## GALEN

δύναμιν ἔχούσης ἐλκτικὴν τοιαύτης ποιότητος; ἀλλ’ εἰ τὴν μὲν ἀρχὴν τῆς ἀναδόσεως ἡ τῆς κοιλίας ἔνθλιψις παρέχεται, τὴν δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα φορὰν ἄπασαν αἴ τε φλέβες περιστελλόμεναι καὶ προωθοῦσαι καὶ τῶν τρεφομένων ἔκαστον ἐπισπώμενον εἰς ἑαυτό, τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας ἀποστάντες, ώς οὐ πρεπούσης ἀνδρὶ τεχνικὴν ὑποθεμένῳ τὴν φύσιν, οὕτως ἀν ἥδη καὶ τὴν ἀντιλογίαν εἴημεν πεφευγότες τὴν Ἀσκληπιάδου μὴ δυνάμενοί γε λύειν αὐτήν. τὸ γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἀπόδειξιν παραλαμβανόμενον λῆμμα τὸ διεζευγμένον οὐκ ἐκ δυοῖν ἀλλ’ ἐκ τριῶν ἐστι κατά γε τὴν ἀλήθειαν διεζευγμένον. εἰ μὲν οὖν 107 ως ἐκ δυοῖν αὐτῷ χρη||σαίμεθα, ψεῦδος ἐσται τι τῶν εἰς τὴν ἀπόδειξιν παρειλημμένων· εἰ δ’ ως ἐκ τριῶν, ἀπέραντος ὁ λόγος γενήσεται.

## VIII

Καὶ ταῦτ’ οὐκ ἔχρην ἀγνοεῖν τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον, εἴπερ κανὸν ὅναρ ποτὲ τοῦς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου συνιέτυχεν, ὥσπερ οὖν οὐδὲ τὰ περὶ τῆς γενέσεως τῶν χυμῶν, ὑπὲρ ὧν οὐδὲν ἔχων εὐπεῖν οὐδὲ μέχρι τοῦ μετρίου πιθανὸν οἴεται παρακρούεσθαι σκηπτόμενος, ώς οὐδὲ χρήσιμος ὅλως ἐστὶν ἡ τῶν τοιούτων ἐπίσκεψις. εἰτ’, ω πρὸς θεῶν, ὅπως μὲν τὰ σιτία κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα πέττεται χρήσιμον ἐπίστασθαι, πῶς δ’ ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ἡ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. VII.-VIII

the lodestone, the latter having a faculty attractive of this particular quality [existing in iron]?<sup>1</sup> But if the beginning of anadosis depends on the squeezing action of the stomach,<sup>2</sup> and the whole movement thereafter on the peristalsis and propulsive action of the veins, as well as on the traction exerted by each of the parts which are undergoing nourishment, then we can abandon the principle of replacement of evacuated matter, as not being suitable for a man who assumes Nature to be a skilled artist; thus we shall also have avoided the contradiction of Asclepiades<sup>3</sup> though we cannot refute it: for the disjunctive argument used for the purposes of demonstration is, in reality, disjunctive not of two but of three alternatives; now, if we treat the disjunction as a disjunction of two alternatives, one of the two propositions assumed in constructing our proof must be false; and if as a disjunctive of three alternatives, no conclusion will be arrived at.

## VIII

Now Erasistratus ought not to have been ignorant of this if he had ever had anything to do with the Peripatetics—even in a dream. Nor, similarly, should he have been unacquainted with the genesis of the *humours*, about which, not having even anything moderately plausible to say, he thinks to deceive us by the excuse that the consideration of such matters is not the least useful. Then, in Heaven's name, is it useful to know how food is digested in the stomach, but unnecessary to know how *bile* comes into existence

<sup>1</sup> Specific attraction; cf. Book I., chap. xiv.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 100, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> In Book II., chap. i.

χολὴ γίγνεται, περιπτόν; καὶ τῆς κενώσεως ἄρα φροντιστέον αὐτῆς μόνης, ἀμελητέον δὲ τῆς γενέσεως; ὡσπερ οὐκ ἀμεινον ὑπάρχον μακρῷ τὸ κωλύειν εὐθὺς ἔξι ἀρχῆς γεννᾶσθαι πλείονα τοῦ πράγματ' ἔχειν ἐκκενοῦντας. θαυμαστὸν δὲ καὶ τὸ διαπορεῖν, εἴτ' ἐν τῷ σώματι τὴν γένεσιν αὐτῆς ὑποθετέον εἴτ' εὐθὺς ἔξωθεν ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις περιέχεσθαι φατέον. εἰ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο καλῶς ἡπόρηται, τί οὐχὶ καὶ περὶ τοῦ αἷματος ἐπισκεψόμεθα, πότερον ἐν τῷ σώματι || λαμβάνει τὴν γένεσιν ἡ τοῖς σιτίοις παρέσπαρται, καθάπερ οἱ τὰς ὁμοιομερείας ὑποτιθέμενοί φασι; καὶ μὴν πολλῷ γ' ἡνὶ χρησιμώτερον ζητεῖσθαι, ποῖα τῶν σιτίων ὅμολογεῖ τῇ τῆς αἵματώσεως ἐνεργείᾳ καὶ ποῖα διαφέρεται, τοῦ ζητεῖν, τίνα μὲν τῇ τῆς γαστρὸς ἐνεργείᾳ νικάται ρᾳδίως, τίνα δ' ἀντιβαίνει καὶ μάχεται. τούτων μὲν γὰρ ἡ ἔκλεξις εἰς πέψιν μόνην, ἐκείνων δ' εἰς αἷματος χρηστοῦ διαφέρει γένεσιν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἵσον ἐστὶν ἡ μὴ καλῶς ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ χυλωθῆναι τὴν τροφὴν ἡ μὴ χρηστὸν αἷμα γεννηθῆναι. πῶς δ' οὐκ αἰδεῖται τὰς μὲν τῆς πέψεως ἀποτυχίας διαιρούμενος, ὡς πολλαὶ τ' εἰσὶ καὶ κατὰ πολλὰς γίγνονται προφάσεις, ὑπὲρ δὲ τῶν τῆς αἵματώσεως σφαλμάτων οὐδὲ ἄχρι ρήματος ἐνὸς οὐδὲ ἄχρι συλλαβῆς μιᾶς φθεγξάμενος; καὶ μὴν εύρισκεται γε καὶ παχὺ καὶ λεπτὸν ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν αἷμα καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐρυθρότερον, τοῖς δὲ ξανθότερον, τοῖς δὲ μελάντερον, τοῖς δὲ φλεγματωδέστερον. εἰ δ' ὅτε

<sup>1</sup> Prevention better than cure.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. Anaxagoras; cf. p. 7, note 5; p. 20, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Lit. haemalosis.

<sup>4</sup> cf. p. 174, note 4.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

in the veins? Are we to pay attention merely to the evacuation of this humour, and not to its genesis? As though it were not far better to prevent its excessive development from the beginning than to give ourselves all the trouble of expelling it!<sup>1</sup> And it is a strange thing to be entirely unaware as to whether its genesis is to be looked on as taking place in the body, or whether it comes from without and is contained in the food. For, if it was right to raise this problem, why should we not make investigations concerning the *blood* as well—whether it takes its origin in the body, or is distributed through the food as is maintained by those who postulate *homœomeries*?<sup>2</sup> Assuredly it would be much more useful to investigate what kinds of food are suited, and what kinds unsuited, to the process of blood-production<sup>3</sup> rather than to enquire into what articles of diet are easily mastered by the activity of the stomach, and what resist and contend with it. For the choice of the latter bears reference merely to digestion, while that of the former is of importance in regard to the generation of useful blood. For it is not equally important whether the aliment be imperfectly chylified<sup>4</sup> in the stomach or whether it fail to be turned into useful blood. Why is Erasistratus not ashamed to distinguish all the various kinds of digestive failure and all the occasions which give rise to them, whilst in reference to the errors of blood-production he does not utter a single word—nay, not a syllable? Now, there is certainly to be found in the veins both thick and thin blood; in some people it is redder, in others yellower, in some blacker, in others more of the nature of phlegm. And one who realizes that it

καὶ δυσώδεις οὐχ ἔνα τρόπον ἀλλ' ἐν πολλαῖς  
 109 πάνν διαφοραῖς ἄρρήτοις μὲν λόγῳ, σα||φεστάταις  
 δ' αἰσθήσεσι φαινεται γιγνόμενον, εἰδεῖη τις, οὐκ  
 ἀν οἷμαι μετρίως ἔτι καταγνώσεσθαι τῆς Ἐρα-  
 σιστράτου ρᾳθυμίας αὐτὸν οὕτω γ' ἀναγκαίαν  
 εἰς τὰ ἔργα τῆς τέχνης θεωρίαν παραλιπόντος.

'Εναργῆ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν ὑδέρων ἀμαρ-  
 τήματα τῇ ρᾳθυμίᾳ ταύτη κατὰ λόγου ἡκολουθη-  
 κότα. τό τε γὰρ τῇ στενοχωρίᾳ τῶν ὄδῶν  
 κωλύεσθαι νομίζειν πρόσω τοῦ ἥπατος οἶναι τὸ  
 αἷμα καὶ μηδέποτ' ἀν ἄλλως ὕδερον δύνασθαι  
 συστῆναι πῶς οὐκ ἐσχάτην ἐνδείκνυται ρᾳθυμίαν;  
 τό τε μὴ διὰ τὸν σπλῆνα μηδὲ δι' ἄλλο τι μόριον,  
 ἀλλ' ἀεὶ διὰ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἥπατι σκίρρον ὕδερον  
 οἴεσθαι γίγνεσθαι τελέως ἀργοῦ τὴν διάνοιαν  
 ἀνθρώπου καὶ μηδενὶ τῶν ὅσημέραι γιγνομένων  
 παρακολουθοῦντος. ἐπὶ μέν γε χρονίαις αἵμορ-  
 ροῖσιν ἐπισχεθείσαις ἡ διὰ κένωσιν ἀμετρον εἰς  
 ψῦξιν ἐσχάτην ἀγαγούσαις τὸν ἀνθρωπὸν οὐχ  
 ἅπαξ οὐδὲ δις ἀλλὰ πολλάκις ἥδη τεθεάμεθα  
 συστάντας ὑδέρους, ὥσπερ γε καὶ γυναιξὶν ἡ τε  
 τῆς ἐφ' ἑκάστῳ μηνὶ καθάρσεως ἀπώλεια παν-  
 τελὴς καὶ ἀμετρος κένωσις, ὅταν αἵμορραγήσωσί  
 110 ποθ' αἱ μῆτραι σφοδρῶς, ἐπεκαλέσαντο πολ||λάκις  
 ὕδερον καὶ τισιν αὐτῶν καὶ ὁ γυναικεῖος ὄνομα-  
 ζόμενος ροῦς εἰς τοῦτ' ἐτελεύτησε τὸ πάθος, ἵνα

<sup>1</sup> Erasistratus held the spleen to be useless. cf. p. 143.

<sup>2</sup> Induration : Gk. *skirros*, Lat. *scirrhus*. The condition is now commonly known by Laënnec's term *cirrhosis*, from Gk. *kirros*, meaning yellow or tawny. Here again we have an example of Erasistratus's bias towards anatomical or structural rather than functional explanations of disease. cf. p. 124, note 1.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

may smell offensively not in one way only, but in a great many different respects (which cannot be put into words, although perfectly appreciable to the senses), would, I imagine, condemn in no measured terms the carelessness of Erasistratus in omitting a consideration so essential to the practice of our art.

Thus it is clear what errors in regard to the subject of *dropsies* logically follow this carelessness. For, does it not show the most extreme carelessness to suppose that the blood is prevented from going forward into the liver owing to the *narrowness of the passages*, and that dropsy can never occur in any other way? For, to imagine that dropsy is never caused by the spleen<sup>1</sup> or any other part, but always by induration of the liver,<sup>2</sup> is the standpoint of a man whose intelligence is perfectly torpid and who is quite out of touch with things that happen every day. For, not merely once or twice, but frequently, we have observed dropsy produced by chronic haemorrhoids which have been suppressed,<sup>3</sup> or which, through immoderate bleeding, have given the patient a severe chill; similarly, in women, the complete disappearance of the monthly discharge,<sup>4</sup> or an undue evacuation such as is caused by violent bleeding from the womb, often provoke dropsy; and in some of them the so-called female flux ends in this disorder. I leave out of account

<sup>3</sup> On the risks which were supposed to attend the checking of habitual bleeding from piles cf. Celsus (*De Re Med.* VI. xviii. 9), "Atque in quibusdam parum tuto supprimitur, qui sanguinis profluvio imbecilliores non fiunt; habent enim purgationem hanc, non morbum." (i.e. the habit was to be looked on as a periodical cleansing, not as a disease.)

<sup>4</sup> Lit. *catharsis*.

## GALEN

τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν κενεώνων ἀρχομένους ἡ ἄλλου τινὸς τῶν ἐπικαίρων μορίων ὑδέρους παραλίπω, σαφῶς μὲν καὶ αὐτοὺς ἔξελέγχοντας τὴν Ἐρασιστράτειον ὑπόληψιν, ἀλλ’ οὐχ οὕτως ἐναργῶς ὡς οἱ διὰ κατάψυξιν σφοδρὰν τῆς ὅλης ἔξεως ἀποτελούμενοι. πρώτη γὰρ αὗτη γενέσεως ὑδέρων αἵτια διὰ τὴν ἀποτυχίαν τῆς αἰματώσεως γιγνομένη τρόπον ὁμοιότατον ταῖς ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν σιτίων ἀπεψίᾳ διαρροίαις. οὐ μὴν ἐσκίρρωται γε κατὰ τοὺς τοιούτους ὑδέρους οὐδὲ ἄλλο τι σπλάγχνον οὐδὲ τὸ ἥπαρ.

Ἄλλ’ Ἐρασίστρατος ὁ σοφὸς ὑπεριδὼν καὶ καταφρούήσας, ὃν οὕθ’ Ἰπποκράτης οὔτε Διοκλῆς οὔτε Πραξιαγόρας οὔτε Φιλιστίων ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ τῶν ἀρίστων φιλοσόφων οὐδεὶς κατεφρόνησεν οὔτε Πλάτων οὔτ’ Ἀριστοτέλης οὔτε Θεόφραστος, ὅλας ἐνεργείας ὑπερβαίνει καθάπερ τι σμικρὸν καὶ τὸ τυχὸν τῆς τέχνης παραλιπών μέρος οὐδὲ 111 ἀντειπεῖν ἀξιώσας, εἴτ’ ὄρθως εἴτε καὶ μὴ || σύμπαντες οὗτοι θερμῷ καὶ ψυχρῷ καὶ ξηρῷ καὶ ὑγρῷ, τοῖς μὲν ὡς δρῶσι, τοῖς δ’ ὡς πάσχουσι, τὰ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα τῶν ζώων ἀπάντων διοικεῖσθαι φασι καὶ ὡς τὸ θερμὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς εἰς τε τὰς ἄλλας ἐνεργείας καὶ μάλιστ’ εἰς τὴν τῶν χυμῶν γένεσιν τὸ πλεῖστον δύναται. ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν μὴ πείθεσθαι τοσούτοις τε καὶ τηλικούτοις ἀνδράσι καὶ πλέον αὐτῶν οἰεσθαι τι γιγνώσκειν ἀνεμέσητον, τὸ δὲ μήτ’ ἀντιλογίας ἀξιώσαι μήτε μνήμης οὕτως ἔνδοξον δόγμα θαυμαστὴν τινα τὴν ὑπεροψίαν ἐνδείκνυται.

---

<sup>1</sup> Apparently some form of anaemia.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

the dropsy which begins in the flanks or in any other susceptible part ; this clearly confutes Erasistratus's assumption, although not so obviously as does that kind of dropsy which is brought about by an excessive chilling of the whole constitution ; this, which is the primary reason for the occurrence of dropsy, results from a failure of blood-production,<sup>1</sup> very much like the diarrhoea which follows imperfect digestion of food ; certainly in this kind of dropsy neither the liver nor any other viscus becomes indurated.

The learned Frasistratus, however, overlooks—nay, despises—what neither Hippocrates, Diocles, Praxagoras, nor Philistion<sup>2</sup> despised, nor indeed any of the best philosophers, whether Plato, Aristotle, or Theophrastus ; he passes by whole functions as though it were but a trifling and casual department of medicine which he was neglecting, without deigning to argue whether or not these authorities are right in saying that the bodily parts of all animals are governed by the Warm, the Cold, the Dry and the Moist, the one pair being active and the other passive, and that among these the Warm has most power in connection with all functions, but especially with the genesis of the humours.<sup>3</sup> Now, one cannot be blamed for not agreeing with all these great men, nor for imagining that one knows more than they ; but not to consider such distinguished teaching worthy either of contradiction or even mention shows an extraordinary arrogance.

<sup>2</sup> Philistion of Locri, a contemporary of Plato, was one of the chief representatives of the Sicilian school of medicine. For Diocles and Praxagoras see p. 51, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Book I., chap. iii.

Καὶ μὴν σμικρότατός ἔστι τὴν γυνώμην καὶ ταπεινὸς ἐσχάτως ἐν ἀπάσαις ταῖς ἀντιλογίαις ἐν μὲν τοῖς περὶ τῆς πέψεως λόγοις τοῖς σήπεσθαι τὰ σιτία νομίζουσι φιλοτίμως ἀντιλέγων, ἐν δὲ τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀναδόσεως τοῖς διὰ τὴν παράθεσιν τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἀναδίδοσθαι τὸ διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν αἷμα νομίζουσιν, ἐν δὲ τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀναπνοῆς τοῖς περιωθεῖσθαι τὸν ἀέρα φάσκουσιν. οὐκ ὡκνησε δ' οὐδὲ τοῖς ἀτμοειδῶς εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἴέναι τὰ οὖρα νομίζουσιν ἀντειπεῖν οὐδὲ τοῖς εἰς ||

112 τὸν πνεύμονα φέρεσθαι τὸ ποτόν. οὗτως ἐν ἅπασι τὰς χειρίστας ἐπιλεγόμενος δόξας ἀγάλλεται διατρίβων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν ταῖς ἀντιλογίαις· ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς τοῦ αἵματος γενέσεως οὐδὲν ἀτιμοτέρας οὕσης τῆς ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ χυλώσεως τῶν σιτίων οὔτ' ἀντειπεῖν τινι τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἡξίωσεν οὔτ' αὐτὸς εἰσηγήσασθαί τιν' ἐτέραν γυνώμην ἐτόλμησεν, ὁ περὶ πασῶν τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν ἐν ἀρχῇ τῶν καθόλου λόγων ὑποσχόμενος ἐρεῖν, δπως τε γίγνονται καὶ δι' ὧντινων τοῦ ζῷου μορίων. ἡ τῆς μὲν πέπτειν τὰ σιτία πεφυκυίας δυνάμεως ἀρρωστούσης ἀπεπτήσει τὸ ζῷον, τῆς δ' αἵματούσης τὰ πεφθέντα οὐδὲν ἔσται πάθημα τὸ παράπαν, ἀλλ' ἀδαμαντίνη τις ἡμῖν αὕτη μόνη καὶ ἀπαθής ἔστιν; ἡ ἄλλο τι τῆς ἀρρωστίας αὐτῆς ἔκγονον ὑπάρξει

<sup>1</sup> Gk. *pepsis*; otherwise rendered *coction*.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 13, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. Asclepiades.

<sup>4</sup> Lit. *chylosis*; cf. p. 238, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> That is to say, the haematopoietic function deserves

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

Now, Erasistratus is thoroughly small-minded and petty to the last degree in all his disputation—when, for instance, in his treatise “On Digestion,”<sup>1</sup> he argues jealously with those who consider that this is a process of putrefaction of the food ; and, in his work “On Anadosis,”<sup>2</sup> with those who think that the anadosis of blood through the veins results from the contiguity of the arteries ; also, in his work “On Respiration,” with those who maintain that the air is forced along by contraction. Nay, he did not even hesitate to contradict those who maintain that the urine passes into the bladder in a vaporous state,<sup>3</sup> as also those who say that imbibed fluids are carried into the lung. Thus he delights to choose always the most valueless doctrines, and to spend his time more and more in contradicting these ; whereas on the subject of the *origin of blood* (which is in no way less important than the chylification<sup>4</sup> of food in the stomach) he did not deign to dispute with any of the ancients, nor did he himself venture to bring forward any other opinion, despite the fact that at the beginning of his treatise on “General Principles” he undertook to say how all the various natural functions take place, and through what parts of the animal ! Now, is it possible that, when the faculty which naturally digests food is weak, the animal’s digestion fails, whereas the faculty which turns the digested food into blood cannot suffer any kind of impairment?<sup>5</sup> Are we to suppose this latter faculty alone to be as tough as steel and unaffected by circumstances ? Or is it that weakness of this faculty will result in some consideration as much as the digestive processes which precede it.

καὶ οὐχ ὅδερος; δῆλος οὖν ἐναργῶς ἐστιν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐξ ὧν ἐν μὲν τοῖς ἄλλοις οὐδὲ ταῖς φαυλοτάταις δόξαις ἀντιλέγειν ὥκνησεν, ἐνταυθοῖ δ' οὗτ' ἀντειπεῖν τοῖς πρόσθεν οὔτ' αὐτὸς εἰπεῖν τι καινὸν ἐτόλμησε, τὸ σφάλμα τῆς ἑαυτοῦ γνωρίζων αἱρέσεως.

Τί γὰρ ἀν καὶ λέγειν ἔσχεν ὑπὲρ αἷματος ||  
 113 ἄνθρωπος εἰς μηδὲν τῷ συμφύτῳ θερμῷ χρώμενος; τί δὲ περὶ ξανθῆς χολῆς ἢ μελαίνης ἢ φλέγματος; ὅτι νὴ Δία δυνατόν ἐστιν ἀναμεμηγμένην τοῖς σιτίοις εὐθὺς ἔξωθεν παραγίγνεσθαι τὴν χολήν. λέγει γοῦν ὡδέ πως αὐτοῖς ὀνόμασι· “Πότερον δ’ ἐν τῇ περὶ τὴν κοιλίαν κατεργασίᾳ τῆς τροφῆς γεννᾶται τοιαύτη ὑγρασία ἢ μεμιγμένη τοῖς ἔξωθεν προσφερομένοις παραγίγνεται, οὐδὲν χρῆσιμον πρὸς ἰατρικὴν ἐπεσκέφθαι.” καὶ μήν, ὡ γενναιότατε, καὶ κενοῦσθαι χρῆναι φάσκεις ἐκ τοῦ ζώου τὸν χυμὸν τοῦτον καὶ μεγάλως λυπεῖν, εἰ μὴ κενωθείη. πῶς οὖν οὐδὲν ἔξ αὐτοῦ χρηστὸν ὑπολαμβάνων γίγνεσθαι τολμᾶς ἄχρηστον λέγειν εἰς ἰατρικὴν εἶναι τὴν περὶ τῆς γενέσεως αὐτοῦ σκέψιν;

‘Τποκείσθω γὰρ ἐν μὲν τοῖς σιτίοις περιέχεσθαι, μὴ διακρίνεσθαι δ' ἀκριβῶς ἐν ἡπατὶ· ταῦτα γὰρ ἀμφότερα νομίζεις εἶναι δυνατά. καὶ μήν οὐ σμικρὸν ἐνταῦθα τὸ διαφέρον ἢ ἐλαχίστην ἢ παμπόλλην χολὴν ἐν ἑαυτοῖς περιέχοντα προσάρασθαι σιτία. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀκίνδυνα, τὰ δὲ παμπόλλην περιέχοντα τῷ μὴ δύνασθαι πᾶσαν

<sup>1</sup> i.e. Erasistratus could obviously say nothing about any of the humours or their origins, since he had not postulated

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

thing else than dropsy? The fact, therefore, that Erasistratus, in regard to other matters, did not hesitate to attack even the most trivial views, whilst in this case he neither dared to contradict his predecessors nor to advance any new view of his own, proves plainly that he recognized the fallacy of his own way of thinking.<sup>1</sup>

For what could a man possibly say about blood who had no use for *innate heat*? What could he say about yellow or black bile, or phlegm? Well, of course, he might say that the bile could come directly from without, mingled with the food! Thus Erasistratus practically says so in the following words: "It is of no value in practical medicine to find out whether a fluid of this kind<sup>2</sup> arises from the elaboration of food in the stomach-region, or whether it reaches the body because it is mixed with the food taken in from outside." But, my very good Sir, you most certainly maintain also that this humour has to be evacuated from the animal, and that it causes great pain if it be not evacuated. How, then, if you suppose that no good comes from the bile, do you venture to say that an investigation into its origin is of no value in medicine?

Well, let us suppose that it is contained in the food, and not specifically secreted in the liver (for you hold these two things possible). In this case, it will certainly make a considerable difference whether the ingested food contains a minimum or a maximum of bile; for the one kind is harmless, whereas that containing a large quantity of bile, owing to the fact that it cannot be properly purified<sup>3</sup>

the four qualities (particularly the Warm—that is, innate heat).      <sup>2</sup> i.e. bile.      <sup>3</sup> i.e. deprived of its bile.

114 αὐτὴν ἐν || ἥπατι καθαρθῆναι καλῶς αἴτια καταστήσεται τῶν τ' ἄλλων παθῶν, ὃν αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐπὶ πλήθει χολῆς γίγνεσθαι φησι, καὶ τῶν ἵκτέρων οὐχ ἥκιστα. πῶς οὖν οὐκ ἀναγκαιότατον ἴατρῷ γιγνώσκειν, πρῶτον μέν, ὡς ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις αὐτοῖς ἔξωθεν ἡ χολὴ περιέχεται, δεύτερον δ', ὡς τὸ μὲν τεῦτλον, εἰ τύχοι, παμπόλλην, ὃ δ' ἄρτος ἐλαχίστην καὶ τὸ μὲν ἑλαιον πλείστην, ὃ δ' οἶνος ὀλιγίστην ἔκαστον τε τῶν ἄλλων ἄνισον τῷ πλήθει περιέχει τὴν χολήν; πῶς γὰρ οὐκ ἀν εἴη γελοιότατος, δις ἀν ἔκὼν αἱρῆται τὰ πλείονα χολὴν ἐν ἑαυτοῖς περιέχοντα πρὸ τῶν ἐναντίων;

Τί δ' εἰ μὴ περιέχεται μὲν ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις ἡ χολή, γίγνεται δ' ἐν τοῖς τῶν ζῴων σώμασιν; ἢ οὐχὶ καὶ κατὰ τοῦτο χρήσιμον ἐπίστασθαι, τίνι μὲν καταστάσει σώματος ἔπειται πλείων αὐτῆς ἡ γένεσις, τίνι δ' ἐλάττων; ἄλλοιον γὰρ δήπου καὶ μεταβάλλειν οἷοί τ' ἐσμὲν καὶ τρέπειν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον ἀεὶ τὰς μοχθηρὰς καταστάσεις τοῦ σώματος. ἀλλ' εἰ μὴ γιγνωσκοιμεν, καθότι μοχθηρὰὶ καὶ δηπή τῆς δεούσης ἔξιστανται, πῶς ἀν αὐτὰς 115 ἐπανάγειν οἷοί τ' εἴημεν ἐπὶ τὸ || κρείττον;

Οὔκουν ἄχρηστόν ἐστιν εἰς τὰς ἴασεις, ὡς Ἐρασίστρατος φησιν, ἐπίστασθαι τὰληθὲς αὐτὸ περὶ γενέσεως χολῆς. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ ἀδύνατον οὐδὲ ἀσαφὲς ἔξευρεν, ὅτι μὴ τῷ πλείστην ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιέχειν τὸ μέλι τὴν ξανθὴν χολὴν ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ σωματι μεταβαλλόμενον εἰς αὐτὴν ἄλλοιοῦται τε καὶ τρέπεται. πικρόν τε γὰρ ἀν ἦν γενομένοις, εἰ χολὴν ἔξωθεν εὐθὺς ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιεῖχεν ἀπασί τ' ἀν ὠσαυτῶς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἵσον αὐτῆς ἐγένενα

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

in the liver, will result in the various affections—particularly jaundice—which Erasistratus himself states to occur where there is much bile. Surely, then, it is most essential for the physician to know in the first place, that the bile is contained in the food itself from outside, and, secondly, that for example, beet contains a great deal of bile, and bread very little, while olive oil contains most, and wine least of all, and all the other articles of diet different quantities. Would it not be absurd for any one to choose voluntarily those articles which contain more bile, rather than those containing less?

What, however, if the bile is not contained in the food, but comes into existence in the animal's body? Will it not also be useful to know what *state of the body* is followed by a greater, and what by a smaller occurrence of bile?<sup>1</sup> For obviously it is in our power to alter and transmute morbid states of the body—in fact, to give them a turn for the better. But if we did not know in what respect they were morbid or in what way they diverged from the normal, how should we be able to ameliorate them?

Therefore it is not useless in treatment, as Erasistratus says, to know the actual truth about the genesis of bile. Certainly it is not impossible, or even difficult to discover that the reason why *honey* produces yellow bile is not that it contains a large quantity of this within itself, but because it [the honey] undergoes change, becoming *altered* and transmuted into bile. For it would be bitter to the taste if it contained bile from the outset, and it would produce an equal quantity of bile

<sup>1</sup> Here it is rather the living organism we consider than the particular food that is put into it.

τὸ πλῆθος. ἀλλ' οὐχ ὡδ' ἔχει τὰληθές. ἐν μὲν γὰρ τοῖς ἀκμάζουσι καὶ μάλιστ' εἰ φύσει θερμότεροι καὶ βίον εἰεν βιοῦντες ταλαιπωρον, ἅπαν εἰς ξανθὴν χολὴν μεταβάλλει τὸ μέλι· τοῖς γέρουσι δ' ίκανῶς ἔστιν ἐπιτήδειον, ώς ἀν οὐκ εἰς χολὴν ἀλλ' εἰς αἷμα τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν ἐν ἐκείνοις λαμβάνον. Ἐρασίστρατος δὲ πρὸς τῷ μηδὲν τούτων γιγνώσκειν οὐδὲ περὶ τὴν διαίρεσιν τοῦ λόγου σωφρονεῖ, πότερον ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις ἢ χολὴ περιέχεται εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἢ κατὰ τὴν ἐν τῇ κοιλίᾳ κατεργασίᾳ ἐγένετο, μηδὲν εἶναι χρήσι-  
116 μον εἰς ιατρικὴν ἐπεσκέφθαι λέγων. ἔχρην || γὰρ δήπου προσθεῖναι τι καὶ περὶ τῆς ἐν ἡπατὶ καὶ φλεψὶ γενέσεως αὐτῆς, ἐν τοῖσδε τοῖς ὄργανοις γεννᾶσθαι τὴν χολὴν ἂμα τῷ αἷματι τῶν παλαιῶν ιατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων ἀποφηναμένων. ἀλλὰ τοῖς εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς σφαλεῖσι καὶ διαμαρτάνουσι τῆς ὄρθης ὁδοῦ τοιαῦτά τε ληρεῦν ἀναγκαῖον ἔστι καὶ προσέτι τῶν χρησιμωτάτων εἰς τὴν τέχνην παραλιπεῖν τὴν ζήτησιν.

Ἡδέως δ' ἀν ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου γεγονὼς ἡρόμην τοὺς ὄμιλῆσαι φάσκοντας αὐτὸν ἐπὶ πλεῖστον τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφοις, εἰ γιγνώσκουσιν, ὅσα περὶ τοῦ κεκράσθαι τὰ σώμαθ' ἡμῶν ἐκ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ὑγροῦ πρὸς Ἀριστοτέλους εἴρηταί τε καὶ ἀποδέδεικται, καὶ ὡς τὸ θερμὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς ἔστι τὸ δραστικώτατον καὶ ὡς τῶν ζώων ὅσα μὲν θερμότερα φύσει, ταῦτα πάντως ἔναιμα, τὰ δ' ἐπὶ πλέον ψυχρότερα πάντως ἔναιμα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῦ χειμῶνος ἀργὰ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

in every person who took it. The facts, however, are not so.<sup>1</sup> For in those who are in the prime of life, especially if they are warm by nature and are leading a life of toil, the honey changes entirely into yellow bile. Old people, however, it suits well enough, inasmuch as the alteration which it undergoes is not into bile, but into blood. Erasistratus, however, in addition to knowing nothing about this, shows no intelligence even in the division of his argument; he says that it is of no practical importance to investigate whether the bile is contained in the food from the beginning or comes into existence as a result of gastric digestion. He ought surely to have added something about its genesis in liver and veins, seeing that the old physicians and philosophers declare that it along with the blood is generated in these organs. But it is inevitable that people who, from the very outset, go astray, and wander from the right road, should talk such nonsense, and should, over and above this, neglect to search for the factors of most practical importance in medicine.

Having come to this point in the argument, I should like to ask those who declare that Erasistratus was very familiar with the Peripatetics, whether they know what Aristotle stated and demonstrated with regard to our bodies being compounded out of the Warm, the Cold, the Dry and the Moist, and how he says that among these the Warm is the most active, and that those animals which are by nature warmest have abundance of blood, whilst those that are colder are entirely lacking in blood, and consequently in winter lie idle and motionless, lurking

<sup>1</sup> Supreme importance of the "soil." cf. Introduction, pp. xii. and xxxi.

καὶ ἀκίνητα κεῖται φωλεύοντα δίκην νεκρῶν.  
εἴρηται δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς χροιᾶς τοῦ αἵματος οὐκ  
'Αριστοτέλει μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ Πλάτωνι. καὶ  
117 ἡμεῖς νῦν, ὅπερ ἥδη καὶ πρόσθεν εἶπον, || οὐ τὰ  
καλῶς ἀποδεδειγμένα τοῖς παλαιοῖς λέγειν πρού-  
θέμεθα, μήτε τῇ γυνώμῃ μήτε τῇ λέξει τοὺς ἄνδρας  
ἐκείνους ὑπερβαλέσθαι δυνάμενοι· τὰ δὲ ἥτοι  
χωρὶς ἀποδείξεως ὡς ἐναργῆ πρὸς αὐτῶν εἰρημένα  
διὰ τὸ μηδὲ ὑπονοῆσαι μοχθηροὺς οὕτως ἔσεσθαι  
τινας σοφιστάς, οἱ καταφρονησούσι τῆς ἐν αὐτοῖς  
ἀληθείας, ἢ καὶ παραλελειμμένα τελέως ὑπ'  
ἐκείνων ἀξιούμενοι εὑρίσκειν τε καὶ ἀποδεικνύναι.

Περὶ δὲ τῆς τῶν χυμῶν γενέσεως οὐκ οἶδ', εἰ  
ἔχει τις ἔτερον προσθεῖναι σοφώτερον ὃν 'Ιππο-  
κράτης εἶπε καὶ 'Αριστοτέλης καὶ Πραξαγόρας  
καὶ Φιλότιμος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν παλαιῶν.  
ἀποδέδεικται γὰρ ἐκείνοις τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἀλλοιού-  
μένης τῆς τροφῆς ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ὑπὸ τῆς ἐμφύτου  
θερμασίας αἷμα μὲν ὑπὸ τῆς συμμετρίας τῆς κατ'  
αὐτήν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι χυμοὶ διὰ τὰς ἀμετρίας γι-  
γνόμενοι· καὶ τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ πάνθ' ὁμολογεῖ τὰ  
φαινόμενα. καὶ γὰρ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων ὅσα μέν ἔστι  
θερμότερα φύσει, χολωδέστερα, τὰ δὲ ψυχρότερα  
φλεγματικώτερα· καὶ τῶν ἡλικιῶν ὡσαύτως χο-  
118 λωδέστεραι μὲν αἱ θερμότεραι φύσει, φλεγμα-  
τωδέστεραι δὲ αἱ ψυχρότεραι· καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδευ-  
μάτων δὲ καὶ τῶν χωρῶν καὶ τῶν ὡρῶν καὶ πολὺ<sup>1</sup>  
δὴ πρότερον ἔτι τῶν φύσεων αὐτῶν αἱ μὲν ψυ-  
χρότεραι φλεγματωδέστεραι, χολωδέστεραι δὲ αἱ

1 Aristotle, *Hist. Animal.*, iii. xix.; Plato, *Timaeus*, 80 E.  
182

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

in holes like corpses. Further, the question of the colour of the blood has been dealt with not only by Aristotle but also by Plato.<sup>1</sup> Now I, for my part, as I have already said, did not set before myself the task of stating what has been so well demonstrated by the Ancients, since I cannot surpass these men either in my views or in my method of giving them expression. Doctrines, however, which they either stated without demonstration, as being self-evident (since they never suspected that there could be sophists so degraded as to contemn the truth in these matters), or else which they actually omitted to mention at all—these I propose to discover and prove.

Now in reference to the *genesis of the humours*, I do not know that any one could add anything wiser than what has been said by Hippocrates, Aristotle, Praxagoras, Philotimus<sup>2</sup> and many other among the Ancients. These men demonstrated that when the nutriment becomes altered in the veins by the innate heat, blood is produced when it is in moderation, and the other humours when it is not in proper proportion. And all the observed facts<sup>3</sup> agree with this argument. Thus, those articles of food, which are by nature warmer are more productive of bile, while those which are colder produce more phlegm. Similarly of the periods of life, those which are naturally warmer tend more to bile, and the colder more to phlegm. Of occupations also, localities and seasons, and, above all, of natures<sup>4</sup> themselves, the colder are more phlegmatic, and the warmer more

<sup>1</sup> Philotimus succeeded Diocles and Praxagoras, who were successive leaders of the Hippocratic school. cf. p. 51, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *phenomena*.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. living organisms; cf. p. 47, note 1.

θερμότεραι· καὶ νοσημάτων τὰ μὲν ψυχρὰ τοῦ φλέγματος ἔκγονα, τὰ δὲ θερμὰ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς· καὶ ὅλως οὐδὲν ἔστιν εὔρεῖν τῶν πάντων, διὸ τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ μαρτυρεῖ. πῶς δὲ οὐ μέλλει; διὰ γὰρ τὴν ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιὰν κρᾶσιν ἑκάστου τῶν μορίων ὡδί πως ἐνεργοῦντος ἀνάγκη πᾶσα καὶ διὰ τὴν βλάβην αὐτῶν ἡ διαφθείρεσθαι τελέως ἡ ἐμποδίζεσθαι γε τὴν ἐνέργειαν καὶ οὕτω νοσεῖν τὸ ζῷον ἡ ὄλον ἡ κατὰ τὰ μόρια.

Καὶ τὰ πρῶτά γε καὶ γενικώτατα νοσήματα τέτταρα τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὑπάρχει θερμότητι καὶ ψυχρότητι καὶ ξηρότητι καὶ ὑγρότητι διαφέροντα. τοῦτο δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ὁμολογεῖ καίτοι μὴ βουλόμενος. ὅταν γὰρ ἐν τοῖς πυρετοῖς χείρους τῶν σιτίων τὰς πέψεις γίγνεσθαι λέγῃ,  
119 μὴ διότι τῆς ἐμφύτου || θερμασίας ἡ συμμετρία διέφθαρται, καθάπερ οἱ πρόσθεν ὑπελάμβανον, ἀλλ' ὅτι περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ τρίβειν ἡ γαστὴρ οὐχ ὁμοίως δύναται βεβλαμμένη τὴν ἐνέργειαν, ἐρέσθαι δίκαιον αὐτόν, ὑπὸ τίνος ἡ τῆς γαστρὸς ἐνέργεια βέβλαπται.

Γενομένου γάρ, εἰ τύχοι, βουβῶνος ἐπὶ προσπταίσματι, πρὶν μὲν πυρέξαι τὸν ἄνθρωπον, οὐκ ἀν χείρον ἡ γαστὴρ πέψειεν· οὐ γὰρ ἴκανὸν ἡν οὐδέτερον αὐτῶν οὕθ' ὁ βουβῶν οὗτε τὸ ἔλκος ἐμποδίσαι τι καὶ βλάψαι τὴν ἐνέργειαν τῆς κοιλίας· εἰ δὲ πυρέξειεν, εὐθὺς μὲν αἱ πέψεις γίγνονται χείρους, εὐθὺς δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐνέργειαν τῆς γαστρὸς βεβλάφθαι φαμὲν ὀρθῶς λέγοντες. ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τίνος ἐβλάβη, προσθεῖναι

---

<sup>1</sup> Erasistratus rejected the idea of innate heat; he held that the heat of the body was introduced from outside.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. VIII

bilious. Also cold diseases result from phlegm, and warmer ones from yellow bile. There is not a single thing to be found which does not bear witness to the truth of this account. How could it be otherwise? For, seeing that every part functions in its own special way because of the manner in which the four qualities are compounded, it is absolutely necessary that the function [activity] should be either completely destroyed, or, at least hampered, by any damage to the qualities, and that thus the animal should fall ill, either as a whole, or in certain of its parts.

Also the diseases which are primary and most generic are four in number, and differ from each other in warmth, cold, dryness and moisture. Now, Erasistratus himself confesses this, albeit unintentionally;<sup>1</sup> for when he says that the digestion of food becomes worse in fever, not because the innate heat has ceased to be in due proportion, as people previously supposed, but because the stomach, with its activity impaired, cannot contract and triturate as before—then, I say, one may justly ask him what it is that has impaired the activity of the stomach.

Thus, for example, when a bubo develops following an accidental wound<sup>2</sup> gastric digestion does not become impaired *until after the patient has become feavered*; neither the bubo nor the sore of itself impedes in any way or damages the activity of the stomach. But if fever occurs, the digestion at once deteriorates, and we are also right in saying that the activity of the stomach at once becomes impaired. We must add, however, by what

<sup>2</sup> As a *bubo* is a swelling in the groin, we must suppose that the wound referred to would be in the leg or lower abdomen.

χρή τῷ λόγῳ. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔλκος οὐχ οἶον τ' ἡν  
 αὐτὴν βλάπτειν, ὥσπερ οὐδέ ὁ βουβῶν· ἡ γὰρ ἀν  
 ἔβλαψε καὶ πρὸ τοῦ πυρετοῦ. εἰ δὲ μὴ ταῦτα,  
 δῆλον, ὡς ἡ τῆς θερμασίας πλεονεξία. δύο γὰρ  
 ταῦτα προσεγένετο τῷ βουβῶνι, ἡ τῆς κατὰ τὰς  
 ἀρτηρίας τε καὶ τὴν καρδίαν κινήσεως ἀλλοίωσις  
 καὶ ἡ τῆς κατὰ φύσιν θερμασίας πλεονεξία.  
 ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν τῆς κινήσεως ἀλλοίωσις οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν  
 120 βλάψει τὴν ἐνέργειαν τῆς γαστρός, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 προσωφελήσει κατ' ἐκεῖνα τῶν ζῴων, ἐν οἷς εἰς  
 τὴν πέψιν ὑπέθετο πλείστον δύνασθαι τὸ διὰ τῶν  
 ἀρτηρῶν εἰς τὴν κοιλίαν ἐμπίπτον πνεῦμα. διὰ  
 λοιπὴν οὖν ἔτι καὶ μόνην τὴν ἄμετρον θερμασίαν  
 ἡ βλάβη τῆς ἐνέργειας τῇ γαστρί. τὸ μὲν γὰρ  
 πνεῦμα σφοδρότερον τε καὶ συνεχέστερον καὶ  
 πλέον ἐμπίπτει υῦν ἢ πρότερον. ὥστε ταύτη  
 μὲν μᾶλλον πέψει τὰ διὰ τὸ πνεῦμα καλῶς  
 πέττοντα ζῷα, διὰ λοιπὴν δὲ ἔτι τὴν παρὰ φύσιν  
 θερμασίαν ἀπεπτήσει. τὸ γὰρ καὶ τῷ πνεύματι  
 φάναι τιν' ὑπάρχειν ἴδιότητα, καθ' ἣν πέττει,  
 κάπειτα ταύτην πυρεττόντων διαφθείρεσθαι καθ'  
 ἔτερον τρόπον ἐστὶν ὄμολογῆσαι τὸ ἄτοπον.  
 ἐρωτηθέντες γὰρ αὐθις, ὑπὸ τίνος ἡλλοιώθη τὸ  
 πνεῦμα, μόνην ἔξουσιν ἀποκρίνεσθαι τὴν παρὰ<sup>3</sup>  
 φύσιν θερμασίαν καὶ μάλιστ' ἐπὶ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν

<sup>1</sup> i.e. fever as a cause of disease.

<sup>2</sup> As we should say, "circulatory" changes.

<sup>3</sup> This is the "vital spirit" or pneuma which, according to Erasistratus and the Pneumatist school, was elaborated in the left ventricle, and thereafter carried by the arteries all over the body, there to subserve circulatory processes. It

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

it has been impaired. For the wound was not capable of impairing it, nor yet the bubo, for, if they had been, then they would have caused this damage before the fever as well. If it was not these that caused it, then it was the excess of heat<sup>1</sup> (for these two symptoms occurred besides the bubo—an alteration in the arterial and cardiac movements<sup>2</sup> and an excessive development of natural heat). Now the alteration of these movements will not merely not impair the function of the stomach in any way: it will actually prove an additional help among those animals in which, according to Erasistratus, the *pneuma*, which is propelled through the arteries and into the alimentary canal, is of great service in digestion;<sup>3</sup> there is only left, then, the disproportionate heat to account for the damage to the gastric activity. For the *pneuma* is driven in more vigorously and continuously, and in greater quantity now than before; thus in this case, the animal whose digestion is promoted by *pneuma* will digest more, whereas the remaining factor—abnormal heat—will give them indigestion. For to say, on the one hand, that the *pneuma* has a certain property by virtue of which it promotes digestion, and then to say that this property disappears in cases of fever, is simply to admit the absurdity. For when they are again asked what it is that has altered the *pneuma*, they will only be able to reply, “the abnormal heat,” and particularly if it be the *pneuma* in the food canal which is in

has some analogy with oxygen, but this is also the case with the “natural spirit” or *pneuma*, whose seat was the liver and which was distributed by the *veins* through the body; it presided over the more *vegetative* processes. cf. p. 152, note 1; Introduction, p. xxxiv.

κοιλίαν· οὐδὲ γὰρ πλησιάζει κατ' οὐδὲν τοῦτο τῷ βουβῶνι.

Καίτοι τί τῶν ζώων ἐκείνων, ἐν οἷς ἡ τοῦ πνεύματος ἴδιότης μέγα δύναται, μυημονεύω, παρὸν ἐπ' ἀνθρώποις, ἐν οἷς ἡ οὐδὲν ἡ παντάπασιν 121 ἀμυνδρόν τι καὶ μικρὸν ὠφελεῖ, ποιεῖσθαι τὸν λόγον; ἀλλ' ὅτι μὲν ἐν τοῖς πυρετοῖς οὔτοι κακῶς πέπτουσιν, ὁμολογεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ τὴν γ' αἰτίαν προστιθεὶς βεβλάφθαι φησὶ τῆς γαστρὸς τὴν ἐνέργειαν. οὐ μὴν ἄλλην γέ τινα πρόφασιν τῆς βλάβης εἰπεῖν ἔχει πλὴν τῆς παρὰ φύσιν θερμασίας. ἀλλ' εἰ βλάπτει τὴν ἐνέργειαν ἡ παρὰ φύσιν θερμασία μὴ κατά τι συμβεβηκός, ἄλλα διὰ τὴν αὐτῆς οὐσίαν τε καὶ δύναμιν, ἐκ τῶν πρώτων ἀν εἴη νοσημάτων· καὶ μὴν οὐκ ἐνδέχεται τῶν πρώτων μὲν εἶναι νοσημάτων τὴν ἀμετρίαν τῆς θερμασίας, τὴν δ' ἐνέργειαν ὑπὸ τῆς εὐκρασίας μὴ γίγνεσθαι. οὐδὲ γὰρ δι' ἄλλο τι δυνατὸν γίγνεσθαι τὴν δυσκρασίαν αἰτίαν τῶν πρώτων νοσημάτων ἀλλ' ἡ διὰ τὴν εὐκρασίαν διαφθειρομένην. τῷ γὰρ ὑπὸ ταύτης γίγνεσθαι τὰς ἐνέργειας ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰς πρώτας αὐτῶν βλάβας διαφθειρομένης γίγνεσθαι.

"Οτι μὲν οὖν καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον ἡ εὐκρασία τοῦ θερμοῦ τῶν ἐνέργειῶν αἰτία, τοῖς θεωρεῖν τὸ ἀκόλουθον δυναμένοις ἵκανῶς ἀποδεῖχθαι νομίζω. τούτου δ' ὑπάρχοντος 122 ἥμιν οὐδὲν ἔτι χαλεπὸν || ἐφ' ἐκάστης ἐνέργειας

<sup>1</sup> Even leaving the pneuma out of account, Galen claims that he can still prove his thesis.

<sup>2</sup> In other words: if *dyscrasia* is a first principle in *pathology*, then *eucrasia* must be a first principle in *physiology*.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

question (since this does not come in any way near the bubo).

Yet why do I mention those animals in which the property of the pneuma plays an important part, when it is possible to base one's argument upon human beings, in whom it is either of no importance at all, or acts quite faintly and feebly?<sup>1</sup> But Erasistratus himself agrees that human beings digest badly in fevers, adding as the cause that the activity of the stomach has been impaired. He cannot, however, advance any other cause of this impairment than abnormal heat. But if it is not by accident that the abnormal heat impairs this activity, but by virtue of its own essence and power, then this abnormal heat must belong to the *primary diseases*. But, indeed, if *disproportion* of heat belongs to the primary diseases, it cannot but be that a *proportionate* blending [eucrasia] of the qualities produces the normal activity.<sup>2</sup> For a disproportionate blend [dyscrasia] can only become a cause of the primary diseases through derangement of the eucrasia. That is to say, it is because the [normal] activities arise from the eucrasia that the primary impairments of these activities necessarily arise from its derangement.

I think, then, it has been proved to the satisfaction of those people who are capable of seeing logical consequences, that, even according to Erasistratus's own argument, the cause of the normal functions is eucrasia of the Warm.<sup>3</sup> Now, this being so, there is nothing further to prevent us from saying

<sup>1</sup> The above is a good instance of Galen's "logical" method as applied to medical questions; an appeal to those who are capable of following "logical sequence." cf. p. 209, note 1.

τῇ μὲν εὐκρασίᾳ τὸ βέλτιον ἔπεσθαι λέγειν, τῇ δὲ δυσκρασίᾳ τὰ χείρω. καὶ τοίνυν εἰπερ ταῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, τὸ μὲν αἷμα τῆς συμμέτρου θερμασίας, τὴν δὲ ξανθὴν χολὴν τῆς ἀμέτρου νομιστέον ὑπάρχειν ἔγγονον. οὗτῳ γὰρ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐν τε ταῖς θερμαῖς ἡλικίαις καὶ τοῖς θερμοῖς χωρίοις καὶ ταῖς ὥραις τοῦ ἔτους ταῖς θερμαῖς καὶ ταῖς θερμαῖς καταστάσεσιν, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ταῖς θερμαῖς κράσεσι τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτηδεύμασι τε καὶ τοῖς διαιτήμασι καὶ τοῖς νοσήμασι τοῖς θερμοῖς εὐλόγως ἡ ξανθὴ χολὴ πλείστη φαίνεται γιγνομένη.

Τὸ δ' ἀπορεῖν, εἴτ' ἐν τοῖς σώμασι τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὁ χυμὸς οὗτος ἔχει τὴν γένεσιν εἴτ' ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις περιέχεται, μηδὲ ὅτι τοῖς ὑγιαίνουσιν ἀμέμπτως, ὅταν ἀσιτήσωσι παρὰ τὸ ἔθος ὑπό τινος περιστάσεως πραγμάτων ἀναγκασθέντες, πικρὸν μὲν τὸ στόμα γίγνεται, χολώδη δὲ τὰ οὐρά, δάκνεται δὲ ἡ γαστήρ, ἐωρακότος ἐστὶν ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἔξαιφνης νῦν εἰς τὸν κόσμον ἐληλυθότος καὶ μήπω τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν φαινόμενα γιγνώσκοντος. ἐπεὶ τίς οὐκ οἶδεν, ὡς ἔκαστον τῶν ἐψομένων ἐπὶ πλέον ἀλυκώτερον μὲν τὸ 123 πρῶτον, ὕστερον || δὲ πικρότερον γίγνεται; κανεὶς τὸ μέλι βουληθείης αὐτὸν τὸ πάντων γλυκύτατον ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἔψειν, ἀποδείξεις καὶ τοῦτο πικρότατον· δὲ γὰρ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὅσα μὴ φύσει θερμά, παρὰ τῆς ἐψήσεως ἔγγιγνεται, τοῦτ' ἐκ φύσεως ὑπάρχει τῷ μέλιτι. διὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἐψόμενον οὐ γίγνεται γλυκύτερον· ὅσον γὰρ ἐχρῆν εἶναι θερμότητος εἰς γένεσιν γλυκύτητος, ἀκριβώς αὐτῷ τοῦτο πᾶν οἴκοθεν ὑπάρχει. δὲ τοίνυν

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

that, in the case of each function, eucrasia is followed by the more, and dyscrasia by the less favourable alternative. And, therefore, if this be the case, we must suppose blood to be the outcome of proportionate, and yellow bile of disproportionate heat. So we naturally find yellow bile appearing in greatest quantity in ourselves at the warm periods of life, in warm countries, at warm seasons of the year, and when we are in a warm condition; similarly in people of warm temperaments, and in connection with warm occupations, modes of life, or diseases.

And to be in doubt as to whether this humour has its genesis in the human body or is contained in the food is what you would expect from one who has—I will not say failed to see that, when those who are perfectly healthy have, under the compulsion of circumstances, to fast contrary to custom, their mouths become bitter and their urine bile-coloured, while they suffer from gnawing pains in the stomach—but has, as it were, just made a sudden entrance into the world, and is not yet familiar with the phenomena which occur there. Who, in fact, does not know that anything which is overcooked grows at first salt and afterwards bitter? And if you will boil honey itself, far the sweetest of all things, you can demonstrate that even this becomes quite bitter. For what may occur as a result of boiling in the case of other articles which are not warm by nature, exists naturally in honey; for this reason it does not become sweeter on being boiled, since exactly the same quantity of heat as is needed for the production of sweetness exists from beforehand in the honey. Therefore the external heat,

ἔξωθεν τοῖς ἐλλιπῶς θερμοῖς ἦν ὡφέλιμον, τοῦτ' ἔκείνῳ βλάβη τε καὶ ἀμετρία γίγνεται καὶ διὰ τοῦτο θâττον τῶν ἄλλων ἐψόμενον ἀποδείκνυται πικρόν. δι' αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς θερμοῖς φύσει καὶ τοῖς ἀκμάζουσιν εἰς χολὴν ἐτοίμως μεταβάλλεται. θερμῷ γὰρ θερμὸν πλησιάζον εἰς ἀμετρίαν κράσεως ἐτοίμως ἔξισταται καὶ φθάνει χολὴ γιγνόμενον, οὐχ αἷμα. δεῖται τοίνυν ψυχρᾶς μὲν κράσεως ἀνθρώπου, ψυχρᾶς δ' ἡλικίας, ὥν εἰς αἷματος ἄγγηται φύσιν. οὔκουν ἀπὸ τρόπου συνεβούλευσεν Ἰπποκράτης τοῖς φύσει πικροχόλοις μὴ προσφέρειν τὸ μέλι, ὡς 124 ἀν θερμοτέρας || δηλονότι κράσεως ὑπάρχουσιν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ τοῖς νοσήμασι τοῖς πικροχόλοις πολέμιον εἶναι τὸ μέλι καὶ τῇ τῶν γερόντων ἡλικίᾳ φίλιον οὐχ Ἰπποκράτης μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πάντες ἱατροὶ λέγουσιν, οἱ μὲν ἐκ τῆς φύσεως αὐτοῦ τὴν δύναμιν ἐνδειξαμένης εύροντες, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς πείρας μόνης. οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπειρίας ἱατροῖς ἔτερον τι παρὰ ταῦτα τετήρηται γιγνόμενον, ἀλλὰ χρηστὸν μὲν γέροντι, νέῳ δὲ οὐ χρηστόν, καὶ τῷ μὲν φύσει πικροχόλῳ βλαβερόν, ὡφέλιμον δὲ τῷ φλεγματώδει· καὶ τῶν νοσημάτων ὧσαύτως τοῖς μὲν πικροχόλοις ἔχθρόν, τοῖς δὲ φλεγματώδεσι φίλιον· ἐνὶ δὲ λόγῳ τοῖς μὲν θερμοῖς σώμασιν ἡ διὰ φύσιν ἡ διὰ νόσου ἡ δι' ἡλικίαν ἡ δι' ὥραν ἡ διὰ χώραν ἡ δι' ἐπιτήδευμα χολῆς γεννητικόν, αἷματος δὲ τοῖς ἐναντίοις.

Καὶ μὴν οὐκ ἐνδέχεται ταῦτὸν ἔδεσμα τοῖς μὲν χολὴν γεννᾶν, τοῖς δὲ αἷμα μὴ οὐκ ἐν τῷ σώματι

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

which would be useful for insufficiently warm substances, becomes in the honey a source of damage, in fact an excess; and it is for this reason that honey, when boiled, can be demonstrated to become bitter sooner than the others. For the same reason it is easily transmuted into bile in those people who are naturally warm, or in their prime, since warm when associated with warm becomes readily changed into a disproportionate combination and turns into bile sooner than into blood. Thus we need a cold temperament and a cold period of life if we would have honey brought to the nature of blood.<sup>1</sup> Therefore Hippocrates not improperly advised those who were naturally bilious not to take honey, since they were obviously of too warm a temperament. So also, not only Hippocrates, but all physicians say that honey is bad in bilious diseases but good in old age; some of them having discovered this through the indications afforded by its nature, and others simply through experiment,<sup>2</sup> for the Empiricist physicians too have made precisely the same observation, namely, that honey is good for an old man and not for a young one, that it is harmful for those who are naturally bilious, and serviceable for those who are phlegmatic. In a word, in bodies which are warm either through nature, disease, time of life, season of the year, locality, or occupation, honey is productive of bile, whereas in opposite circumstances it produces blood.

But surely it is impossible that the same article of diet can produce in certain persons bile and in others blood, if it be not that the genesis of these humours is

<sup>1</sup> The aim of dietetics always being the production of moderate heat—*i.e.* blood.

<sup>2</sup> Note contrasted methods of Rationalists and Empiricists.

τῆς γενέσεως αὐτῶν ἐπιτελουμένης. εἰ γὰρ δὴ οἴκοθέν γε καὶ παρ' ἑαυτοῦ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων ἔκαστον ἔχον καὶ οὐκ ἐν τοῖς τῶν ζώων σώμασι ||  
 125 μεταβαλλόμενον ἐγέννα τὴν χολήν, ἐν ἄπασιν ἀν δμοίως αὐτὴν τοῖς σώμασιν ἐγέννα καὶ τὸ μὲν πικρὸν ἔξω γενομένοις ἦν ἀν οἷμαι χολῆς ποιητικού, εἰ δέ τι γλυκὺν καὶ χρηστόν, οὐκ ἀν οὐδὲ τὸ βραχύτατον ἔξ αὐτοῦ χολῆς ἐγεννᾶτο. καὶ μὴν οὐ τὸ μέλι μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκαστον τῶν γλυκέων τοῖς προειρημένοις σώμασι τοῖς δι' ὅτιοῦν τῶν εἰρημένων θερμοῖς οὖσιν εἰς χολὴν ἔτοίμως ἔξισταται.

Καίτοι ταῦτ' οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἔξηνέχθην εἰπεῖν οὐ προελόμενος ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτῆς τοῦ λόγου τῆς ἀκολουθίας ἀναγκασθείς. εἴρηται δ' ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν Ἀριστοτέλει τε καὶ Πραξαγόρᾳ τὴν Ἰπποκράτους καὶ Πλάτωνος γνώμην δρθῶς ἔξηγησαμένοις.

## IX

Μὴ τοίνυν ως ἀποδείξεις ὑφ' ἡμῶν εἰρῆσθαι νομίζειν τὰ τοιαῦτα μᾶλλον ἢ περὶ τῆς τῶν ἄλλως γιγνωσκόντων ἀναισθησίας ἐνδείξεις, οἱ μηδὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀπάντων ὁμολογούμενα καὶ καθ' ἔκάστην ἡμέραν φαινόμενα γιγνώσκουσιν· τὰς δ' ἀποδείξεις αὐτῶν τὰς κατ' ἐπιστήμην ἔξ ἐκείνων χρὴ λαμβάνειν τῶν ἀρχῶν, ὃν ἥδη 126 καὶ πρόσθεν || εἴπομεν, ως τὸ δρᾶν καὶ πάσχειν εἰς ἄλληλα τοῖς σώμασιν ὑπάρχει κατὰ τὸ θερμὸν καὶ ψυχρὸν καὶ ξηρὸν καὶ ὑγρόν. καὶ

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *anæsthesia*. Linacre renders it *indocilitas*.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii.-ix

accomplished *in the body*. For if all articles of food contained bile from the beginning and of themselves, and did not produce it by undergoing change in the animal body, then they would produce it similarly in all bodies; the food which was bitter to the taste would, I take it, be productive of bile, while that which tasted good and sweet would not generate even the smallest quantity of bile. Moreover, not only honey but all other sweet substances are readily converted into bile in the aforesaid bodies which are warm for any of the reasons mentioned.

Well, I have somehow or other been led into this discussion,—not in accordance with my plan, but compelled by the course of the argument. This subject has been treated at great length by Aristotle and Praxagoras, who have correctly expounded the view of Hippocrates and Plato.

## IX

FOR this reason the things that we have said are not to be looked upon as proofs but rather as indications of the dulness<sup>1</sup> of those who think differently, and who do not even recognise what is agreed on by everyone and is a matter of daily observation. As for the scientific proofs of all this, they are to be drawn from these principles of which I have already spoken<sup>2</sup>—namely, that bodies act upon and are acted upon by each other in virtue of the Warm, Cold, Moist and Dry. And if one is

<sup>2</sup> p. 15.

εἴτε φλέβας εἴθ' ἡπαρ εἴτ' ἀρτηρίας εἴτε καρδίαν  
 εἴτε κοιλίαν εἴτ' ἄλλο τι μόριον ἐνεργεῖν τις  
 φήσειεν ἡντινοῦν ἐνέργειαν, ἀφύκτοις ἀνάγκαις  
 ἀναγκασθήσεται διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιὰν  
 κρᾶσιν ὁμολογῆσαι τὴν ἐνέργειαν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῷ.  
 διὰ τί γὰρ ἡ γαστὴρ περιστέλλεται τοῖς σιτίοις,  
 διὰ τί δ' αἱ φλέβες αἷμα γεννῶσι, παρὰ τῶν  
 Ἐρασιστρατείων ἐδεόμην ἀκοῦσαι. τὸ γὰρ ὅτι  
 περιστέλλεται μόνον αὐτὸ καθ' ἔαυτὸ γιγνώσκειν  
 οὐδέπω χρηστόν, εἰ μὴ καὶ τὴν αἵτιαν εἰδείημεν·  
 οὗτῳ γὰρ ἀν οἷμαι καὶ τὰ σφάλματα θερα-  
 πεύσαιμεν. οὐ μέλει, φασίν, ἡμῖν οὐδὲ πολυ-  
 πραγμονοῦμεν ἔτι τὰς τοιαύτας αἵτιας· ὑπὲρ  
 ἰατρὸν γάρ εἰσι καὶ τῷ φυσικῷ προσήκουσι.  
 πότερον οὖν οὐδ' ἀντερεῖτε τῷ φάσκοντι τὴν μὲν  
 εὐκρασίαν τὴν κατὰ φύσιν αἵτιαν εἶναι τῆς ἐνερ-  
 γείας ἔκάστῳ τῶν ὀργάνων, τὴν δ' αὖ δυσκρασίαν  
 127 νόσον τ' ἥδη καλεῖσθαι καὶ πάντως ὑπ' αὐτῆς  
 βλάπτεσθαι τὴν ἐνέργειαν; ἡ πεισθήσεσθε ταῖς  
 τῶν παλαιῶν ἀποδείξεσιν; ἡ τρίτον τι καὶ μέσον  
 ἔκατέρου τούτων πράξετε μήθ' ὡς ἀληθέσι τοῖς  
 λόγοις ἔξ ἀνάγκης πειθόμενοι μήτ' ἀντιλέγοντες  
 ὡς ψευδέσιν, ἀλλ' ἀπορητικοί τινες ἔξαιφνης καὶ  
 Πυρρώνειοι γενήσεσθε; καὶ μὴν εἰ τοῦτο δράσετε,  
 τὴν ἐμπειρίαν ἀναγκαῖον ὑμῖν προστήσασθαι. τῷ  
 γὰρ ἀν ἔτι τρόπῳ καὶ τῶν ἰαμάτων εὐποροίητε  
 τὴν οὐσίαν ἔκάστου τῶν νοσημάτων ἀγνοοῦντες;  
 τί οὖν οὐκ ἔξ ἀρχῆς ἐμπειρικοὺς ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς  
 ἔκαλέσατε; τί δὲ πράγμαθ' ἡμῖν παρέχετε φυ-

<sup>1</sup> *Iatros*: lit. “healer.”

<sup>2</sup> Lit. “physicist” or “physiologist,” the student of the *physis*. cf. p. 70, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

speaking of any activity, whether it be exercised by vein, liver, arteries, heart, alimentary canal, or any part, one will be inevitably compelled to acknowledge that this activity depends upon the way in which the four qualities are blended. Thus I should like to ask the Erasistrateans why it is that the stomach contracts upon the food, and why the veins generate blood. There is no use in recognizing the mere fact of contraction, without also knowing the *cause*; if we know this, we shall also be able to rectify the failures of function. "This is no concern of ours," they say; "we do not occupy ourselves with such causes as these; they are outside the sphere of the *practitioner*,<sup>1</sup> and belong to that of the *scientific investigator*."<sup>2</sup> Are you, then, going to oppose those who maintain that the cause of the function of every organ is a natural eucrasia,<sup>3</sup> that the dyscrasia is itself known as a *disease*, and that it is certainly by this that the activity becomes impaired? Or, on the other hand, will you be convinced by the proofs which the ancient writers furnished? Or will you take a midway course between these two, neither perforce accepting these arguments as true nor contradicting them as false, but suddenly becoming sceptics—Pyrrhonists, in fact? But if you do this you will have to shelter yourselves behind the Empiricist teaching. For how are you going to be successful in treatment, if you do not understand the real essence of each disease? Why, then, did you not call yourselves Empiricists from the beginning? Why do you confuse us by announcing that you are

<sup>3</sup> That is, a *blending* of the four principles in their natural proportion; Lat. *temperies*. Dyscrasia = *intemperies*, "dis-temper."

σικὰς ἐνεργείας ἐπαγγελλόμενοι ζητεῖν ίάσεως ἔνεκεν; εἰ γὰρ ἀδύνατος ἡ γαστήρ ἐστί τινι περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ τρίβειν, πῶς αὐτὴν εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἐπανάξομεν ἀγνοοῦντες τὴν αὐτίαν τῆς ἀδυναμίας; ἐγὼ μέν φημι τὴν μὲν ὑπερτεθερμασμένην ἐμψυκτέον ἡμῖν εἰναι, τὴν δὲ ἐψυγμένην θερμαντέον· οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὴν ἔξηρασμένην ὑγραντέον, τὴν δὲ ὑγρασμένην ξηραντέον. ἀλλὰ 128 καὶ || κατὰ συζυγίαν, εἰ θερμοτέρα τοῦ κατὰ φύσιν ἄμα καὶ ξηροτέρα τύχοι γεγενημένη, κεφάλαιον εἰναι τῆς ίάσεως ἐμψύχειν θ' ἄμα καὶ ὑγραίνειν· εἰ δὲ αὖ ψυχροτέρα τε καὶ ὑγροτέρα, θερμαίνειν τε καὶ ξηραίνειν κάπὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὥσαύτως· οἱ δὲ ἀπ' Ἐρασιστράτου τί ποτε καὶ πράξουσιν οὐδὲ ὅλως ζητεῖν τῶν ἐνεργειῶν τὰς αἰτίας ὁμολογοῦντες; ὁ γάρ τοι καρπὸς τῆς περὶ τῶν ἐνεργειῶν ζητήσεως οὗτός ἐστι, τὸ τὰς αἰτίας τῶν δυσκρασιῶν εἰδότα εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἐπανάγειν αὐτάς, ὡς αὐτό γε μόνον τὸ γνῶναι τὴν ἐκάστου τῶν ὄργανων ἐνέργειαν ἦτις ἐστὶν οὕπω χρηστὸν εἰς τὰς ίάσεις.

'Ἐρασίστρατος δέ μοι δοκεῖ καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτ' ἀγνοεῖν, ὡς, ἦτις ἀν ἐν τῷ σώματι διάθεσις βλάπτη τὴν ἐνέργειαν μὴ κατά τι συμβεβηκὸς ἀλλὰ πρώτως τε καὶ καθ' ἐαυτήν, αὗτη τὸ νόσημά ἐστιν αὐτό. πῶς οὖν ἔτι διαγνωστικός τε καὶ ιατικὸς ἔσται τῶν νοσημάτων ἀγνοῶν ὅλως αὐτὰ τίνα τ' ἐστὶ καὶ πόσα καὶ ποῖα; κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὴν γαστέρα τό γε τοσοῦτον Ἐρασίστρατος ἤξιώσε

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

investigating natural activities with a view to treatment? If the stomach is, in a particular case, unable to exercise its peristaltic and grinding functions, how are we going to bring it back to the normal if we do not know the *cause* of its disability? What I say is<sup>1</sup> that we must cool the over-heated stomach and warm the chilled one; so also we must moisten the one which has become dried up, and conversely; so, too, in combinations of these conditions; if the stomach becomes at the same time warmer and drier than normally, the first principle of treatment is at once to chill and moisten it; and if it become colder and moister, it must be warmed and dried; so also in other cases. But how on earth are the followers of Erasistratus going to act, confessing as they do that they make no sort of investigation into the cause of disease? For the fruit of the enquiry into activities is that by knowing the causes of the dyscrasiae one may bring them back to the normal, since it is of no use for the purposes of treatment merely to know what the activity of each organ is.

Now, it seems to me that Erasistratus is unaware of this fact also, that the actual disease is that condition of the body which, not accidentally, but primarily and of itself, impairs the normal function. How, then, is he going to diagnose or cure diseases if he is entirely ignorant of what they are, and of what kind and number? As regards the stomach, certainly, Erasistratus held that one should at least

<sup>1</sup> This is the orthodox Hippocratic treatment, that of *opposites by opposites*. Contrast the *homoeopathic* principle which is the basis of our modern methods of *immunisation* (*similia similibus curentur*, Hahnemann).

129 ζητεῖσθαι τὸ πῶς πέττεται τὰ σιτία· || τὸ δὲ ἥπτις πρώτη τε καὶ ἀρχηγὸς αἰτία τούτου, πῶς οὐκ ἐπεσκέψατο; κατὰ δὲ τὰς φλέβας καὶ τὸ αἷμα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ πῶς παρέλιπεν.

'Αλλ' οὐθ' Ἰπποκράτης οὔτ' ἄλλος τις ὁν δὲ λίγων πρόσθεν ἐμνημονευσα φιλοσόφων ἡ ἰατρῶν ἄξιον φέτ' εἶναι παραλιπεῖν· ἀλλὰ τὴν κατὰ φύσιν ἐν ἑκάστῳ ζῷῳ θερμασίαν εὔκρατόν τε καὶ μετρίως ὑγρὰν οὖσαν αἷματος εἶναι φασι γεννητικήν καὶ δι' αὐτό γε τοῦτο καὶ τὸ αἷμα θερμὸν καὶ ὑγρὸν εἶναι φασι τῇ δυνάμει χυμόν, ὥσπερ τὴν ξανθὴν χολὴν θερμὴν καὶ ξηρὰν εἶναι, εἰ καὶ διτι μάλισθ' ὑγρὰ φαίνεται. διαφέρειν γὰρ αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ τὸ κατὰ φαντασίαν ὑγρὸν τοῦ κατὰ δύναμιν. ἡ τίς οὐκ οἰδεν, ὡς ἄλμη μὲν καὶ θάλαττα ταριχεύει τὰ κρέα καὶ ἀσηπτα διαφυλάττει, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο πᾶν ὕδωρ τὸ πότιμον ἔτοιμως διαφθείρει τε καὶ σήπει; τίς δὲ οὐκ οἰδεν, ὡς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ περιεχομένης πολλῆς ἀπαύστῳ δίψῃ συνεχόμεθα καὶ ὡς ἐμέσαντες αὐτὴν εὐθὺς ἄδιψοι γιγνόμεθα μᾶλλον ἡ εἰ

130 πάμπολυ ποτὸν προσηράμεθα; || θερμὸς οὖν εὐλόγως ὁ χυμὸς οὗτος εἴρηται καὶ ξηρὸς κατὰ δύναμιν, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τὸ φλέγμα ψυχρὸν καὶ ὑγρόν. ἐναργεῖς γὰρ καὶ περὶ τούτου πίστεις Ἰπποκράτει τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις εἴρηνται παλαιοῖς.

Πρόδικος δὲ ἐν τῷ περὶ φύσεως ἀνθρώπου γράμματι τὸ συγκεκαυμένον καὶ οἰον ὑπερωπτημένον ἐν τοῖς χυμοῖς ὀνομάζων φλέγμα παρὰ τὸ πεφλέχθαι τῇ λέξει μὲν ἐτέρως χρῆται, φυλάττει

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

investigate *how* it digests the food. But why was not investigation also made as to the primary originative cause of this? And, as regards the veins and the blood, he omitted even to ask the question "*how?*"

Yet neither Hippocrates nor any of the other physicians or philosophers whom I mentioned a short while ago thought it right to omit this; they say that when the heat which exists naturally in every animal is well blended and moderately moist it generates blood; for this reason they also say that the blood is a *virtually* warm and moist humour, and similarly also that yellow bile is warm and dry, even though for the most part it appears moist. (For in them the *apparently* dry would seem to differ from the *virtually* dry.) Who does not know that brine and sea-water preserve meat and keep it uncorrupted,<sup>1</sup> whilst all other water—the drinkable kind—readily spoils and rots it? And who does not know that when yellow bile is contained in large quantity in the stomach, we are troubled with an unquenchable thirst, and that when we vomit this up, we at once become much freer from thirst than if we had drunk very large quantities of fluid? Therefore this humour has been very properly termed warm, and also virtually dry. And, similarly, *phlegm* has been called cold and moist; for about this also clear proofs have been given by Hippocrates and the other Ancients.

Prodicus<sup>2</sup> also, when in his book "On the Nature of Man" he gives the name "phlegm" (from the verb *πεφλέχθαι*) to that element in the humours which has been burned or, as it were, over-roasted, while using

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *aseptic*.

<sup>2</sup> Prodicus of Ceos, a Sophist, contemporary of Socrates.

μέντοι τὸ πρᾶγμα κατὰ ταῦτὸ τοῖς ἄλλοις. τὴν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄνόμασι τάνδρὸς τούτου καινοτομίᾳν ἰκανῶς ἐνδείκνυται καὶ Πλάτων. ἀλλὰ τοῦτό γε τὸ πρὸς ἀπάντων ἀνθρώπων ὄνομαζόμενον φλέγμα τὸ λευκὸν τὴν χρόαν, δὲ βλένναν ὄνομαζει Πρόδικος, ὁ ψυχρὸς καὶ ὑγρὸς χυμός ἔστιν οὗτος καὶ πλεῖστος τοῖς τε γέρουσι καὶ τοῖς ὀπωσδήποτε ψυγεῖσιν ἀθροίζεται καὶ οὐδεὶς οὐδὲ μαινόμενος ἀν ἄλλο τι ἡ ψυχρὸν καὶ ὑγρὸν εἴποι ἀν αὐτὸν.

Ἄρ' οὖν θερμὸς μέν τις ἔστι καὶ ὑγρὸς χυμὸς καὶ θερμὸς καὶ ξηρὸς ἔτερος καὶ ὑγρὸς καὶ ψυχρὸς ἄλλος, οὐδεὶς δὲ ἔστι ψυχρὸς καὶ ξηρὸς τὴν δύναμιν, ἀλλ' ἡ τετάρτη συζυγία τῶν κράσεων || ἐν ἅπασι τοῖς ἄλλοις ὑπάρχουσα μόνοις τοῖς χυμοῖς οὐχ ὑπάρχει; καὶ μὴν ἡ γε μέλαινα χολὴ τοιοῦτός ἔστι χυμός, διὸ οἱ σωφρονοῦντες ιατροὶ καὶ φιλόσοφοι πλεονεκτεῖν ἔφασαν τῶν μὲν ὥρων τοῦ ἔτους ἐν φθινοπώρῳ μάλιστα, τῶν δὲ ἡλικιῶν ἐν ταῖς μετὰ τὴν ἀκμήν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ διαιτήματα καὶ χωρία καὶ καταστάσεις καὶ νόσους τινὰς ψυχρὰς καὶ ξηρὰς εἶναι φασιν· οὐ γάρ δὴ χωλὴν ἐν ταύτῃ μόνη τῇ συζυγίᾳ τὴν φύσιν εἶναι νομίζουσιν ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τὰς ἄλλας τρεῖς οὕτω καὶ τήνδε διὰ πάντων ἐκτετάσθαι.

Ηὔξαμην οὖν κάνταῦθ' ἐρωτῆσαι δύνασθαι τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον, εἰ μηδὲν ὄργανον ἡ τεχνικὴ φύσις ἐδημιούργησε καθαρικὸν τοῦ τοιούτου χυμοῦ, ἀλλὰ τῶν μὲν οὐρων ἄρα τῆς διακρίσεώς ἔστιν ὄργανα δύο καὶ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἔτερον οὐ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

a different terminology, still keeps to the fact just as the others do ; this man's innovations in nomenclature have also been amply done justice to by Plato.<sup>1</sup> Thus, the white-coloured substance which everyone else calls *phlegm*, and which Prodicus calls *blenna* [mucus],<sup>2</sup> is the well-known cold, moist humour which collects mostly in old people and in those who have been chilled<sup>3</sup> in some way, and not even a lunatic could say that this was anything else than cold and moist.

If, then, there is a warm and moist humour, and another which is warm and dry, and yet another which is moist and cold, is there none which is virtually *cold and dry*? Is the fourth combination of temperaments, which exists in all other things, non-existent in the humours alone? No ; the *black bile* is such a humour. This, according to intelligent physicians and philosophers, tends to be in excess, as regards seasons, mainly in the fall of the year, and, as regards ages, mainly after the prime of life. And, similarly, also they say that there are cold and dry modes of life, regions, constitutions, and diseases. Nature, they suppose, is not defective in this single combination ; like the three other combinations, it extends everywhere.

At this point, also, I would gladly have been able to ask Erasistratus whether his "artistic" Nature has not constructed any organ for *clearing away* a humour such as this. For whilst there are two organs for the excretion of urine, and another of considerable size for that of yellow bile, does the

<sup>1</sup> Plato, *Timaeus*, 83–86, *passim*.

<sup>2</sup> cf. the term *blennorrhœa*, which is still used.

<sup>3</sup> cf. the Scotch term "colderd" for "affected with a cold"; Germ. *erkältet*.

σμικρόν, ὁ δὲ τούτων κακοηθέστερος χυμὸς ἀλάται διὰ παντὸς ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ἀναμεμιγμένος τῷ αἷματι. καίτοι “Δυσεντερίη,” φησί που Ἰπποκράτης, “ἥν ἀπὸ χολῆς μελαίνης ἄρξη-  
 132 ται, θανάσιμον,” οὐ μὴν ἡ γ' ἀπὸ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἀρχομένη πάντως δλέθριος, ἀλλ' οἱ πλείους ἔξι αὐτῆς διασφέζονται. τοσούτῳ κακοηθεστέρᾳ τε καὶ δριμυτέρᾳ τὴν δύναμιν ἡ μέλαινα χολὴ τῆς ξανθῆς ἐστιν. ἀρ' οὖν οὔτε τῶν ἄλλων ἀνέγνω τι τῶν τοῦ Ἰπποκράτους γραμμάτων ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὐδέν οὔτε τὸ περὶ φύσεως ἀνθρώπου βιβλίον, ἵν' οὕτως ἀργῶς παρέλθοι τὴν περὶ τῶν χυμῶν ἐπίσκεψιν, ἡ γιγνώσκει μέν, ἐκῶν δὲ παραλείπει καλλίστην τῆς τέχνης θεωρίαν; ἔχρην οὖν αὐτὸν μηδὲ περὶ τοῦ σπληνὸς εἰρηκέναι τι μηδ' ἀσχημονεῦν ὑπὸ τῆς τεχνικῆς φύσεως ὅργανον τηλικοῦτον μάτην ἥγονύμενον κατεσκευάσθαι. καὶ μὴν οὐχ Ἰπποκράτης μόνον ἡ Πλάτων, οὐδέν τι χείρους Ἐρασιστράτου περὶ φύσιν ἄνδρες, ἐν τι τῶν καθαιρόντων τὸ αἷμα καὶ τοῦτ' εἰναί φασι τὸ σπλάγχνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μυρίοι σὺν αὐτοῖς ἄλλοι τῶν παλαιῶν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων, ὃν ἀπάντων προσποιησάμενος ὑπερφρονεῦν ὁ γενναῖος Ἐρασίστρατος οὗτ' ἀντεῖπεν οὐθ' ὅλως τῆς δόξης αὐτῶν ἐμινημόνευσε. καὶ μὴν ὅσοις γε τὸ σῶμα θάλλει, τούτοις ὁ σπλὴν φθίνει, φησὶν Ἰπποκράτης, καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ  
 133 τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὅρμώμενοι πάντες ὁμολογοῦσιν ἰατρού. καὶ ὅσοις γ' αὖ μέγας καὶ ὕπουλος

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

humour which is more pernicious than these wander about persistently in the veins mingled with the blood ? Yet Hippocrates says, “ Dysentery is a fatal condition if it proceeds from black bile ” ; while that proceeding from yellow bile is by no means deadly, and most people recover from it ; this proves how much more pernicious and acrid in its potentialities is black than yellow bile. Has Erasistratus, then, not read the book, “ On the Nature of Man,” any more than any of the rest of Hippocrates’s writings, that he so carelessly passes over the consideration of the humours ? Or, does he know it, and yet voluntarily neglect one of the finest studies<sup>1</sup> in medicine ? Thus he ought not to have said anything about the spleen,<sup>2</sup> nor have stultified himself by holding that an artistic Nature would have prepared so large an organ for no purpose. As a matter of fact, not only Hippocrates and Plato—who are no less authorities on Nature than is Erasistratus—say that this viscus also is one of those which cleanse the blood, but there are thousands of the ancient physicians and philosophers as well who are in agreement with them. Now, all of these the high and mighty Erasistratus affected to despise, and he neither contradicted them nor even so much as mentioned their opinion. Hippocrates, indeed, says that the spleen wastes in those people in whom the body is in good condition, and all those physicians also who base themselves on experience<sup>3</sup> agree with this. Again, in those cases in which the spleen is large and is increasing from

<sup>1</sup> The word *theōria* used here is not the same as our *theory*. It is rather a “ contemplation,” the process by which a theory is arrived at. cf. p. 226, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> Erasistratus on the uselessness of the spleen. cf. p. 143.

<sup>3</sup> The Empirical school. cf. p. 193.

αὐξάνεται, τούτοις καταφθείρει τε καὶ κακόχυμα τὰ σώματα τίθησιν, ὡς καὶ τοῦτο πάλιν οὐχ Ἰπποκράτης μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ Πλάτων ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὁμολογοῦσιν ἰατροί. καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ σπληνὸς δὲ κακοπραγοῦντος ἵκτεροι μελάντεροι καὶ τῶν ἐλκῶν αἱ οὐλαὶ μέλαιναι. καθόλου γάρ, ὅταν ἐνδεέστερον ἥ προσῆκεν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἐλκη τὸν μελαγχολικὸν χυμόν, ἀκάθαρτον μὲν τὸ αἷμα, κακόχρουν δὲ τὸ πᾶν γίγνεται σῶμα. πότε δὲ ἐνδεέστερον ἐλκει; ἥ δῆλον ὅτι κακῶς διακείμενος; ὥσπερ οὖν τοῖς νεφροῖς ἐνεργείας οὔσης ἐλκειν τὰ οὐρα κακῶς ἐλκειν ὑπάρχει κακοπραγοῦσιν, οὕτω καὶ τῷ σπληνὶ ποιότητος μελαγχολικῆς ἐλκτικὴν ἐν ἑαυτῷ δύναμιν ἔχοντι σύμφυτον ἀρρωστήσαντί ποτε ταύτην ἀναγκαῖον ἐλκειν κακῶς κὰν τῷδε παχύτερον ἥδη καὶ μελάντερον γίγνεσθαι τὸ αἷμα.

Ταῦτ' οὖν ἅπαντα πρός τε τὰς διαγνώσεις τῶν νοσημάτων καὶ τὰς ἴασεις μεγίστην παρεχό-  
 134 μενα χρείαν || ὑπερεπήδησε τελέως ὁ Ἐρασί-  
 στρατος καὶ καταφρονεῖν προσεποιήσατο τηλι-  
 κούτων ἀνδρῶν ὁ μηδὲ τῶν τυχόντων καταφρονῶν  
 ἀλλ' ἀεὶ φιλοτίμως ἀντιλέγων ταῖς ἥλιθιωτάταις  
 δόξαις. φέρετο δὲ καὶ δῆλον, ὡς οὐδὲν ἔχων οὔτ'  
 ἀντειπεῖν τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις ὑπὲρ ὧν ἀπεφήναντο  
 περὶ σπληνὸς ἐνεργείας τε καὶ χρείας οὔτ' αὐτὸς  
 ἔξευρίσκων τι καινὸν εἰς τὸ μηδὲν ὅλως εἰπεῖν  
 ἀφίκετο. ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς γε πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ τῶν  
 αἰτίων, οἵς ἅπαντα διοικεῖται τὰ κατὰ τὰς

<sup>1</sup> Enlargement and suppuration (?) of spleen associated with toxæmia or "cacochymy." <sup>2</sup> Lit. "melancholic."

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

internal suppuration, it destroys the body and fills it with evil humours;<sup>1</sup> this again is agreed on, not only by Hippocrates, but also by Plato and many others, including the Empiric physicians. And the jaundice which occurs when the spleen is out of order is darker in colour, and the cicatrices of ulcers are dark. For, generally speaking, when the spleen is drawing the atrabiliary<sup>2</sup> humour into itself to a less degree than is proper, the blood is unpurified, and the whole body takes on a bad colour. And when does it draw this in to a less degree than proper? Obviously, when it [the spleen] is in a bad condition. Thus, just as the kidneys, whose function it is to attract the urine, do this badly when they are out of order, so also the spleen, which has in itself a native power of attracting an atrabiliary quality,<sup>3</sup> if it ever happens to be weak, must necessarily exercise this attraction badly, with the result that the blood becomes thicker and darker.

Now all these points, affording as they do the greatest help in the diagnosis and in the cure of disease were entirely passed over by Erasistratus, and he pretended to despise these great men—he who does not despise ordinary people, but always jealously attacks the most absurd doctrines. Hence, it was clearly because he had nothing to say against the statements made by the ancients regarding the function and utility of the spleen, and also because he could discover nothing new himself, that he ended by saying nothing at all. I, however, for my part, have demonstrated, firstly from the *causes* by which everything throughout nature is governed (by

on of sensible qualities which we call  
ote 3.

φυσεις, τοῦ θερμοῦ λέγω καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ὑγροῦ, δεύτερον δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν ἐναργῶς φαινομένων κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ψυχρὸν καὶ ξηρὸν εἶναι τινα χρῆναι χυμὸν ἀπεδείξαμεν. ἐξῆς δὲ, ὅτι καὶ μελαγχολικὸς οὗτος ὑπάρχει καὶ τὸ καθαῖρον αὐτὸν σπλάγχνον ὁ σπλήν ἐστιν, διὰ βραχέων ὡς ἔνι μάλιστα τῶν τοῖς παλαιοῖς ἀποδεδειγμένων ἀναμνήσαντες ἐπὶ τὸ λεῖπον ἔτι τοῖς παροῦσι λόγοις ἀφιξόμεθα.

Τί δὲ ἀν εἴη λεῖπον ἄλλο γένος ἢ ἐξηγήσασθαι  
 135 σαφῶς, οἷόν τι βούλονται τε || καὶ ἀποδεικνύουσι περὶ τὴν τῶν χυμῶν γένεσιν οἱ παλαιοὶ συμβαίνειν. ἐναργέστερον δὲ ἀν γνωσθείη διὰ παραδείγματος. οἷνον δή μοι νόει γλεύκινον οὐ πρὸ πολλοῦ τῶν σταφυλῶν ἐκτεθλιμμένον ζέοντά τε καὶ ἄλλοιούμενον ὑπὸ τῆς ἐν αὐτῷ θερμασίας ἔπειτα κατὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ μεταβολὴν δύο γεννώμενα περιττώματα τὸ μὲν κουφότερόν τε καὶ ἀερωδέστερον, τὸ δὲ βαρύτερόν τε καὶ γεωδέστερον, ὃν τὸ μὲν ἄνθος, οἶμαι, τὸ δὲ τρύγα καλοῦσι. τούτων τῷ μὲν ἐτέρῳ τὴν ξανθὴν χολήν, τῷ δὲ ἐτέρῳ τὴν μέλαιναν εἰκάζων οὐκ ἀν ἀμάρτοις, οὐ τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχόντων ἰδέαν τῶν χυμῶν τούτων ἐν τῷ κατὰ φύσιν διοικεῖσθαι τὸ ζῷον, οἷαν καὶ παρὰ φύσιν ἔχοντος ἐπιφαίνονται πολλάκις. ή μὲν γὰρ ξανθὴ λεκιθώδης γίγνεται· καὶ γὰρ ὄνομάζουσιν οὕτως αὐτήν, ὅτι ταῖς τῶν ὠῶν λεκίθοις ὁμοιοῦται κατά τε χρόαν καὶ πάχος. ή δὲ αὖ μέλαινα κακοηθέστερα μὲν πολὺ καὶ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

the causes I mean the Warm, Cold, Dry and Moist) and secondly, from obvious bodily phenomena, that there must needs be a cold and dry humour.<sup>1</sup> And having in the next place drawn attention to the fact that this humour is black bile [atrabilary] and that the viscus which clears it away is the spleen—having pointed this out by help of as few as possible of the proofs given by ancient writers, I shall now proceed to what remains of the subject in hand.

What else, then, remains but to explain clearly what it is that happens in the generation of the humours, according to the belief and demonstration of the Ancients? This will be more clearly understood from a comparison. Imagine, then, some new wine which has been not long ago pressed from the grape, and which is fermenting and undergoing *alteration* through the agency of its contained heat.<sup>2</sup> Imagine next two residual substances produced during this process of alteration, the one tending to be light and air-like and the other to be heavy and more of the nature of earth; of these the one, as I understand, they call the *flower* and the other the *lees*. Now you may correctly compare yellow bile to the first of these, and black bile to the latter, although these humours have not the same appearance when the animal is in normal health as that which they often show when it is not so; for then the yellow bile becomes *vitelline*,<sup>3</sup> being so termed because it becomes like the yolk of an egg, both in colour and density; and again, even the black bile itself becomes much more malignant than when in

<sup>1</sup> Thus Galen has demonstrated the functions of the spleen both deductively and inductively. For another example of the combined method cf. Book III., chaps. i. and ii.; cf. also Introd. p. xxxii.   <sup>2</sup> i.e. its innate heat.   <sup>3</sup> Lit. *lecithoid*.

αῦτη τῆς κατὰ φύσιν ὅνομα δ' οὐδὲν ἴδιον κεῖται τῷ τοιούτῳ χυμῷ, πλὴν εἴ πού τινες ἡ ξυστικὸν ἡ ὀξώδη κεκλήκασιν αὐτόν, ὅτι καὶ δριμὺς ὄμοίως 136 ὁξεῖ γίγνεται καὶ || ξύει γε τὸ σῶμα τοῦ ζώου καὶ τὴν γῆν, εἰ κατ<sup>3</sup> αὐτῆς ἐκχυθείη, καί τινα μετὰ πομφολύγων οίον ζύμωσίν τε καὶ ζέσιν ἐργάζεται, σηπεδόνος ἐπικτήτου προσελθούσης ἐκείνῳ τῷ κατὰ φύσιν ἔχοντι χυμῷ τῷ μέλανι. καὶ μοι δοκοῦσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν παλαιῶν ἰατρῶν αὐτὸ μὲν τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἔχον τοῦ τοιούτου χυμοῦ καὶ διαχωροῦν κάτω καὶ πολλάκις ἐπιπολάζον ἄνω μέλανα καλεῖν χυμόν, οὐ μέλαιναν χολήν, τὸ δ' ἐκ συγκαύσεώς τινος καὶ σηπεδόνος εἰς τὴν ὀξεῖαν μεθιστάμενον ποιότητα μέλαιναν ὄνομάζειν χολήν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν ὄνομάτων οὐ χρὴ διαφέρεσθαι, τὸ δ' ἀληθὲς ὡδ'<sup>1</sup> ἔχον εἰδέναι.

Κατὰ τὴν τοῦ αἵματος γένεσιν ὅσον ἀν ἵκανῶς παχὺ καὶ γεώδες ἐκ τῆς τῶν σιτίων φύσεως ἐμφερόμενον τῇ τροφῇ μὴ δέξηται καλῶς τὴν ἐκ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας ἀλλοίωσιν, ὁ σπλὴν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἔλκει τοῦτο. τὸ δ' ὀπτηθέν, ως ἄν τις εἴποι, καὶ συγκαυθὲν τῆς τροφῆς, εἴη δ' ἀν τοῦτο τὸ θερμότατον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ γλυκύτατον, οίον τό τε μέλι καὶ ἡ πιμελή, ξανθὴ γενόμενον χολὴ διὰ τῶν χοληδόχων ὄνομαζομένων ἀγγείων 137 ἔκκαθαιρεται. || λεπτὸν δ' ἐστὶ τοῦτο καὶ ύγρὸν καὶ ρυτὸν οὐχ ὕσπερ ὅταν ὀπτηθὲν ἐσχάτως ξανθὸν καὶ πυρῶδες καὶ παχὺ γένηται ταῖς τῶν

<sup>1</sup> Note that there can be "normal" black bile.

<sup>2</sup> The term *food* here means the food as introduced into the stomach; the term *nutriment* (*trophé*) means the same

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

its normal condition,<sup>1</sup> but no particular name has been given to [such a condition of] the humour, except that some people have called it *corrosive* or *acetose*, because it also becomes sharp like vinegar and corrodes the animal's body—as also the earth, if it be poured out upon it—and it produces a kind of fermentation and seething, accompanied by bubbles—an abnormal putrefaction having become added to the natural condition of the black humour. It seems to me also that most of the ancient physicians give the name *black humour* and not *black bile* to the normal portion of this humour, which is discharged from the bowel and which also frequently rises to the top [of the stomach-contents]; and they call *black bile* that part which, through a kind of combustion and putrefaction, has had its quality changed to acid. There is no need, however, to dispute about names, but we must realise the facts, which are as follow:—

In the genesis of blood, everything in the nutriment<sup>2</sup> which belongs naturally to the thick and earth-like part of the food,<sup>2</sup> and which does not take on well the alteration produced by the innate heat—all this the spleen draws into itself. On the other hand, that part of the nutriment which is roasted, so to speak, or burnt (this will be the warmest and sweetest part of it, like honey and fat), becomes *yellow bile*, and is cleared away through the so-called biliary<sup>3</sup> vessels; now, this is thin, moist, and fluid, not like what it is when, having been roasted to an *excessive* degree, it becomes yellow, fiery, and thick, like the yolk of food in the digested condition, as it is conveyed to the tissues. cf. pp. 41–43. Note idea of imperfectly oxidized material being absorbed by the spleen. cf. p. 214, note 1.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *choledochous*, bile-receiving.

ώῶν ὅμοιον λεκίθοις. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ ἥδη παρὰ φύσιν· θάτερον δὲ τὸ πρότερον εἰρημένον κατὰ φύσιν ἐστίν· ὡσπερ γε καὶ τοῦ μέλανος χυμοῦ τὸ μὲν μήπω τὴν οἰον ζέσιν τε καὶ ζύμωσιν τῆς γῆς ἐργαζόμενον κατὰ φύσιν ἐστί, τὸ δ' εἰς τοιαύτην μεθιστάμενον ἰδέαν τε καὶ δύναμιν ἥδη παρὰ φύσιν, ὡς ἀν τὴν ἐκ τῆς συγκαύσεως τοῦ παρὰ φύσιν θερμοῦ προσειληφός δριμύτητα καὶ οἰον τέφρα τις ἥδη γεγονός. ὧδε πως καὶ ἡ κεκαυμένη τρὺξ τῆς ἀκαύστου διήνεγκε. θερμὸν γάρ τι χρῆμα αὔτη γ' ἵκανῶς ἐστιν, ὥστε καίειν τε καὶ τήκειν καὶ διαφθείρειν τὴν σάρκα. τῇ δ' ἔτερᾳ τῇ μήπω κεκαυμένῃ τοὺς ἰατροὺς ἐστιν εὑρεῖν χρωμένους εἰς ὄσαπερ καὶ τῇ γῇ τῇ καλουμένῃ κεραμίτιδι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὅσα ἔηραίνειν θ' ἄμα καὶ ψύχειν πέφυκεν.

Εἰς τὴν τῆς οὕτω συγκαυθείσης μελαίνης χολῆς ἰδέαν καὶ ἡ λεκιθώδης ἐκείνη μεθίσταται πολλάκις, ὅταν καὶ αὐτή ποθ' οἰον ὀπτηθείσα 138 τύχῃ πυρώδει θερμασίᾳ. τὰ δ' ἄλλα || τῶν χολῶν εἴδη σύμπαντα τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς τῶν εἰρημένων κράσεως γίγνεται, τὰ δ' οἰον ὄδοι τινές εἰσι τῆς τούτων γενέσεώς τε καὶ εἰς ἄλληλα μεταβολῆς. διαφέρουσι δὲ τῷ τὰς μὲν ἀκράτους είναι καὶ μόνας, τὰ δ' οἰον ὄρροις τισιν ἔξυγρασμένας. ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὄρροι τῶν χυμῶν ἅπαντες περιττώματα καὶ καθαρὸν αὐτῶν είναι δεῖται τοῦ ζφου τὸ σῶμα. τῶν δ' εἰρημένων χυμῶν ἐστί τις χρεία τῇ φυσει καὶ τοῦ παχέος καὶ τοῦ λεπτοῦ καὶ καθαίρεται πρός τε τοῦ σπληνὸς καὶ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ ἥπατι κύστεως τὸ αἷμα καὶ ἀποτίθεται τοσοῦτόν τε καὶ τοιοῦτον ἑκατέρου μέρος, ὅσον καὶ οἰον, εἴπεο εἰς

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

eggs ; for this latter is already abnormal, while the previously mentioned state is natural. Similarly with the black humour : that which does not yet produce, as I say, this seething and fermentation on the ground, is natural, while that which has taken over this character and faculty is unnatural ; it has assumed an acridity owing to the combustion caused by abnormal heat, and has practically become transformed into ashes.<sup>1</sup> In somewhat the same way burned lees differ from unburned. The former is a warm substance, able to burn, dissolve, and destroy the flesh. The other kind, which has not yet undergone combustion, one may find the physicians employing for the same purposes that one uses the so-called *potter's earth* and other substances which have naturally a combined drying and chilling action.

Now the vitelline bile also may take on the appearance of this combusted black bile, if ever it chance to be roasted, so to say, by fiery heat. And all the other forms of bile are produced, some from a blending of those mentioned, others being, as it were, transition-stages in the genesis of these or in their conversion into one another. And they differ in that those first mentioned are unmixed and unique, while the latter forms are diluted with various kinds of *serum*. And all the serums in the humours are waste substances, and the animal body needs to be purified from them. There is, however, a natural use for the humours first mentioned, both thick and thin ; the blood is purified both by the spleen and by the bladder beside the liver, and a part of each of the two humours is put away, of such quantity and

<sup>1</sup> Thus *over-roasting*—shall we say excessive *oxidation*?—produces the abnormal forms of both black and yellow bile.

ὅλον ἡνέχθη τοῦ ζώου τὸ σῶμα, βλάβην ἀν τιν' εἰργάσατο. τὸ γὰρ ἵκανως παχὺν καὶ γεῶδες καὶ τελέως διαπεφευγός τὴν ἐν τῷ ἥπατι μεταβολὴν ὁ σπλὴν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἔλκει· τὸ δὲ ἄλλο τὸ μετρίως παχύν σὺν τῷ κατειργάσθαι πάντη φέρεται. δεῖται γὰρ ἐν πολλοῖς τοῦ ζώου μορίοις παχύτητός τινος  
 139 τὸ αἷμα καθάπερ οἴμαι καὶ τῶν || ἐμφερομένων ἴνων. καὶ εἱρηται μὲν καὶ Πλάτωνι περὶ τῆς χρείας αὐτῶν, εἰρήσεται δὲ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐν ἐκείνοις τοῖς γράμμασιν, ἐν οἷς ἀν τὰς χρείας τῶν μορίων διερχώμεθα· δεῖται δὲ οὐχ ἥκιστα καὶ τοῦ ξανθοῦ χυμοῦ τοῦ μήπω πυρώδους ἐσχάτως γεγενημένου τὸ αἷμα καὶ τίς αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ παρὰ τοῦδε χρεία, δι' ἐκείνων εἰρήσεται.

Φλέγματος δὲ οὐδὲν ἐποίησεν ἡ φύσις ὄργανον καθαρικόν, ὅτι ψυχρὸν καὶ ὑγρόν ἐστι καὶ οἰον ἡμίπεπτός τις τροφή. δεῖται τοίνυν οὐ κενοῦσθαι τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ σώματι μένον ἀλλοιούσθαι. τὸ δὲ ἔξ ἐγκεφάλου καταρρέον περίττωμα τάχα μὲν ἀν οὐδὲ φλέγμα τις ὄρθως ἀλλὰ βλένναν τε καὶ κόρυζαν, ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ ὄνομάζεται, καλοίη. εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλ' ὅτι γε τῆς τούτου κενώσεως ὄρθως ἡ φύσις προύνοισατο, καὶ τοῦτ' ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται. καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ τὸ κατά τε τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα συνιστάμενον φλέγμα ὅπως ἀν ἐκκενωθῆ καὶ αὐτὸ τάχιστά τε καὶ κάλλιστα, τὸ παρεσκευασμένον τῇ φύσει μηχάνημα δι' ἐκείνων εἰρήσεται καὶ αὐτὸ τῶν

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 277, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Timaeus*, 82 C-D.

<sup>3</sup> cf. p. 90, note 1. The term "catarrh" refers to this "running down," which was supposed to take place through

quality that, if it were carried all over the body, it would do a certain amount of harm. For that which is decidedly thick and earthy in nature, and has entirely escaped alteration in the liver, is drawn by the spleen into itself<sup>1</sup>; the other part which is only moderately thick, after being elaborated [in the liver], is carried all over the body. For the blood in many parts of the body has need of a certain amount of thickening, as also, I take it, of the *fibres* which it contains. And the use of these has been discussed by Plato,<sup>2</sup> and it will also be discussed by me in such of my treatises as may deal with the use of parts. And the blood also needs, not least, the yellow humour, which has as yet not reached the extreme stage of combustion; in the treatises mentioned it will be pointed out what purpose is subserved by this.

Now Nature has made no organ for clearing away *phlegm*, this being cold and moist, and, as it were, half-digested nutriment; such a substance, therefore, does not need to be evacuated, but remains in the body and undergoes *alteration* there. And perhaps one cannot properly give the name of *phlegm* to the surplus-substance which runs down from the brain,<sup>3</sup> but one should call it *mucus* [*blenna*] or *coryza*—as, in fact, it is actually termed; in any case it will be pointed out, in the treatise “On the Use of Parts,” how Nature has provided for the evacuation of this substance. Further, the device provided by Nature which ensures that the phlegm which forms in the stomach and intestines may be evacuated in the most rapid and effective way possible—this also will be described in that completing the pores of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid into the nose.

140 ὑπομνημάτων. ὅσον οὖν ἐμφέρεται ταῖς φλεψὶ φλέγμα χρήσιμον ὑπάρχον τοῖς ζῷοις, οὐδεμίāς δεῖται κενώσεως. προσέχειν δὲ χρὴ κάνταῦθα τὸν νοῦν καὶ γιγνώσκειν, ὥσπερ τῶν χολῶν ἔκατέρας τὸ μέν τι χρήσιμόν ἐστι καὶ κατὰ φύσιν τοῖς ζῷοις, τὸ δὲ ἄχρηστόν τε καὶ παρὰ φύσιν, οὗτον καὶ τοῦ φλέγματος, ὅσον μὲν ἀνὴρ γλυκύ, χρηστὸν εἶναι τοῦτο τῷ ζῷῳ καὶ κατὰ φύσιν, ὅσον δὲ ὁξὺ καὶ ἀλμυρὸν ἐγένετο, τὸ μὲν ὁξὺ τελέως ἡπεπτῆσθαι, τὸ δὲ ἀλμυρὸν διασεσῆφθαι. τελείαν δὲ ἀπεψίαν φλέγματος ἀκούειν χρὴ τὴν τῆς δευτέρας πέψεως δηλονότι τῆς ἐν φλεψὶν· οὐ γάρ δὴ τῆς γε πρώτης τῆς κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν· ἡ οὐδὲ ἀνὴρ ἐγεγένητο τὴν ἀρχὴν χυμός, εἰ καὶ ταύτην διεπεφεύγει.

Ταῦτ' ἀρκεῖν μοι δοκεῖ περὶ γενέσεώς τε καὶ διαφθορᾶς χυμῶν ὑπομνήματ' εἶναι τῶν Ἰπποκράτει τε καὶ Πλάτωνι καὶ Ἀριστοτέλει καὶ Πραξαγόρᾳ καὶ Διοκλεῖ καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις τῶν παλαιῶν εἰρημένων· οὐ γάρ ἐδικαίωσα πάντα μεταφέρειν εἰς τόνδε τὸν λόγον τὰ τελέως ἐκείνοις γεγραμμένα. τοσοῦτον δὲ μόνον ὑπὲρ ἐκάστου 141 εἰπον, ὅσον ἔξορμήσει τε τοὺς || ἐντυγχάνοντας, εἰ μὴ παντάπασιν εἰεν σκαιοί, τοῖς τῶν παλαιῶν ὄμιλῆσαι γράμμασι καὶ τὴν εἰς τὸ ῥάβον αὐτοῖς συνεῖναι βοήθειαν παρέξει. γέγραπται δέ που καὶ δι' ἑτέρου λόγου περὶ τῶν κατὰ Πραξαγόραν τὸν Νικάρχου χυμῶν. εἰ γάρ καὶ ὅτι μάλιστα

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

mentary. As to that portion of the phlegm which is carried in the veins, seeing that this is of service to the animal it requires no evacuation. Here too, then, we must pay attention and recognise that, just as in the case of each of the two kinds of bile, there is one part which is useful to the animal and in accordance with its nature, while the other part is useless and contrary to nature, so also is it with the phlegm ; such of it as is sweet is useful to the animal and according to nature, while, as to such of it as has become bitter or salt, that part which is bitter is completely undigested, while that part which is salt has undergone putrefaction. And the term "*complete indigestion*" refers of course to the second digestion—that which takes place in the veins ; it is not a failure of the first digestion—that in the alimentary canal—for it would not have become a humour at the outset if it had escaped this digestion also.

It seems to me that I have made enough reference to what has been said regarding the genesis and destruction of humours by Hippocrates, Plato, Aristotle, Praxagoras, and Diocles, and many others among the Ancients ; I did not deem it right to transport the whole of their final pronouncements into this treatise. I have said only so much regarding each of the humours as will stir up the reader, unless he be absolutely inept, to make himself familiar with the writings of the Ancients, and will help him to gain more easy access to them. In another treatise<sup>1</sup> I have written on the humours according to Praxagoras, son of Nicarchus ; although this authority makes as many as ten humours, not

<sup>1</sup> Now lost.

δέκα ποιεῖ χωρὶς τοῦ αἵματος, ἐνδέκατος γὰρ ἀν  
εἴη χυμὸς αὐτὸ τὸ αἷμα, τῆς Ἰπποκράτους οὐκ  
ἀποχωρεῖ διδασκαλίας. ἀλλ' εἰς εἴδη τινὰ καὶ  
διαφορὰς τέμνει τοὺς ὑπ' ἐκείνου πρώτου πάντων  
ἄμα ταῖς οἰκείαις ἀποδείξειν εἰρημένους χυμούς.

Ἐπαινεῖν μὲν οὖν χρὴ τούς τ' ἐξηγησαμένους  
τὰ καλῶς εἰρημένα καὶ τοὺς εἴ τι παραλέπειπται  
προστιθέντας· οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε τὸν αὐτὸν ἄρξασθαι  
τε καὶ τελειώσαι· μέμφεσθαι δὲ τοὺς οὗτοις  
ἀταλαιπώρους, ὡς μηδὲν ὑπομένειν μαθεῖν τῶν  
ὅρθως εἰρημένων, καὶ τοὺς εἰς τοσοῦτον φιλοτί-  
μους, ὥστ' ἐπιθυμίᾳ νεωτέρων δογμάτων ἀεὶ<sup>142</sup>  
πανουργεῖν τι καὶ σοφίζεσθαι, τὰ μὲν ἔκόντας  
παραλιπόντας, ὥσπερ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐπὶ τῶν  
χυμῶν ἐποίησε, τὰ δὲ πα||νούργως ἀντιλέγοντας,  
ὥσπερ αὐτός θ' οὗτος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν  
νεωτέρων.

Αλλ' οὗτος μὲν ὁ λόγος ἐνταυθοῖ τελευτάτω,  
τὸ δ' ὑπόλοιπον ἅπαν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ προσθήσω.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

including the blood (the blood itself being an eleventh), this is not a departure from the teaching of Hippocrates; for Praxagoras divides into species and varieties the humours which Hippocrates first mentioned, with the demonstration proper to each.

Those, then, are to be praised who explain the points which have been duly mentioned, as also those who add what has been left out; for it is not possible for the same man to make both a beginning and an end. Those, on the other hand, deserve censure who are so impatient that they will not wait to learn any of the things which have been duly mentioned, as do also those who are so ambitious that, in their lust after novel doctrines, they are always attempting some fraudulent sophistry, either purposely neglecting certain subjects, as Erasistratus does in the case of the humours, or unscrupulously attacking other people, as does this same writer, as well as many of the more recent authorities.

But let this discussion come to an end here, and I shall add in the third book all that remains.



## **BOOK III**

## Γ

## I

- 143 "Οτι μὲν οὖν ἡ θρέψις ἀλλοιουμένου τε καὶ ὁμοιουμένου γίγνεται τοῦ τρέφοντος τῷ τρεφομένῳ καὶ ως ἐν ἑκάστῳ τῶν τοῦ ζώου μορίων ἔστι τις δύναμις, ήν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας ἀλλοιωτικὴν μὲν κατὰ γένος, ὁμοιωτικὴν δὲ καὶ θρεπτικὴν κατ' εἶδος ὄνομάζομεν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν δεδήλωται λόγω. τὴν δ' εὐπορίαν τῆς ὕλης, ήν τροφὴν ἑαυτῷ ποιεῖται τὸ τρεφόμενον, ἐξ ἑτέρας τινὸς ἔχειν ἐδείκνυτο δυνάμεως ἐπισπάσθαι πεφυκυίας τὸν οἰκεῖον χυμόν, είναι δ' οἰκεῖον ἑκάστῳ τῶν μορίων χυμόν, δος ἀν || ἐπιτήδειος εὶς τὴν ἔξομοίωσιν ἥ, καὶ τὴν ἔλκουσαν αὐτὸν δύναμιν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας ἐλκτικήν τέ τινα καὶ ἐπισπαστικὴν ὄνομάζεσθαι. δέδεικται δὲ καί, ως πρὸ μὲν τῆς ὁμοιώσεως ἥ πρόσφυσίς ἔστιν, ἐκείνης δ' ἔμπροσθεν ἥ πρόσθεσις γίγνεται, τέλος, ως ἀν εἴποι τις, οὖσα τῆς κατὰ τὴν ἐπισπαστικὴν δύναμιν ἐνεργείας. αὐτὸ μὲν γὰρ τὸ παράγεσθαι τὴν τροφὴν ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν εὶς ἔκαστον τῶν μορίων τῆς ἐλκτικῆς ἐνεργούσης γίγνεται δυνά-

<sup>1</sup> "Of food to feeder," i.e. of the environment to the organism. cf. p. 39, chap. xi.

<sup>2</sup> "Drawing"; cf. p. 116, note 2.

## BOOK III

### I

IT has been made clear in the preceding discussion that nutrition occurs by an *alteration* or *assimilation* of that which nourishes to that which receives nourishment,<sup>1</sup> and that there exists in every part of the animal a faculty which in view of its activity we call, in general terms, *alterative*, or, more specifically, *assimilative* and *nutritive*. It was also shown that a sufficient supply of the matter which the part being nourished makes into nutriment for itself is ensured by virtue of another faculty which naturally attracts its *proper juice* [humour] that that juice is proper to each part which is adapted for assimilation, and that the faculty which attracts the juice is called, by reason of its activity, *attractive* or *epispastic*.<sup>2</sup> It has also been shown that assimilation is preceded by *adhesion*, and this, again, by *presentation*,<sup>3</sup> the latter stage being, as one might say, the end or goal of the activity corresponding to the attractive faculty. For the actual bringing up of nutriment from the veins into each of the parts takes place through the activation of the attractive faculty,<sup>4</sup> whilst to

<sup>3</sup> For these terms (*prosthesis* and *prosphysis* in Greek) cf. p. 39, notes 5 and 6.

<sup>4</sup> Lit. "through the *energizing* (or *functioning*) of the attractive faculty"; the faculty (*δύναμις*) in operation is an activity (*ἐνέργεια*). cf. p. 3, note 2.

μεως, τὸ δ' ἥδη παρῆχθαι τε καὶ προστίθεσθαι τῷ μορίῳ τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν αὐτό, δι’ δὲ καὶ τῆς τοιαύτης ἐνεργείας ἐδεήθημεν ἵνα γὰρ προστεθῇ, διὰ τοῦθ' ἔλκεται. χρόνου δὲ ἐντεῦθεν ἥδη πλείονος εἰς τὴν θρέψιν τοῦ ζώου δεῖ· ἐλχθῆναι μὲν γὰρ καὶ διὰ ταχέων τι δύναται, προσφῦναι δὲ καὶ ἀλλοιωθῆναι καὶ τελέως ὁμοιωθῆναι τῷ τρεφομένῳ καὶ μέρος αὐτοῦ γενέσθαι παραχρῆμα μὲν οὐχ οἰόν τε, χρόνῳ δὲ ἀν πλείονι συμβαίνοι καλῶς. ἀλλ’ εἰ μὴ μένοι κατὰ τὸ μέρος ὃ προστεθεὶς οὗτος χυμός, εἰς ἔτερον δέ τι μεθίσταιτο καὶ παραρρέοι διὰ παντὸς ἀμείβων τε καὶ ὑπαλ-  
145 λάττων τὰ χωρία, κατ’ οὐδὲν αὐτῶν || οὕτε πρόσφυσις οὔτ’ ἔξομοίωσις ἐσται. δεῖ δὲ κἀνταῦθα τινος τῇ φύσει δυνάμεως ἐτέρας εἰς πολυχρόνιον μοιὴν τοῦ προστεθέντος τῷ μορίῳ χυμοῦ καὶ ταύτης οὐκ ἔξωθέν ποθεν ἐπιρρεούσης ἀλλ’ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ θρεψομένῳ κατφισμένης, ἣν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας πάλιν οἱ πρὸ ήμῶν ἡναγκάσθησαν ὄνομάσαι καθεκτικήν.

‘Ο μὲν δὴ λόγος ἥδη σαφῶς ἐνεδείξατο τὴν ἀνάγκην τῆς γενέσεως τῆς τοιαύτης δυνάμεως καὶ δστις ἀκολουθίας σύνεσιν ἔχει, πέπεισται βεβαίως ἔξ οὖν εἴπομεν, ώς ὑποκειμένου τε καὶ προαποδειγμένου τοῦ τεχνικὴν εἶναι τὴν φύσιν καὶ τοῦ ζώου κηδεμονικὴν ἀναγκαῖον ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην δύναμιν.



### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. I

have been finally brought up and presented to the part is the actual end for which we desired such an activity ; it is attracted in order that it may be presented. After this, considerable time is needed for the nutrition of the animal ; whilst a thing may be even rapidly attracted, on the other hand to become adherent, altered, and entirely assimilated to the part which is being nourished and to become a part of it, cannot take place suddenly, but requires a considerable amount of time. But if the nutritive juice, so presented, does not remain in the part, but withdraws to another one, and keeps flowing away, and constantly changing and shifting its position, neither adhesion nor complete assimilation will take place in any of them. Here too, then, the [animal's] nature has need of some other faculty for ensuring a prolonged stay of the presented juice at the part, and this not a faculty which comes in from somewhere outside but one which is resident in the part which is to be nourished. This faculty, again, in view of its activity our predecessors were obliged to call *retentive*.

Thus our argument has clearly shown<sup>1</sup> the necessity for the genesis of such a faculty, and whoever has an appreciation of logical sequence must be firmly persuaded from what we have said that, if it be laid down and proved by previous demonstration that Nature is artistic and solicitous for the animal's welfare, it necessarily follows that she must also possess a faculty of this kind.

<sup>1</sup> This chapter is an excellent example of Galen's method of reasoning *a priori*. The complementary inductive method, however, is employed in the next chapter. cf. p. 209, note 1.

## II

’Αλλ’ ἡμεῖς οὐ τούτῳ μόνῳ τῷ γένει τῆς ἀποδείξεως εἰθισμένοι χρῆσθαι, προστιθέντες δ’ αὐτῷ καὶ τὰς ἐκ τῶν ἐναργῶς φαινομένων ἀναγκαζούσας τε καὶ βιαζομένας πίστεις ἐπὶ τὰς τοιαύτας καὶ νῦν ἀφιξόμεθα καὶ δείξομεν ἐπὶ μέν τινων μορίων τοῦ σώματος οὕτως ἐναργῆ τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν, ώς αὐταῖς ταῖς αἰσθήσεσι || διαγιγνώσκεσθαι τὴν ἐνέργειαν αὐτῆς, ἐπὶ δὲ τινων ἡπτου μὲν ἐναργῶς ταῖς αἰσθήσεσι, λόγῳ δὲ κάνταῦθα φωραθῆναι δυναμένην.

’Αρξώμεθ’ οὖν τῆς διδασκαλίας ἀπ’ αὐτοῦ τοῦ τέως πρώτον μεθόδῳ τινὶ προχειρίσασθαι μόρι’ ἄπτα τοῦ σώματος, ἐφ’ ὃν ἀκριβῶς ἔστι βασανίσαι τε καὶ ζητῆσαι τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν ὅποια ποτ’ ἔστιν.

’Αρ’ οὖν ἄμεινον ἂν τις ἐτέρωθεν ἢ ἀπὸ τῶν μεγίστων τε καὶ κοιλοτάτων ὄργάνων ὑπάρξαι τῆς ζητήσεως; ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν οὐκ ἂν δοκεῖ βέλτιον. ἐναργεῖς γοῦν εἴκὸς ἐπὶ τούτων φανῆναι τὰς ἐνέργειας διὰ τὸ μέγεθος· ώς τά γε σμικρὰ τάχ’ ἂν, εἴ καὶ σφοδρὰν ἔχει τὴν τοιαύτην δύναμιν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ αἰσθήσει γ’ ἐτοίμην διαγιγνώσκεσθαι τὴν ἐνέργειαν αὐτῆς.

’Αλλ’ ἔστιν ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα κοιλότατα καὶ μέγιστα τῶν τοῦ ζώου μορίων ἢ τε γαστὴρ καὶ *<ai>* μῆτραι τε καὶ ὑστέραι καλούμεναι. τί οὖν κωλύει ταῦτα πρώτα προχειρισαμένους ἐπισκέψασθαι τὰς ἐνέργειας αὐτῶν, ὅσαι μὲν καὶ πρὸ τῆς ἀνατομῆς

<sup>1</sup> The deductive.

<sup>2</sup> The *logos* is the argument or “theory” arrived at by the

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. II

### II

SINCE, however, it is not our habit to employ this kind of demonstration<sup>1</sup> alone, but to add thereto cogent and compelling proofs drawn from obvious facts, we will also proceed to the latter kind in the present instance: we will demonstrate that in certain parts of the body *the retentive faculty* is so obvious that its operation can be actually recognised by the *senses*, whilst in other parts it is less obvious to the *senses*, but is capable even here of being detected by the *argument*.<sup>2</sup>

Let us begin our exposition, then, by first dealing systematically for a while with certain definite parts of the body, in reference to which we may accurately test and enquire what sort of thing the retentive faculty is.

Now, could one begin the enquiry in any better way than with the largest and hollowest organs? Personally I do not think one could. It is to be expected that in these, owing to their size, the activities will show quite clearly, whereas with respect to the small organs, even if they possess a strong faculty of this kind, its activation will not at once be recognisable to sense.

Now those parts of the animal which are especially hollow and large are the stomach and the organ which is called the womb or uterus.<sup>3</sup> What prevents us, then, from taking up these first and considering their activities, conducting the enquiry on our own process of *λογικὴ θεωρία* or “theorizing”; cf. p. 151, note 3; p. 205, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> The Greek words for the uterus (*mētræ* and *hysterae*) probably owe their plural form to the belief that the organ was bicornuate in the human, as it is in some of the lower species.

δῆλαι, τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἐφ' ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ποιουμένους,  
οἵσαι δ' ἀμυδρότεραι, τὰ παραπλήσια διαιροῦντας  
147 ἀνθρώπῳ ζῷα, || οὐχ ὡς οὐκ ἀν ἰκανῶς τό γε  
καθόλου περὶ τῆς ζητουμένης δυνάμεως καὶ τῶν  
ἀνομοίων ἐνδειξομένων, ἀλλ' ὡς ἵν' ἂμα τῷ κοινῷ  
καὶ τὸ ἴδιον ἐφ' ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἐγνωκότες εἴς τε τὰς  
διαγνώσεις τῶν νοσημάτων καὶ τὰς ἴασεις εὐ-  
πορώτεροι γιγνώμεθα.

Περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀμφοτέρων τῶν ὄργάνων ἄμα  
λέγειν ἀδύνατον, ἐν μέρει δὲ ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου  
ποιησόμεθα τὸν λόγον ἀπὸ τοῦ σαφέστερον  
ἐνδειξασθαι δυναμένου τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν  
ἀρξάμενοι. κατέχει μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἡ γαστὴρ τὰ  
σιτία, μέχρι περ ἀν ἐκπέψη, κατέχουσι δὲ καὶ  
αἱ μῆτραι τὸ ἔμβρυον, ἔστ’ ἀν τελειώσωσιν· ἀλλὰ  
πολλαπλάσιός ἐστιν ὁ τῆς τῶν ἔμβρύων τελειώ-  
σεως χρόνος τῆς τῶν σιτίων πέψεως.

## III

Εἰκὸς οὖν καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ἐναργέστερον ἐν  
ταῖς μήτραις φωράσειν ἡμᾶς τὴν καθεκτικήν,  
οὅσῳ καὶ πολυχρονιωτέραν τῆς γαστρὸς τὴν  
ἐνέργειαν κέκτηται. μησὶ γὰρ ἐννέα που ταῖς  
πλείσταις τῶν γυναικῶν ἐν αὐταῖς τελειοῦται  
τὰ κυήματα, μεμυκυίαις μὲν ἀπαντι τῷ αὐχένι,  
περιεχούσαις δὲ πανταχόθεν αὐτὰ σὺν τῷ χορίῳ. ||  
148 καὶ πέρας γε τῆς τοῦ στόματος μύσεως καὶ τῆς  
τοῦ κυουμένου κατὰ τὰς μήτρας μονῆς ἡ χρεία  
τῆς ἐνεργείας ἐστίν· οὐ γὰρ ὡς ἔτυχεν οὐδὲ  
ἀλόγως ἰκανὰς περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ κατέχειν τὸ

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. II.—III

persons in regard to those activities which are obvious without dissection, and, in the case of those which are more obscure, dissecting animals which are near to man ;<sup>1</sup> not that even animals unlike him will not show, in a general way, the faculty in question, but because in this manner we may find out at once what is common to all and what is peculiar to ourselves, and so may become more resourceful in the diagnosis and treatment of disease.

Now it is impossible to speak of both organs at once, so we shall deal with each in turn, beginning with the one which is capable of demonstrating the retentive faculty most plainly. For the stomach retains the food until it has quite digested it, and the uterus retains the embryo until it brings it to completion, but the time taken for the completion of the embryo is many times more than that for the digestion of food.

### III

WE may expect, then, to detect the retentive faculty in the uterus more clearly in proportion to the longer duration of its activity as compared with that of the stomach. For, as we know, it takes nine months in most women for the foetus to attain maturity in the womb, this organ having its neck quite closed, and entirely surrounding the embryo together with the *chorion*. Further, it is the utility of the function which determines the closure of the os and the stay of the foetus in the uterus. For it is not casually nor without reason that Nature has made

<sup>1</sup> Note this expression. For Galen's views on the origin of species, cf. Introduction, p. xxxi., footnote.

ἔμβρυον ἡ φύσις ἀπείργαστο τὰς ὑστέρας, ἀλλ' ἵν' εἰς τὸ πρέπον ἀφίκηται ψέγεθος τὸ κυούμενον. ὅταν οὖν, οὐχάριν ἐνήργουν τῇ καθεκτικῇ δυνάμει, συμπεπληρωμένον ἦ, ταύτην μὲν ἀνέπαυσάν τε καὶ εἰς ἡρεμίαν ἐπανήγαγον, ἀντ' αὐτῆς δ' ἔτέρᾳ χρῶνται τῇ τέως ἡσυχαζούσῃ, τῇ πρωστικῇ. ἦν δ' ἄρα καὶ τῆς ἐκείνης ἡσυχίας ὅρος ἡ χρεία καὶ τῆς γ' ἐνεργείας ὡσαύτως ἡ χρεία· καλούσης μὲν γάρ αὐτῆς ἐνεργεῖ, μὴ καλούσης δ' ἡσυχάζει.

Καὶ χρὴ πάλιν κἀνταῦθα καταμαθεῖν τῆς φύσεως τὴν τέχνην, ὡς οὐ μόνον ἐνεργειῶν χρησίμων δυνάμεις ἐνέθηκεν ἑκάστῳ τῶν ὄργανων, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ τῶν ἡσυχιῶν τε καὶ κινήσεων καιροῦ προύνοήσατο. καλῶς μὲν γάρ ἀπάντων γιγνομένων τῶν κατὰ τὴν κύησιν ἡ ἀποκριτικὴ δύναμις ἡσυχάζει τελέως ὥσπερ οὐκ οὖσα, κακοπραγίας δέ τινος γενομένης ἡ περὶ τὸ χορίον ἡ 149 περὶ τινα τῶν ἄλλων || ύμένων ἡ περὶ τὸ κυούμενον αὐτὸ καὶ τῆς τελειώσεως αὐτοῦ παντάπασιν ἀπογνωσθείσης οὐκέτ' ἀναμένουσι τὸν ἐννεάμηνον αἱ μῆτραι χρόνον, ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν καθεκτικὴ δύναμις αὐτίκα δὴ πέπαυται καὶ παραχωρεῖ κινεῖσθαι τῇ πρότερον ἀργούσῃ, πράττει δ' ἥδη τι καὶ πραγματεύεται χρηστὸν ἡ ἀποκριτική τε καὶ πρωστική· καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ ταύτην οὕτως ἐκάλεσαν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνεργειῶν αὐτῆς τὰ ὄνόματα θέμενοι καθάπερ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις.

Καί πως ὁ λόγος ἔοικεν ὑπὲρ ἀμφοτέρων ἀποδείξειν ἄμα· καὶ γάρ τοι καὶ διαδεχομένας αὐτὰς ἄλληλας καὶ παραχωροῦσαν ἀεὶ τὴν ἔτέραν τῇ λοιπῇ, καθότι δὲν ἡ χρεία κελεύῃ, καὶ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III III

the uterus capable of contracting upon, and of retaining the embryo, but in order that the latter may arrive at a proper size. When, therefore, the object for which the uterus brought its retentive faculty into play has been fulfilled, it then stops this faculty and brings it back to a state of rest, and employs instead of it another faculty hitherto quiescent—the *propulsive* faculty. In this case again the quiescent and active states are both determined by utility; when this calls, there is activity; when it does not, there is rest.

Here, then, once more, we must observe well the Art [artistic tendency] of Nature—how she has not merely placed in each organ the capabilities of useful activities, but has also fore-ordained the times both of rest and movement. For when everything connected with the pregnancy proceeds properly, the *eliminative* faculty remains quiescent as though it did not exist, but if anything goes wrong in connection either with the chorion or any of the other membranes or with the foetus itself, and its completion is entirely despaired of, then the uterus no longer awaits the nine-months period, but the retentive faculty forthwith ceases and allows the heretofore inoperative faculty to come into action. Now it is that something is done—in fact, useful work effected—by the *eliminative or propulsive faculty* (for so it, too, has been called, receiving, like the rest, its names from the corresponding activities).

Further, our theory can, I think, demonstrate both together; for seeing that they succeed each other, and that the one keeps giving place to the other according as utility demands, it seems not unreason-

τὴν διδασκαλίαν κοινὴν οὐκ ἀπεικός ἐστι δέχεσθαι. τῆς μὲν οὖν καθεκτικῆς δυνάμεως ἔργον περιστεῖλαι τὰς μήτρας τῷ κυουμένῳ πανταχόθεν, ὥστ' εὐλόγως ἀπτομέναις μὲν ταῖς μαιευτρίαις τὸ στόμα μεμυκὸς αὐτῶν φαίνεται, ταῖς κυούσαις δ' αὐταῖς κατὰ τὰς πρώτας ἡμέρας καὶ μάλιστα κατ' αὐτὴν ἐκείνην, ἐν ἥπερ ἀν ἡ τῆς γονῆς σύλληψις γένηται, κινουμένων τε καὶ συντρεχουσῶν εἰς ἑαυτὰς τῶν ὑστερῶν αἱσθησίσις γίγνεται καὶ ἦν ἄμφω ταῦτα συμβῆ, μῦσαι μὲν τὸ στόμα χωρὶς φλεγμονῆς ἢ τινος ἄλλου παθήματος, αἱσθησιν δὲ τῆς κατὰ τὰς μήτρας κινήσεως ἀκολουθήσαι, πρὸς αὐτὰς ἥδη τὸ σπέρμα τὸ παρὰ τάνδρὸς εἰληφέναι τε καὶ κατέχειν αἱ γυναῖκες νομίζουσι.

Ταῦτα δ' οὐχ ἡμεῖς νῦν ἀναπλάττομεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ' ἐκ μακρᾶς πείρας δοκιμασθέντα πᾶσι γέγραπται σχεδόν τι τοῖς περὶ τούτων πραγματευσαμένοις. Ἡρόφιλος μέν γε καὶ ὡς οὐδὲ πυρῆνα μήλης ἀν δέχοιτο τῶν μητρῶν τὸ στόμα, πρὶν ἀποκυεῖν τὴν γυναῖκα, καὶ ὡς οὐδὲ τούλαχιστον ἔτι διέστηκεν, ἦν ὑπάρξηται κύειν, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ πλέον ἀναστομοῦνται κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἐπιμηρίων φοράς, οὐκ ὕκνησε γράφειν· συνομολογοῦσι δ' αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες οἱ περὶ τούτων πραγματευσάμενοι καὶ πρωτός γ' ἀπάντων ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων Ἰπποκράτης ἀπεφήνατο μύειν τὸ στόμα τῶν ὑστερῶν ἐν τε ταῖς κυήσεσι καὶ ταῖς φλεγμοναῖς, ἀλλ' ἐν μὲν ταῖς κυήσεσιν οὐκ ἔξιστάμενον τῆς φύσεως, ἐν δὲ ταῖς φλεγμοναῖς σκληρὸν γιγνόμενον.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. III

able to accept a common demonstration also for both. Thus it is the work of the retentive faculty to make the uterus contract upon the foetus at every point, so that, naturally enough, when the midwives palpate it, the os is found to be closed, whilst the pregnant women themselves, during the first days—and particularly on that on which conception takes place—experience a sensation as if the uterus were moving and contracting upon itself. Now, if both of these things occur—if the os closes apart from inflammation or any other disease, and if this is accompanied by a feeling of movement in the uterus—then the women believe that they have received the semen which comes from the male, and that they are retaining it.

Now we are not inventing this for ourselves : one may say the statement is based on prolonged experience of those who occupy themselves with such matters. Thus Herophilus<sup>1</sup> does not hesitate to state in his writings that up to the time of labour the os uteri will not admit so much as the tip of a probe, that it no longer opens to the slightest degree if pregnancy has begun—that, in fact, it dilates more widely at the times of the menstrual flow. With him are in agreement all the others who have applied themselves to this subject ; and particularly Hippocrates, who was the first of all physicians and philosophers to declare that the os uteri closes during pregnancy and inflammation, albeit in pregnancy it does not depart from its own nature, whilst in inflammation it becomes hard.

<sup>1</sup> Herophilus of Chalcedon (*circa* 300 B.C.) was, like Erasistratus, a representative of the anatomical school of Alexandria. His book on Midwifery was known for centuries. *cf.* Introduction, p. xii.

Ἐπὶ δέ γε τῆς ἐναντίας τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς ἀνοίγνυνται μὲν τὸ στόμα, προέρχεται δ' ὁ πυθμὴν || 151 ἄπας ὅσον οἶον τ' ἐγγυτάτῳ τοῦ στόματος ἀπωθούμενος ἔξω τὸ ἔμβρυον, ἀμαδ' αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ συνεχῆ μέρη τὰ οἶον πλευρὰ τοῦ παντὸς ὄργανου συνεπιλαμβανόμενα τοῦ ἔργου θλίβει τε καὶ προωθεῖ πᾶν ἔξω τὸ ἔμβρυον. καὶ πολλαῖς τῶν γυναικῶν ὡδῖνες βίαιοι τὰς μήτρας ὅλας ἐκπεσεῖν ἡνάγκασαν ἀμέτρως χρησαμέναις τῇ τοιαύτῃ δυνάμει, παραπλησίου τινὸς γιγνομένου τῷ πολλάκις ἐν πάλαις τισὶ καὶ φιλονεικίαις συμβαίνοντι, ὅταν ἀνατρέψαι τε καὶ καταβαλεῖν ἑτέρους σπεύδοντες αὐτοὶ συγκαταπέσωμεν. οὕτω γάρ καὶ αἱ μῆτραι τὸ ἔμβρυον ὠθοῦσαι συνεξέπεσον ἐνίστε καὶ μάλισθ', ὅταν οἱ πρὸς τὴν ῥάχιν αὐτῶν σύνδεσμοι χαλαροὶ φύσει τυγχάνωσιν ὅντες.

Ἐστι δὲ καὶ τοῦτο θαυμαστόν τι τῆς φύσεως σόφισμα, τὸ ζῶντος μὲν τοῦ κυήματος ἀκριβῶς πάνυ μεμυκέναι τὸ στόμα τῶν μητρῶν, ἀποθανόντος δὲ παραχρῆμα διανοίγεσθαι τοσοῦτον, ὅσον εἰς τὴν ἔξοδον αὐτοῦ διαφέρει. καὶ μέντοι καὶ αἱ μᾶιαι τὰς τικτούσας οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀνιστᾶσιν οὐδ' ἐπὶ τὸν δίφρον καθίζουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀπτονται 152 πρότερον ἀνοιγομένου τοῦ στόματος || κατὰ βραχὺ καὶ πρῶτον μέν, ὥστε τὸν μικρὸν δάκτυλον καθιέναι, διεστηκέναι φασίν, ἐπειτ' οὗδη καὶ μεῖζον καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ δὴ πυνθανομένοις ἡμῖν ἀποκρίνονται τὸ μέγεθος τῆς διαστάσεως ἐπανέχανόμενον. ὅταν δὲ ἵκανὸν ή πρὸς τὴν τοῦ κυουμένου δίοδον, ἀνιστᾶσιν αὐτὰς καὶ καθίζουσι

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iii

In the case of the opposite (the eliminative) faculty, the os opens, whilst the whole fundus approaches as near as possible to the os, expelling the embryo as it does so; and along with the fundus the contiguous parts—which form as it were a girdle round the whole organ—co-operate in the work; they squeeze upon the embryo and propel it bodily outwards. And, in many women who exercise such a faculty immoderately, violent pains cause forcible prolapse of the whole womb; here almost the same thing happens as frequently occurs in wrestling-bouts and struggles, when in our eagerness to overturn and throw others we are ourselves upset along with them; for similarly when the uterus is forcing the embryo forward it sometimes becomes entirely prolapsed, and particularly when the ligaments connecting it with the spine happen to be naturally lax.<sup>1</sup>

A wonderful device of Nature's also is this—that, when the foetus is alive, the os uteri is closed with perfect accuracy, but if it dies, the os at once opens up to the extent which is necessary for the foetus to make its exit. The midwife, however, does not make the parturient woman get up at once and sit down on the [obstetric] chair, but she begins by palpating the os as it gradually dilates, and the first thing she says is that it has dilated "enough to admit the little finger," then that "it is bigger now," and as we make enquiries from time to time, she answers that the size of the dilatation is increasing. And when it is sufficient to allow of the transit of the foetus,<sup>2</sup> she then makes the patient get up from her bed and

<sup>1</sup> Relaxation of utero-sacral ligaments as an important predisposing cause of prolapsus uteri.

<sup>2</sup> That is, at the end of the first stage of labour.

καὶ προθυμεῖσθαι κελεύουσιν ἀπώσασθαι τὸ παιδίον. ἔστι δὲ ἡδη τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον, δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῶν αἱ κύουσαι προστιθέασιν, οὐκέτι τῶν ὑστερῶν, ἀλλὰ τῶν κατ' ἐπιγάστριον μυῶν, οἱ πρὸς τὴν ἀποπάτησίν τε καὶ τὴν οὔρησιν ἡμῖν συνεργοῦσιν.

## IV

Οὕτω μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν μητρῶν ἐναργῶς αἱ δύο φαίνονται δυνάμεις, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς γαστρὸς ὡδε. πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς κλύδωσιν, οἱ δὲ καὶ πεπίστευνται τοῖς ἰατροῖς ἀρρώστου κοιλίας εἶναι συμπτώματα καὶ κατὰ λόγον πεπίστευνται· ἐνίστε μὲν γὰρ ἐλάχιστα προσενηγμένων οὐ γύγνονται περιστελλομένης ἀκριβῶς αὐτοῖς τῆς γαστρὸς καὶ σφιγγούσης πανταχόθεν, ἐνίστε δὲ μεστὴ μὲν ἡ 153 γαστήρ ἔστιν, οἱ κλύδωνες δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ κενῆς ἔξακούονται. κατὰ φύσιν μὲν γὰρ ἔχουσα καὶ χρωμένη καλῶς τῇ περισταλτικῇ δυνάμει, κανὸν ὄλιγον ἢ τὸ περιεχόμενον, ἅπαν αὐτὸ περιλαμβάνουσα χώραν οὐδεμίαν ἀπολείπει κενήν, ἀρρωστοῦσα δέ, καθότι ἀν ἀδυνατήσῃ περιλαβεῖν ἀκριβῶς, ἐνταῦθ' εὐρυχωρίαν τιν' ἐργαζομένη συγχωρεῖ τοῖς περιεχομένοις ὑγροῖς κατὰ τὰς τῶν σχημάτων μεταλλαγὰς ἄλλοτ' ἀλλαχόσε μεταρρέουσι κλύδωνας ἀποτελεῖν.

Εὐλόγως οὖν, ὅτι μηδὲ πέψουσιν ἴκανῶς, οἱ ἐν τῷδε τῷ συμπτώματι γενόμενοι προσδοκῶσιν· οὐ γὰρ ἐνδέχεται πέψαι καλῶς ἀρρωστον γαστέρα. τοῖς τοιούτοις δὲ καὶ μέχρι πλείονος ἐν αὐτῇ

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. III.-IV

sit on the chair, and bids her make every effort to expel the child. Now, this additional work which the patient does of herself is no longer the work of the uterus but of the epigastric muscles, which also help us in defaecation and micturition.

## IV

THUS the two faculties are clearly to be seen in the case of the uterus ; in the case of the *stomach* they appear as follows :—Firstly in the condition of *gurgling*, which physicians are persuaded, and with reason, to be a symptom of weakness of the stomach ; for sometimes when the very smallest quantity of food has been ingested this does not occur, owing to the fact that the stomach is contracting accurately upon the food and constricting it at every point ; sometimes when the stomach is full the gurglings yet make themselves heard as though it were empty. For if it be in a natural condition, employing its contractile faculty in the ordinary way, then, even if its contents be very small, it grasps the whole of them and does not leave any empty space. When it is weak, however, being unable to lay hold of its contents accurately, it produces a certain amount of vacant space, and allows the liquid contents to flow about in different directions in accordance with its changes of shape, and so to produce gurglings.

Thus those who are troubled with this symptom expect, with good reason, that they will also be unable to digest adequately ; proper digestion cannot take place in a weak stomach. In such people also, the mass of food may be plainly seen to remain

φαίνεται παραμένον τὸ βάρος, ὡς ἀν καὶ βραδύ-  
τερον πέτουσι. καὶ μὴν θαυμάσειεν ἂν τις ἐπ’  
αὐτῶν τούτων μάλιστα τὸ πολυχρόνιον τῆς ἐν τῇ  
γαστρὶ διατριβῆς οὐ τῶν σιτίων μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ  
τοῦ πόματος· οὐ γάρ, ὅπερ ἀν οἰηθείη τις, ὡς τὸ  
τῆς γαστρὸς στόμα τὸ κάτω στενὸν ἰκανῶς  
ὑπάρχον οὐδὲν παρίσηι πρὶν ἀκριβῶς λειωθῆναι,  
τοῦτ’ αἴτιον δύντως ἔστι. πολλὰ γοῦν πολλάκις  
 154 ὀπωρῶν ὀστᾶ μέγιστα καταπίνουσι || πάμπολλοι  
καὶ τις δακτύλιον χρυσοῦν ἐν τῷ στόματι φυ-  
λάττων ἄκων κατέπιε καὶ ἄλλος τις νόμισμα καὶ  
ἄλλος ἄλλο τι σκληρὸν καὶ δυσκατέργαστον,  
ἄλλ’ ὅμως ἅπαντες οὗτοι ῥάδιως ἀπεπάτησαν, ἢ  
κατέπιον, οὐδενὸς αὐτοῖς ἀκολουθήσαντος συμ-  
πτώματος. εἰ δέ γ’ ἡ στενότης τοῦ πόρου τῆς  
γαστρὸς αἴτια τοῦ μένειν ἐπὶ πλέον ἦν τοῖς  
ἀτρίπτοις σιτίοις, οὐδὲν ἀν τούτων ποτὲ διεχώ-  
ρησεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ τὰ πόματ’ αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ  
γαστρὶ παραμένειν ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἰκανὸν ἀπάγειν  
τὴν ὑπόνοιαν τοῦ πόρου τῆς στενότητος. ὅλως  
γάρ, εἴπερ ἦν ἐν τῷ κεχυλῶσθαι τὸ θάττον  
ὑπιέναι, τά τε ῥοφήματ’ ἀν οὔτω καὶ τὸ γάλα καὶ  
ό τῆς πτισάνης χυλὸς αὐτίκα διεξήει πᾶσιν.  
ἄλλ’ οὐχ ὡδ’ ἔχει· τοῖς μὲν γὰρ ἀσθενέσιν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
πλεῖστον ἐμπλεῖ ταῦτα καὶ κλύδωνας ἐργάζεται  
παραμένοντα καὶ θλίβει καὶ βαρύνει τὴν γαστέρα,  
τοῖς δ’ ἵσχυροῖς οὐ μόνον τούτων οὐδὲν συμβαίνει,  
ἀλλὰ καὶ πολὺ πλῆθος ἄρτων καὶ κρεῶν ὑπο-  
χωρεῖ ταχέως.

<sup>1</sup> The pylorus.

<sup>2</sup> “Chylosis,” chylification. cf. p. 240, note 1.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv

an abnormally long time in the stomach, as would be natural if their digestion were slow. Indeed, the chief way in which these people will surprise one is in the length of time that not food alone but even fluids will remain in their stomachs. Now, the actual cause of this is not, as one would imagine, that the lower outlet of the stomach,<sup>1</sup> being fairly narrow, will allow nothing to pass before being reduced to a fine state of division. There are a great many people who frequently swallow large quantities of big fruit-stones ; one person, who was holding a gold ring in his mouth, inadvertently swallowed it ; another swallowed a coin, and various people have swallowed various hard and indigestible objects ; yet all these people easily passed by the bowel what they had swallowed, without there being any subsequent symptoms. Now surely if narrowness of the gastric outlet were the cause of untriturated food remaining for an abnormally long time, none of these articles I have mentioned would ever have escaped. Furthermore, the fact that it is liquids which remain longest in these people's stomachs is sufficient to put the idea of narrowness of the outlet out of court. For, supposing a rapid descent were dependent upon emulsification,<sup>2</sup> then soups, milk, and barley-emulsion<sup>3</sup> would at once pass along in every case. But as a matter of fact this is not so. For in people who are extremely asthenic it is just these fluids which remain undigested, which accumulate and produce gurglings, and which oppress and overload the stomach, whereas in strong persons not merely do none of these things happen, but even a large quantity of bread or meat passes rapidly down.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. barley-“chyle,” i.e. barley-water.

Οὐ μόνον δ' ἐκ τοῦ περιτετάσθαι τὴν γαστέρα  
 155 καὶ βαρύνεσθαι || καὶ μεταρρεῖν ἄλλοτ' εἰς ἄλλα  
 μέρη μετὰ κλύδωνος τὸ παραμένειν ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν  
 αὐτῇ πάντως τοῖς οὕτως ἔχουσι τεκμήραιτ' ἀν  
 τις ἄλλὰ κἀκ τῶν ἐμέτων ἔνιοι γὰρ οὐ μετὰ  
 τρεῖς ὥρας ἡ τέτταρας ἄλλὰ νυκτῶν ἥδη μέσων  
 παμπόλλου μεταξὺ χρόνου διελθόντος ἐπὶ ταῖς  
 προσφοραῖς ἀνήμεσαν ἀκριβῶς ἅπαντα τὰ ἐδη-  
 δεσμένα.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ ζῷον ὄτιοῦν ἐμπλήσας ὑγρᾶς  
 τροφῆς, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς πολλάκις ἐπὶ συῶν ἐπειρά-  
 θημεν ἐξ ἀλεύρων μέθ' ὕδατος οἷον κυκεῶνά τινα  
 δόντες αὐτοῖς, ἐπειτα μετὰ τρεῖς που καὶ τέτταρας  
 ὥρας ἀνατεμόντες, εἰς οὕτω καὶ σὺ πράξεις,  
 εύρησεις ἔτι κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τὰ ἐδηδεσμένα·  
 πέρας γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐστι τῆς ἐνταῦθα μονῆς οὐχ ἡ  
 χύλωσις, ἦν καὶ ἐκτὸς ἔτι ὄντων μηχανήσασθαι  
 δυνατόν ἐστιν, ἀλλ' ἡ πέψις, ἔτερόν τι τῆς χυλώ-  
 σεως ούσα, καθάπερ αἵμάτωσίς τε καὶ θρέψις.  
 ὡς γὰρ κἀκεῖνα δέδεικται ποιοτήτων μεταβολῆ  
 γυγνόμενα, τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ ἡ ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 πέψις τῶν σιτίων εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν ἐστὶ τῷ τρεφο-  
 156 μένῳ ποιότητα || μεταβολὴ καὶ ὅταν γε πεφθῆ  
 τελέως, ἀνοίγνυται μὲν τηνικαῦτα τὸ κάτω στόμα,  
 διεκπίπτει δ' αὐτοῦ τὰ σιτία ρᾳδίως, εἰ καὶ  
 πλῆθος τι μεθ' ἔαυτῶν ἔχοντα τύχοι λίθων ἢ  
 ὄστῶν ἡ γυγάρτων ἡ τινος ἄλλου χυλωθῆναι  
 μὴ δυναμένου. καὶ σοι τοῦτ' ἔνεστιν ἐπὶ ζῷου

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv

And it is not only because the stomach is distended and loaded and because the fluid runs from one part of it to another accompanied by gurglings—it is not only for these reasons that one would judge that there was an unduly long continuance of the food in it, in those people who are so disposed, but also from the *vomiting*. Thus, there are some who vomit up every particle of what they have eaten, not after three or four hours, but actually in the middle of the night, a lengthy period having elapsed since their meal.

Suppose you fill any animal whatsoever with liquid food—an experiment I have often carried out in pigs, to whom I give a sort of mess of wheaten flour and water, thereafter cutting them open after three or four hours ; if you will do this yourself, you will find the food still in the stomach. For it is not *chylification*<sup>1</sup> which determines the length of its stay here—since this can also be effected outside the stomach ; the determining factor is *digestion*<sup>2</sup> which is a different thing from chylification, as are blood-production and nutrition. For, just as it has been shown<sup>3</sup> that these two processes depend upon a *change of qualities*, similarly also the digestion of food in the stomach involves a transmutation of it into the quality proper to that which is receiving nourishment.<sup>4</sup> Then, when it is completely digested, the lower outlet opens and the food is quickly ejected through it, even if there should be amongst it abundance of stones, bones, grape-pips, or other things which cannot be reduced to chyle. And you may observe this

<sup>1</sup> i.e. not the mere mechanical breaking down of food, but a distinctively vital action of “alteration.”

<sup>2</sup> *Pepsis*.   <sup>3</sup> Book I., chaps. x., xi.   <sup>4</sup> cf. p. 222, note 1.

θεάσασθαι στοχασμένῳ τὸν καιρὸν τῆς κάτω διεξόδου. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ εἰ σφαλείης ποτὲ τοῦ καιροῦ καὶ μηδὲν μήπω κάτω παρέρχοιτο πεττομένων ἔτι κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τῶν σιτίων, οὐδ’ οὕτως ἄκαρπος ἡ ἀνατομή σοι γενήσεται. θεάσῃ γὰρ ἐπ’ αὐτῶν, δῆπερ ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν, ἀκριβῶς μὲν μεμυκότα τὸν πυλωρόν, ἅπασαν δὲ τὴν γαστέρα περιεσταλμένην τοῖς σιτίοις τρόπου ομοιότατον, οἰόνπερ καὶ αἱ ρήτραι τοῖς κυουμένοις. οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν οὐδέποτε κενὴν εύρειν χώραν οὔτε κατὰ τὰς ὑστέρας οὔτε κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν οὔτε κατὰ τὰς κύστεις ἀμφοτέρας οὔτε κατὰ τὴν χοληδόχον ὀνομαζομένην οὔτε τὴν ἐτέραν· ἀλλ ἐπ’ ὀλίγον εἴη τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν αὐταῖς εἴτε πολύ, μεσταὶ καὶ πλήρεις αὐτῶν αἱ κοιλίαι φαίνονται περιστελλομένων ἀεὶ τῶν χιτώνων τοῖς περιεχομένοις, δταν γε κατὰ φύσιν ἔχῃ τὸ ζῷον. ||

157 Ἐρασίστρατος δ' οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως τὴν περιστολὴν τῆς γαστρὸς ἀπάντων αἰτίαν ἀποφαίνει καὶ τῆς λειώσεως τῶν σιτίων καὶ τῆς τῶν περιττωμάτων ὑποχωρήσεως καὶ τῆς τῶν κεχυλωμένων ἀναδόσεως.

Ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ μυριάκις ἐπὶ ζῶντος ἔτι τοῦ ζώου διελῶν τὸ περιτόναιον εὑρον ἀεὶ τὰ μὲν ἔντερα πάντα περιστελλόμενα τοῖς ἐνυπάρχουσι, τὴν κοιλίαν δ' οὐχ ἀπλῶς, ἀλλ ἐπὶ μὲν ταῖς ἐδωδαῖς ἄνωθέν τε καὶ κάτωθεν αὐτὰ καὶ πανταχόθεν ἀκρι-

<sup>1</sup> *Choledochous.*   <sup>2</sup> More exactly *peristole*; cf. p. 97, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Neuburger says of Erasistratus that "dissection had taught him to think in terms of anatomy." It was chiefly

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv

yourself in an animal, if you will try to hit upon the time at which the descent of food from the stomach takes place. But even if you should fail to discover the time, and nothing was yet passing down, and the food was still undergoing digestion in the stomach, still even then you would find dissection not without its uses. You will observe, as we have just said, that the pylorus is accurately closed, and that the whole stomach is in a state of contraction upon the food very much as the womb contracts upon the foetus. For it is never possible to find a vacant space in the uterus, the stomach, or in either of the two bladders—that is, either in that called bile-receiving<sup>1</sup> or in the other ; whether their contents be abundant or scanty, their cavities are seen to be replete and full, owing to the fact that their coats contract constantly upon the contents—so long, at least, as the animal is in a natural condition.

Now Erasistratus for some reason declares that it is the contractions<sup>2</sup> of the stomach which are the cause of everything—that is to say, of the softening of the food,<sup>3</sup> the removal of waste matter, and the absorption of the food when chylified [emulsified].

Now I have personally, on countless occasions, divided the peritoneum of a still living animal and have always found all *the intestines* contracting peristaltically<sup>4</sup> upon their contents. The condition of *the stomach*, however, is found less simple ; as regards the substances freshly swallowed, it had grasped these accurately both above and below, in fact at every point, and was as devoid of movement the gross movements or structure of organs with which he concerned himself. Where an organ had no obvious function, he dubbed it “useless” ; e.g. the spleen (cf. p. 143).

<sup>1</sup> i.e. contracting and dilating ; no longitudinal movements involved ; cf. p. 263, note 2.

## GALEN

βῶς περιειληφυῖαν ἀκίνητον, ως δοκεῖν ἡνῶσθαι καὶ περιπεφυκέναι τοῖς σιτίοις· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ καὶ τὸν πυλωρὸν εὑρισκον ἀεὶ μεμυκότα καὶ κεκλεισμένον ἀκριβῶς ὥσπερ τὸ τῶν ὑστερῶν στόμα ταῖς ἐγκύμοσιν.

Ἐπὶ μέντοι ταῖς πέψει συμπεπληρωμέναις ἀνέφκτο μὲν ὁ πυλωρός, ἡ γαστὴρ δὲ περισταλτικῶς ἐκινεῖτο παραπλησίως τοῖς ἐντέροις.

## V

"Απαντ' οὖν ἀλλήλοις ὁμολογεῖ ταῦτα καὶ τῇ γαστρὶ καὶ ταῖς ὑστέραις καὶ ταῖς κύστεσιν εἶναι τινας ἐμφύτους δυνάμεις καθεκτικὰς μὲν τῶν 158 οἰκείων ποιοτήτων, || ἀποκριτικὰς δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ἔλκει τὴν χολὴν εἰς ἑαυτὴν ἡ ἐπὶ τῷ ἥπατι κύστις, ἐμπροσθεν δέδεικται, ὅτι δὲ καὶ ἀποκρίνει καθ' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ τοῦτ' ἐναργῶς φαίνεται. καὶ μὴν εἰ διεδέχετο τὴν ἐλκτικὴν δύναμιν ἡ ἐκκριτικὴ καὶ μὴ μέση τις ἀμφοῖν ἦν ἡ καθεκτική, διὰ παντὸς ἔχρην ἀνατεμνομένων τῶν ζῴων ἵσον πλῆθος χολῆς εὑρίσκεσθαι κατὰ τὴν κύστιν· οὐ μὴν εὑρίσκεται γε. ποτὲ μὲν γὰρ πληρεστάτη, ποτὲ δὲ κενοτάτη, ποτὲ δὲ τὰς ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ διαφορὰς ἔχουσα θεωρεῖται, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ ἑτέρα κύστις ἡ τὸ οὔρον ὑποδεχομένη. ταύτης μέν γε καὶ πρὸ τῆς ἀνατομῆς αἰσθανόμεθα, πρὸν ἀνιαθῆναι τῷ πλήθει βαρυνθεῖσαν ἡ τῇ δριμύτητι δηχθεῖσαν,

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 282, note 1.      <sup>2</sup> Book II., chaps. ii. and viii.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv.-v

as though it had grown round and become united with the food.<sup>1</sup> At the same time I found the pylorus persistently closed and accurately shut, like the os uteri on the foetus.

In the cases, however, where digestion had been completed the pylorus had opened, and the stomach was undergoing peristaltic movements, similar to those of the intestines.

### V

THUS all these facts agree that the stomach, uterus, and bladders possess certain inborn faculties which are retentive of their own proper qualities and eliminative of those that are foreign. For it has been already shown<sup>2</sup> that the bladder by the liver draws bile into itself, while it is also quite obvious that it eliminates this daily into the stomach. Now, of course, if the eliminative were to succeed the attractive faculty and there were not a *retentive* faculty between the two, there would be found, on every occasion that animals were dissected, an equal quantity of bile in the gall-bladder. This however, we do not find. For the bladder is sometimes observed to be very full, sometimes quite empty, while at other times you find in it various intermediate degrees of fulness, just as is the case with the other bladder—that which receives the urine; for even without resorting to anatomy we may observe that the urinary bladder continues to collect urine up to the time that it becomes uncomfortable through the increasing quantity of urine or the irritation caused by its acidity—the presumption

## GALEN

ἀθροιζούσης ἔτι τὸ οὖρον, ὡς οὕσης τινὸς κάνταῦθα  
δυνάμεως καθεκτικῆς.

Οὗτο δὲ καὶ ἡ γαστὴρ ὑπὸ δριμύτητος πολ-  
λάκις δηχθεῖσα πρωιαίτερον τοῦ δέοντος ἀπεπτον  
ἔτι τὴν τροφὴν ἀποτρίβεται. αὐθις δ' ἂν ποτε  
τῷ πλήθει βαρυνθεῖσα ἡ καὶ κατ' ἄμφω συνελ-  
θόντα κακῶς διατεθεῖσα διαρροίαις ἔάλω. καὶ  
μέν γε καὶ οἱ ἔμετοι, τῷ πλήθει βαρυνθείσης ||  
159 αὐτῆς ἡ τὴν ποιότητα τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ σιτίων τε καὶ  
περιττωμάτων μὴ φερούσης, ἀνάλογόν τι ταῖς  
διαρροίαις πάθημα τῆς ἄνω γαστρός ἔστιν. ὅταν  
μὲν γὰρ ἐν τοῖς κάτω μέρεσιν αὐτῆς ἡ τοιαύτη  
γένηται διάθεσις, ἐρρωμένων τῶν κατὰ τὸν στό-  
μαχον, εἰς διαρροίας ἐτελεύτησεν, ὅταν δ' ἐν τοῖς  
κατὰ τὸ στόμα, τῶν ἄλλων εὐρωστούντων, εἰς  
ἔμετους.

## VI

"Ενεστι δὲ καὶ τοῦτο πολλάκις ἐναργῶς ἵδεῖν  
ἐπὶ τῶν ἀποσίτων ἀναγκαζόμενοι γὰρ ἐσθίειν  
οὔτε καταπίνειν εὐσθενοῦσιν οὔτ', εἰ καὶ βιάσαιντο,  
κατέχουσιν, ἀλλ' εὐθὺς ἀνεμοῦσι. καὶ οἱ ἄλλως  
δὲ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων πρὸς ὅτιον δυσχεραίνοντες  
βιασθέντες ἐνίοτε προσάρασθαι ταχέως ἐξεμοῦσιν,  
ἢ εἰς κατάσχοιεν βιασάμενοι, ναυτιώδεις τ' εἰσὶ  
καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς ὑπτίας αἰσθάνονται καὶ σπευ-  
δούσης ἀποθέσθαι τὸ λυποῦν.

Οὕτως ἐξ ἀπάντων τῶν φαινομένων, ὅπερ ἐξ  
ἀρχῆς ἐρρέθη, μαρτυρεῖται τὸ δεῖν ὑπάρχειν τοῖς  
τοῦ ζώου μορίοις σχεδὸν ἅπασιν ἔφεσιν μέν τινα

thus being that here, too, there is a retentive faculty.

Similarly, too, the stomach, when, as often happens, it is irritated by acidity, gets rid of the food, although still undigested, earlier than proper ; or again, when oppressed by the quantity of its contents, or disordered from the co-existence of both conditions, it is seized with diarrhoea. *Vomiting* also is an affection of the upper [part of the] stomach analogous to diarrhoea, and it occurs when the stomach is overloaded or is unable to stand the quality of the food or surplus substances which it contains. Thus, when such a condition develops in the lower parts of the stomach, while the parts about the inlet are normal, it ends in diarrhoea, whereas if this condition is in the upper stomach, the lower parts being normal, it ends in vomiting.

## VI

THIS may often be clearly observed in those who are disinclined for food ; when obliged to eat, they have not the strength to swallow, and, even if they force themselves to do so, they cannot retain the food, but at once vomit it up. And those especially who have a dislike to some particular kind of food, sometimes take it under compulsion, and then promptly bring it up ; or, if they force themselves to keep it down, they are nauseated and feel their stomach turned up, and endeavouring to relieve itself of its discomfort.

Thus, as was said at the beginning, all the observed facts testify that there must exist in almost all parts of the animal a certain inclination towards, or, so to

καὶ οἰον ὅρεξιν τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος, ἀποστροφὴν  
160 δέ τινα || καὶ οἰον μῆσός τι τῆς ἀλλοτρίας. ἀλλ’  
ἔφιέμενα μὲν ἔλκειν εὐλογον, ἀποστρεφόμενα δ’  
ἐκκρίνειν.

Κάκ τούτων πάλιν ἡ θ' ἐλκτικὴ δύναμις  
ἀποδείκνυται καθ' ἄπαν ὑπάρχουσα καὶ ἡ προ-  
ωστική.

’Αλλ’ εἴπερ ἔφεσίς τέ τίς ἐστι καὶ ἔλξις, εἴη ἄν  
τις καὶ ἀπόλαυσις· οὐδὲν γὰρ τῶν ὄντων ἔλκει τι  
δι’ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔλκειν, ἀλλ’ ἵν’ ἀπολαύσῃ τοῦ διὰ  
τῆς ὀλκῆς εὔπορηθέντος. καὶ μὴν ἀπολαύειν οὐ  
δύναται μὴ κατασχόν. καν τούτῳ πάλιν ἡ  
καθεκτικὴ δύναμις ἀποδείκνυται τὴν γένεσιν  
ἀναγκαίαν ἔχουσα· σαφῶς γὰρ ἔφίεται μὲν τῶν  
οἰκείων ποιοτήτων ἡ γαστήρ, ἀποστρέφεται δὲ  
τὰς ἀλλοτρίας.

’Αλλ’ εἴπερ ἔφίεται τε καὶ ἔλκει καὶ ἀπολαύει  
κατέχουσα καὶ περιστελλομένη, εἴη ἄν τι καὶ  
πέρας αὐτῇ τῆς ἀπολαύσεως κάπι τῷδ’ ὁ καιρὸς  
ἥδη τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἐνεργούσης.

## VII

’Αλλ’ εἰ καὶ κατέχει καὶ ἀπολαύει, κατα-  
χρῆται πρὸς ὃ πέφυκε. πέφυκε δὲ τοῦ προσ-  
161 ήκοντος ἔαυτῇ || κατὰ ποιότητα καὶ οἰκείου

<sup>1</sup> Note use of psychological terms in biology. cf. also p. 133, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> “In everything.” cf. p. 66, note 3.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vi.-vii

speak, an appetite for their own special quality, and an aversion to, or, as it were, a hatred<sup>1</sup> of the foreign quality. And it is natural that when they feel an inclination they should attract, and that when they feel aversion they should expel.

From these facts, then, again, both the attractive and the propulsive faculties have been demonstrated to exist in everything.<sup>2</sup>

But if there be an inclination or attraction, there will also be some benefit derived; for no existing thing attracts anything else for the mere sake of attracting, but in order to benefit by what is acquired by the attraction. And of course it cannot benefit by it if it cannot retain it. Herein, then, again, the retentive faculty is shown to have its necessary origin: for the stomach obviously inclines towards its own proper qualities and turns away from those that are foreign to it.<sup>3</sup>

But if it aims at and attracts its food and benefits by it while retaining and contracting upon it, we may also expect that there will be some *termination* to the benefit received, and that thereafter will come the time for the exercise of the eliminative faculty.

### VII

But if the stomach both retains and benefits by its food, then it employs it for the end for which it [the stomach] naturally exists. And it exists to partake of that which is of a quality befitting and proper to

<sup>3</sup> Galen confuses the nutrition of organs with that of the ultimate living elements or cells; the stomach does not, of course, feed itself in the way a cell does. *cf.* Introduction, p. xxxii.

μεταλαμβάνειν· ὥσθ' ἔλκει τῶν σιτίων ὅσον χρηστότατον ἀτμωδῶς τε καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ καὶ τούτο τοῖς ἑαυτῆς χιτῶσιν ἐναποτίθεται τε καὶ προστίθησιν. ὅταν δὲ ἵκανῶς ἐμπλησθῇ, καθάπερ ἄχθος τι τὴν λοιπὴν ἀποτίθεται τροφὴν ἐσχηκυῖάν τι χρηστὸν ηδη καὶ αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς πρὸς τὴν γαστέρα κουιωνίας· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνδέχεται δύο σώματα δρᾶν καὶ πάσχειν ἐπιτήδεια συνελθόντα μὴ οὐκ ἡτοι πάσχειν θ' ἄμα καὶ δρᾶν ἡ θάτερον μὲν δρᾶν, θάτερον δὲ πάσχειν. ἐὰν μὲν γὰρ ἴσαζη ταῖς δυνάμεσιν, ἐξ ἵσου δράσει τε καὶ πείσεται, ἀν δὲ ὑπερέχῃ πολὺ καὶ κρατῆ θάτερον, ἐνεργήσει περὶ τὸ πάσχον· ὥστε δράσει μέγα μέν τι καὶ αἰσθητόν, αὐτὸ δὲ ἡτοι σμικρόν τι καὶ οὐκ αἰσθητὸν ἡ παντάπασιν οὐδὲν πείσεται. ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ δὴ καὶ μάλιστα διήνεγκε φαρμάκου δηλητηρίου τροφή· τὸ μὲν γὰρ κρατεῖ τῆς ἐν τῷ σώματι δυνάμεως, ἡ δὲ κρατεῖται.

Οὕκουν ἐνδέχεται τροφὴν μὲν εἶναι τι τῷ ζῷῳ προσήκουσαν, οὐ μὴν καὶ κρατεῖσθαι γ' ὁμοίως 162 πρὸς τῶν || ἐν τῷ ζῷῳ ποιοτήτων· τὸ κρατεῖσθαι δὲ ἡν ἀλλοιοῦσθαι. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ τὰ μὲν ἴσχυρότερα ταῖς δυνάμεσίν ἔστι μόρια, τὰ δὲ ἀσθενέστερα, κρατήσει μὲν πάντα τῆς οἰκείας τῷ ζῷῳ τροφῆς, οὐχ ὁμοίως δὲ πάντα κρατήσει δὲ ἄρα καὶ ἡ γαστὴρ καὶ ἀλλοιώσει μὲν τὴν τροφήν, οὐ μὴν ὁμοίως ἥπατι καὶ φλεψὶ καὶ ἀρτηρίαις καὶ καρδίᾳ.

Πόσον οὖν ἔστιν, δὲ ἀλλοιοῦ, καὶ δὴ θεασώμεθα· πλέον μὲν ἡ κατὰ τὸ στόμα, μεῖον δὲ ἡ κατὰ τὸ

<sup>1</sup> cf. Asclepiades's theory regarding the urine, p. 51.

<sup>2</sup> The process of application or prosthesis. cf. p. 223, note 3.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

it. Thus it attracts all the most useful parts of the food in a vaporous<sup>1</sup> and finely divided condition, storing this up in its own coats, and applying<sup>2</sup> it to them. And when it is sufficiently full it puts away from it, as one might something troublesome, the rest of the food, this having itself meanwhile obtained some profit from its association with the stomach. For it is impossible for two bodies which are adapted for acting and being acted upon to come together without either both acting or being acted upon, or else one acting and the other being acted upon. For if their forces are equal they will act and be acted upon equally, and if the one be much superior in strength, it will exert its activity upon its passive neighbour ; thus, while producing a great and appreciable effect, it will itself be acted upon either little or not at all. But it is herein also that the main difference lies between nourishing food and a deleterious drug ; the latter masters the forces of the body, whereas the former is mastered by them.<sup>3</sup>

There cannot, then, be food which is suited for the animal which is not also correspondingly subdued by the qualities existing in the animal. And to be subdued means to undergo *alteration*.<sup>4</sup> Now, some parts are stronger in power and others weaker ; therefore, while all will subdue the nutriment which is proper to the animal, they will not all do so equally. Thus the stomach will subdue and alter its food, but not to the same extent as will the liver, veins, arteries, and heart.

We must therefore observe to what extent it does alter it. The alteration is more than that which

<sup>3</sup> Mutual influence of organism and environment.

<sup>4</sup> Qualitative change. cf. Book I., chap. ii.

ηπάρ τε καὶ τὰς φλέβας. αὗτη μὲν γὰρ η ἀλλοιώσις εἰς αἷματος οὐσίαν ἄγει τὴν τροφήν, ή δὲ ἐν τῷ στόματι μεθίστησι μὲν αὐτὴν ἐναργῶς εἰς ἔτερον εἶδος, οὐ μὴν εἰς τέλος γε μετακοσμεῖ. μάθοις δὲ ἀν ἐπὶ τῶν ἐγκαταλειφθέντων ταῖς διαστάσεσι τῶν ὁδόντων σιτίων καὶ καταμεινάντων δι’ ὅλης υγκτός· οὔτε γὰρ ἄρτος ἀκριβῶς ὁ ἄρτος οὔτε κρέας ἐστὶ τὸ κρέας, ἀλλ’ ὅζει μὲν τοιοῦτον, ολόνπερ καὶ τοῦ ζῷου τὸ στόμα, διαλέλυται δὲ καὶ διατέτηκε καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ ζῷῳ τῆς σαρκὸς ἀπομέμακται ποιότητας. ἔνεστι δέ σοι

163 θεάσασθαι τὸ μέγεθος τῆς ἐν τῷ στόματι || τῶν σιτίων ἀλλοιώσεως, εἰ πυροὺς μασησάμενος ἐπιθείης ἀπέπτοις δοθῆσιν ὅψει γὰρ αὐτοὺς τάχιστα μεταβάλλοντάς τε καὶ συμπέττοντας, οὐδὲν τοιοῦτον, ὅταν ὕδατι φυραθῶσιν, ἐργάσασθαι δυναμένους. καὶ μὴ θαυμάσῃς· τὸ γάρ τοι φλέγμα τουτὶ τὸ κατὰ τὸ στόμα καὶ λειχήνων ἐστὶν ἄκος καὶ σκορπίους ἀναιρεῖ παραχρῆμα καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ἰοβόλων θηρίων τὰ μὲν εὐθέως ἀποκτείνει, τὰ δὲ ἐις ὕστερον ἀπαντα γοῦν βλάπτει μεγάλως. ἀλλὰ τὰ μεμασημένα σιτία πρῶτον μὲν τούτῳ τῷ φλέγματι βέβρεκται τε καὶ πεφύραται, δεύτερον δὲ καὶ τῷ χρωτὶ τοῦ στόματος ἀπαντα πεπλησίακεν, ὥστε πλείονα μεταβολὴν εἰληφε τῶν ἐν ταῖς κεναῖς χώραις τῶν ὁδόντων ἐσφηνωμένων.

Ἄλλ’ δσον τὰ μεμασημένα τούτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἡλλοιώται, τοσοῦτον ἐκείνων τὰ καταποθέντα.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

occurs in the mouth, but less than that in the liver and veins. For the latter alteration changes the nutriment into the *substance* of blood, whereas that in the mouth obviously changes it into a new *form*, but certainly does not completely transmute it. This you may discover in the food which is left in the intervals between the teeth, and which remains there all night; the bread is not exactly bread, nor the meat meat, for they have a smell similar to that of the animal's mouth, and have been disintegrated and dissolved, and have had the qualities of the animal's flesh impressed upon them. And you may observe the extent of the alteration which occurs to food in the mouth if you will chew some corn and then apply it to an unripe [undigested] boil: you will see it rapidly transmuting—in fact entirely digesting—the boil, though it cannot do anything of the kind if you mix it with water. And do not let this surprise you; this phlegm [saliva] in the mouth is also a cure for *lichens*<sup>1</sup>; it even rapidly destroys scorpions; while, as regards the animals which emit venom, some it kills at once, and others after an interval; to all of them in any case it does great damage. Now, the masticated food is all, firstly, soaked in and mixed up with this phlegm; and secondly, it is brought into contact with the actual skin of the mouth; thus it undergoes more change than the food which is wedged into the vacant spaces between the teeth.

But just as masticated food is more altered than the latter kind, so is food which has been swallowed more altered than that which has been merely

<sup>1</sup> Apparently skin-diseases in which a superficial crust (resembling the lichen on a tree-trunk) forms—e.g. psoriasis.

μὴ γὰρ οὐδὲ παραβλητὸν ἡ τὸ τῆς ὑπερβολῆς,  
εἰ τὸ κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν ἐννοήσαιμεν φλέγμα καὶ  
χολὴν καὶ πνεῦμα καὶ θερμασίαν καὶ ὅλην τὴν  
οὐσίαν τῆς γαστρός. εἰ δὲ καὶ συνεπινοήσαις  
164 αὐτῇ τὰ παρακείμενα || σπλάγχνα καθάπερ τινὶ  
λέβητι μεγάλῳ πυρὸς ἔστιας πολλάς, ἐκ δεξιῶν  
μὲν τὸ ἥπαρ, ἐξ ἀριστερῶν δὲ τὸν σπλῆνα, τὴν  
καρδίαν δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἄνω, σὺν αὐτῇ δὲ καὶ τὰς  
φρένας αἰωρουμένας τε καὶ διὰ παντὸς κινουμένας,  
ἐφ' ἄπασι δὲ τούτοις σκέπτον τὸ ἐπίπλοον, ἔξαι-  
σιόν τινα πεισθήσῃ τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν γίγνεσθαι τῶν  
εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καταποθέντων σιτίων.

Πῶς δὲ ἀν ἡδύνατο ῥᾳδίως αἴματοῦσθαι μὴ  
προπαρασκευασθέντα τῇ τοιαύτῃ μεταβολῇ; δέ-  
δεικται γὰρ οὖν καὶ πρόσθεν, ώς οὐδὲν εἰς τὴν  
ἐναντίαν ἀθρόως μεθίσταται ποιότητα. πῶς οὖν  
ό ἄρτος αἷμα γίγνεται, πῶς δὲ τὸ τεῦτλον ἡ ὁ  
κύαμος ἡ τι τῶν ἀλλων, εἰ μὴ πρότερον τιν' ἔτέραν  
ἀλλοίωσιν ἐδέξατο; πῶς δὲ ἡ κοπρος ἐν τοῖς  
λεπτοῖς ἐντέροις ἀθρόως γεννηθήσεται; τί γὰρ ἐν  
τούτοις σφοδρότερον εἰς ἀλλοίωσίν ἔστι τῶν κατὰ  
τὴν γαστέρα; ποτερα τῶν χιτώνων τὸ πλῆθος ἡ  
τῶν γειτνιώντων σπλάγχνων ἡ περίθεσις ἡ τῆς  
μουῆς ὁ χρόνος ἡ σύμφυτός τις ἐν τοῖς ὄργανοις  
θερμασία; καὶ μὴν κατ' οὐδὲν τούτων πλεονεκτεῖ  
τὰ ἔντερα τῆς γαστρός. τί ποτ' οὖν ἐν μὲν τῇ  
165 γαστρὶ νυκτὸς || ὅλης πολλάκις μείναντα τὸν  
ἄρτον ἔτι φυλάττεσθαι βούλονται τὰς ἀρχαίας  
διασώζοντα ποιότητας, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἄπαξ ἐμπέσῃ

---

<sup>1</sup> Note especially pneuma and innate heat, which practically stand for oxygen and the heat generated in oxidation.  
*cf. p. 41, note 3.*

<sup>2</sup> Book I., chap. x.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

masticated. Indeed, there is no comparison between these two processes ; we have only to consider what the stomach contains—phlegm, bile, pneuma, [innate] heat,<sup>1</sup> and, indeed the whole substance of the stomach. And if one considers along with this the adjacent viscera, like a lot of burning hearths around a great cauldron—to the right the liver, to the left the spleen, the heart above, and along with it the diaphragm (suspended and in a state of constant movement), and the omentum sheltering them all—you may believe what an extraordinary alteration it is which occurs in the food taken into the stomach.

How could it easily become blood if it were not previously prepared by means of a change of this kind ? It has already been shown<sup>2</sup> that nothing is altered all at once from one quality to its opposite. How then could bread, beef, beans, or any other food turn into blood if they had not previously undergone some other alteration ? And how could the faeces be generated right away in the small intestine ?<sup>3</sup> For what is there in this organ more potent in producing alteration than the factors in the stomach ? Is it the number of the coats, or the way it is surrounded by neighbouring viscera, or the time that the food remains in it, or some kind of innate heat which it contains ? Most assuredly the intestines have the advantage of the stomach in none of these respects. For what possible reason, then, will objectors have it that bread may often remain a whole night in the stomach and still preserve its original qualities, whereas when once it is projected into the

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, faeces are obviously altered food. This alteration cannot have taken place entirely in the small intestine : therefore alteration of food must take place in the stomach.

τοῖς ἐντέροις, εὐθὺς γίγνεσθαι κόπρου; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὁ τοσοῦτος χρόνος ἀδύνατος ἀλλοιοῦν, οὐδὲ ὁ βραχὺς ἵκανός· εἰ δὲ οὗτος αὐτάρκης, πῶς οὐ πολὺ μᾶλλον ὁ μακρός; ἀρ' οὖν ἀλλοιοῦται μὲν ἡ τροφὴ κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν, ἄλλην δέ τιν' ἀλλοίωσιν καὶ οὐχ οἶν τῆς φύσεως ἵσχει τοῦ μεταβάλλοντος ὄργανου; ἡ ταύτην μέν, οὐ μὴν τὴν γ' οἰκείαν τῷ τοῦ ζώου σώματι; μακρῷ τοῦτῳ ἀδυνατώτερόν ἔστι. καὶ μὴν οὐκ ἄλλο γ' ἡν ἡ πέψις ἡ ἀλλοίωσις εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν τοῦ τρεφομένου ποιότητα. εἴπερ οὖν ἡ πέψις τοῦτῳ ἔστι καὶ ἡ τροφὴ κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα δέδεικται δεχομένη ποιότητα τῷ μέλλοντι πρὸς αὐτῆς θρέψεσθαι ζῷῳ προσήκουσαν, ἵκανῶς ἀποδέδεικται τὸ πέττεσθαι κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τὴν τροφήν.

Καὶ γελοῖος μὲν Ἀσκληπιάδης οὗτός ἐν ταῖς ἐρυγαῖς λέγων ἐμφαίνεσθαι ποτε τὴν ποιότητα τῶν πεφθέντων σιτίων οὗτός ἐν τοῖς ἐμέτοις οὗτός 166 ἐν ταῖς ἀναπομαῖς· αὐτὸς γὰρ δὴ τὸ τοῦ σώματος ἔξοζειν αὐτὰ τῆς κοιλίας ἔστι τὸ πεπέφθαι. ὁ δὲ οὗτως ἔστιν εὐήθης, ὥστ', ἐπειδὴ τῶν παλαιῶν ἀκούει λεγόντων ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστὸν ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ μεταβάλλειν τὰ σιτία, δοκιμάζει ζητεῖν οὐ τὸ κατὰ δύναμιν ἀλλὰ τὸ κατὰ γεῦσιν χρηστόν, ὥσπερ ἡ τοῦ μήλου μηλωδεστέρου—χρὴ γὰρ οὗτως αὐτῷ διαλέγεσθαι—γιγνομένου κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν ἡ τοῦ μέλιτος μελιτωδεστέρου.

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> Asclepiades held that there was no such thing as real

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

intestines, it straightway becomes ordure? For, if such a long period of time is incapable of altering it, neither will the short period be sufficient, or, if the latter is enough, surely the longer time will be much more so! Well, then, can it be that, while the nutriment does undergo an alteration in the stomach, this is a different kind of alteration and one which is not dependent on the nature of the organ which alters it? Or if it be an alteration of this latter kind, yet one perhaps which is not proper to the body of the animal? This is still more impossible. Digestion was shown to be nothing else than an alteration to the quality proper to that which is receiving nourishment.<sup>1</sup> Since, then, this is what digestion means and since the nutriment has been shown to take on in the stomach a quality appropriate to the animal which is about to be nourished by it, it has been demonstrated adequately that nutriment does undergo digestion in the stomach.

And Asclepiades is absurd when he states that the quality of the digested food never shows itself either in eructations or in the vomited matter, or on dissection.<sup>2</sup> For of course the mere fact that the food smells of the body shows that it has undergone gastric digestion. But this man is so foolish that, when he hears the Ancients saying that the food is converted in the stomach into something "good," he thinks it proper to look out not for what is good in its possible effects, but for what is *good to the taste*: this is like saying that apples (for so one has to argue with him) become more apple-like [in flavour] in the stomach, or honey more honey-like!

qualitative change; the food was merely broken up into its constituent molecules, and absorbed unaltered. cf. p. 49, note 5.

Πολὺ δ' εὐηθέστερός ἐστι καὶ γελοιότερος ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἡ μὴ νοῶν, ὅπως εἴρηται πρὸς τῶν παλαιῶν ἡ πέψις ἐψήσει παραπλήσιος ὑπάρχειν, ἡ ἔκὼν σοφιζόμενος ἔαυτόν. ἐψήσει μὲν οὖν, φησίν, οὗτως ἐλαφρὰν ἔχουσαν θερμασίαν οὐκ εἰκὸς εἶναι παραπλησίαν τὴν πέψιν, ὥσπερ ἡ τὴν Αἴτινην δέον ὑποθεῖναι τῇ γαστρὶ ἡ ἄλλως αὐτῆς ἀλλοιώσαι τὰ σιτία μὴ δυναμένης ἡ δυναμένης μὲν ἀλλοιοῦν, οὐ κατὰ τὴν ἔμφυτον δὲ θερμασίαν, ὑγρὰν οὖσαν δηλονότι καὶ διὰ τοῦθ' ἔψειν οὐκ ὀπτᾶν εἰρημένην.

Ἐχρήν δ' αὐτόν, εἴπερ περὶ πραγμάτων ἀντιλέγειν ἐθούλετο, πειραθῆναι δεῖξαι μάλιστα μὲν 167 καὶ || πρῶτον, ώς οὐδὲ μεταβάλλει τὴν ἀρχὴν οὐδὲ ἀλλοιοῦται κατὰ ποιότητα πρὸς τῆς γαστρὸς τὰ σιτία, δεύτερον δ', εἴπερ μὴ οἱός τ' ἦν τοῦτο πιστώσασθαι, τὸ τὴν ἀλλοιώσιν αὐτῶν ἄχρηστον εἶναι τῷ ζῷῳ<sup>1</sup> εἰ δὲ μηδὲ τοῦτ' εἶχε διαβάλλειν, ἔξελέγειται τὴν περὶ τὰς δραστικὰς ἀρχὰς ὑπόληψιν καὶ δεῖξαι τὰς ἐνεργείας ἐν τοῖς μορίοις οὐ διὰ τὴν ἐκ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ὑγροῦ ποιὰν κράσιν ὑπάρχειν ἀλλὰ δι' ἄλλο τι· εἰ δὲ μηδὲ τοῦτ' ἐτόλμα διαβάλλειν, ἄλλ' ὅτι γε μὴ τὸ θερμόν ἐστιν ἐν τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως διοικουμένοις τὸ τῶν ἀλλων δραστικώτατον. ἡ εἰ μήτε τοῦτο μήτε τῶν ἀλλων τι τῶν ἔμπροσθεν εἶχεν ἀποδεικνύναι, μὴ ληρεῖν ὀνόματι προσπαλαίοντα

<sup>1</sup> i.e. denial of forethought in the Physis.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

Erasistratus, however, is still more foolish and absurd, either through not perceiving in what sense the Ancients said that digestion is similar to the process of *boiling*, or because he purposely confused himself with sophistries. It is, he says, inconceivable that digestion, involving as it does such trifling warmth, should be related to the boiling process. This is as if we were to suppose that it was necessary to put the fires of Etna under the stomach before it could manage to alter the food ; or else that, while it was capable of altering the food, it did not do this by virtue of its innate heat, which of course was moist, so that the word *boil* was used instead of *bake*.

What he ought to have done, if it was facts that he wished to dispute about, was to have tried to show, first and foremost, that the food is not transmuted or altered in quality by the stomach at all, and secondly, if he could not be confident of this, he ought to have tried to show that this alteration was not of any advantage to the animal.<sup>1</sup> If, again, he were unable even to make this misrepresentation, he ought to have attempted to confute the postulate concerning *the active principles*—to show, in fact, that the functions taking place in the various parts do not depend on the way in which the Warm, Cold, Dry, and Moist are mixed, but on some other factor. And if he had not the audacity to misrepresent facts even so far as this, still he should have tried at least to show that the Warm is not the most active of all the principles which play a part in things governed by Nature. But if he was unable to demonstrate this any more than any of the previous propositions, then he ought not to have made himself ridiculous by quarrelling uselessly

μάτην, ὡσπερ οὐ σαφῶς Ἀριστοτέλους ἐν τ' ἄλλοις πολλοῖς καὶ τῷ τετάρτῳ τῶν μετεωρολογικῶν ὅπως ἡ πέψις ἐψήσει παραπλήσιος εἶναι λέγεται, καὶ ὅτι μὴ πρώτως μηδὲ κυρίως ὀνομαζόντων, εἰρηκότος.

Ἄλλ', ως ἥδη λέλεκται πολλάκις, ἀρχὴ τούτων ἀπάντων ἔστι μία τὸ περὶ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ύγροῦ διασκέψασθαι, καθάπερ Ἀριστοτέλης ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ περὶ γενέσεως καὶ 168 φθορᾶς, ἀποδείξας ἀπάσας τὰς κατὰ τὰ σώματα μεταβολὰς καὶ ἄλλοιώσεις ὑπὸ τούτων γίγνεσθαι. ἀλλ' Ἐρασίστρατος οὔτε τούτοις οὔτ' ἄλλῳ τινὶ τῶν προειρημένων ἀντειπὼν ἐπὶ τούνομα μόνον ἐτράπετο τῆς ἐψήσεως.

## VIII

Ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς πέψεως, εἰ καὶ τάλλα πάντα παρέλιπε, τὸ γοῦν ὅτι διαφέρει τῆς ἐκτὸς ἐψήσεως ἡ ἐν τοῖς ζῷοις πέψις, ἐπειράθη δεικνύναι, περὶ δὲ τῆς καταπόσεως οὐδὲ ἄχρι τοσούτου. τί γάρ φησιν;

“Ολκὴ μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμίᾳ φαίνεται εἶναι.”

Καὶ μὴν δύο χιτῶνας ἡ γαστὴρ ἔχει πάντως ἐνεκά του γεγονότας καὶ διήκουσιν οὗτοι μέχρι τοῦ στόματος, ὁ μὲν ἐνδον, οἵος ἔστι κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα, τοιοῦτος διαμένων, ὁ δ' ἔτερος ἐπὶ τὸ

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii.-viii

with a mere name—as though Aristotle had not clearly stated in the fourth book of his “*Meteorology*,” as well as in many other passages, in what way digestion can be said to be allied to boiling, and also that the latter expression is not used in its primitive or strict sense.

But, as has been frequently said already,<sup>1</sup> the one starting-point of all this is a thoroughgoing enquiry into the question of the Warm, Cold, Dry and Moist; this Aristotle carried out in the second of his books “*On Genesis and Destruction*,” where he shows that all the transmutations and alterations throughout the body take place as a result of these principles. Erasistratus, however, advanced nothing against these or anything else that has been said above, but occupied himself merely with the word “boiling.”

### VIII

THUS, as regards *digestion*, even though he neglected everything else, he did at least attempt to prove his point—namely, that digestion in animals differs from boiling carried on outside; in regard to the question of *deglutition*, however, he did not go even so far as this. What are his words?

“The stomach does not appear to exercise any traction.”<sup>2</sup>

Now the fact is that the stomach possesses two coats, which certainly exist for some purpose; they extend as far as the mouth, the internal one remaining throughout similar to what it is in the stomach, and the other one tending to become of a more fleshy

<sup>1</sup> v. p. 9, *et passim*.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 97.

## GALEN

σαρκωδέστερον ἐν τῷ στομάχῳ τρεπόμενος. ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἐναντίας ἀλλήλαις τὰς ἐπιβολὰς τῶν ἵνων ἔχουσιν οἱ χιτῶνες οὗτοι, τὸ φαινόμενον αὐτὸς μαρτυρεῖ. τίνος δ' ἔνεκα τοιοῦτοι γεγόνασιν, Ἐρασίστρατος μὲν οὐδ' ἐπεχείρησεν εἰπεῖν, ἡμεῖς δ' ἐροῦμεν.

169 'Ο μὲν ἔνδον εὐθείας ἔχει τὰς ἴνας, ὀλκῆς γὰρ ἔνεκα γέγονεν· ὁ δ' ἔξωθεν ἐγκαρσίας ὑπὲρ τοῦ κατὰ κύκλου περιστέλλεσθαι· ἐκάστῳ γὰρ τῶν κινουμένων ὄργανων ἐν τοῖς σώμασι κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἵνων θέσεις αἱ κινήσεις εἰσίν. ἐπ' αὐτῶν δὲ πρῶτον τῶν μυῶν, εἰς βούλει, βασάνισον τὸν λόγον, ἐφ' ὧν καὶ αἱ ἴνες ἐναργέσταται καὶ αἱ κινήσεις αὐτῶν ὄρθωνται διὰ σφοδρότητα. μετὰ δὲ τοὺς μῦν ἐπὶ τὰ φυσικὰ τῶν ὄργάνων ἥθι καὶ πάντ' ὄψει κατὰ τὰς ἴνας κινούμενα καὶ διὰ τοῦθ' ἐκάστῳ μὲν τῶν ἐντέρων στρογγύλαι καθ' ἐκάτερον τῶν χιτῶνων αἱ ἴνες εἰσὶ· περιστέλλονται γὰρ μόνον, ἐλκουσι δ' οὐδέν. ἡ γαστὴρ δὲ τῶν ἵνων τὰς μὲν εὐθείας ἔχει χάριν ὀλκῆς, τὰς δ' ἐγκαρσίας ἔνεκα περιστολῆς· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς μυσὶν ἐκάστης τῶν ἵνων τεινομένης τε καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλκομένης αἱ κινήσεις γίγνονται, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον κἀν τῇ γαστρί· τῶν μὲν οὖν ἐγκαρσίων ἵνων τεινομένων ἔλαττον ἀνάγκη γί-

---

<sup>1</sup> It appears to me, from comparison between this and other passages in Galen's writings (notably *Use of Parts*, iv., 8), that he means by the "two coats" simply the mucous and the muscular coats. In this case the "straight" or "longitudinal" fibres of the inner coat would be the *rugae*; the "circular" fibres of the inner intestinal coat would be the *valvulae conniventes*.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

nature in the gullet. Now simple observation will testify that these coats have their fibres inserted in contrary directions.<sup>1</sup> And, although Erasistratus did not attempt to say for what reason they are like this, I am going to do so.

The inner coat has its fibres straight, since it exists for the purpose of traction. The outer coat has its fibres transverse, for the purpose of peristalsis.<sup>2</sup> In fact, the movements of each of the *mobile* organs of the body depend on the setting of the fibres. Now please test this assertion first in the muscles themselves; in these the fibres are most distinct, and their movements visible owing to their vigour. And after the muscles, pass to the *physical* organs,<sup>3</sup> and you will see that they all move in correspondence with their fibres. This is why the fibres throughout the intestines are circular in both coats—they only contract peristaltically, they do not exercise traction. The stomach, again, has some of its fibres longitudinal for the purpose of traction and the others transverse for the purpose of peristalsis.<sup>2</sup> For just as the movements in the muscles<sup>4</sup> take place when each of the fibres becomes tightened and drawn towards its origin, such also is what happens in the stomach ; when the transverse fibres tighten, the breadth of

<sup>2</sup> The term here rendered *peristalsis* is *peristole* in Greek ; it is applied only to the intermittent movements of muscles placed circularly round a lumen or cavity, and comprehends *systole* or contraction and *diastole* or dilatation. In its modern significance, *peristalsis*, however, also includes the movements of *longitudinal* fibres. cf. p. 97, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. those containing non-striped or “involuntary” muscle fibres ; organs governed by the “natural” pneuma ; cf. p. 186, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> By this term is meant only what we should call the “voluntary” muscles.

γνεσθαι τὸ εὑρος τῆς περιεχομένης ὑπ' αὐτῶν κοιλότητος, τῶν δ' εὐθειῶν ἐλκομένων τε καὶ εἰς ἑαυτὰς συναγομένων οὐκ ἐνδέχεται μὴ οὐ συναι-  
 170 ρεῖσθαι τὸ μῆκος. ἀλλὰ μὴν || ἐναργῶς γε φαίνεται καταπινόντων συναιρούμενον καὶ τοσοῦτον ὁ λάρυγξ ἀνατρέχων, ὅσον ὁ στόμαχος κατασπᾶ-  
 ται, καὶ ὅταν γε συμπληρωθείσης τῆς ἐν τῷ καταπίνειν ἐνεργείας ἀφεθῇ τῆς τάσεως ὁ στόμα-  
 χος, ἐναργῶς πάλιν φαίνεται καταφερόμενος ὁ λάρυγξ· ὁ γὰρ ἐνδον χιτῶν τῆς γαστρὸς ὁ τὰς εὐθείας ἵνας ἔχων ὁ καὶ τὸν στόμαχον ὑπαλείφων καὶ τὸ στόμα τοῖς ἐντὸς μέρεσιν ἐπεκτείνεται τοῦ λάρυγγος, ὥστ' οὐκ ἐνδέχεται κατασπώμενον αὐτὸν ὑπὸ τῆς κοιλίας μὴ οὐ συνεπισπᾶσθαι καὶ τὸν λάρυγγα.

"Οτι δ' αἱ περιφερεῖς ἴνες, αἱς περιστέλλεται τά τ' ἄλλα μόρια καὶ ἡ γαστήρ, οὐ συναιροῦσι τὸ μῆκος, ἀλλὰ συστέλλουσι καὶ στενοῦσι τὴν εὐρύτητα, καὶ παρ' αὐτοῦ λαβεῖν ἔστιν ὄμολογού-  
 μενον Ἐρασιστράτου<sup>1</sup> περιστέλλεσθαι γάρ φησι τοῖς σιτίοις τὴν γαστέρα κατὰ τὸν τῆς πέψεως ἅπαντα χρόνον. ἀλλ' εἰ περιστέλλεται μέν, οὐδὲν δὲ τοῦ μήκους ἀφαιρεῖται τῆς κοιλίας, οὐκ ἔστι τῆς περισταλτικῆς κυνήσεως ἴδιον τὸ κατα-  
 σπᾶν κάτω τὸν στόμαχον. ὅπερ γὰρ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος εἶπε, τοῦτο μόνον αὐτὸν συμ-  
 171 βήσεται τὸ τῶν ἄνω συστελλομένων διαστέλ-  
 λεσθαι τὰ κάτω. τοῦτο δ' ὅτι, κανεὶς εἰς νεκροῦ τὸν στόμαχον ὕδατος ἐγχέης, φαίνεται γυγνόμενον, οὐδεὶς ἀγνοεῖ. ταῖς γὰρ τῶν ὑλῶν διὰ στενοῦ

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 97.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

the cavity contained by them becomes less; and when the longitudinal fibres contract and draw in upon themselves, the length must necessarily be curtailed. This curtailment of length, indeed, is well seen in the act of swallowing: the larynx is seen to rise upwards to exactly the same degree that the gullet is drawn downwards; while, after the process of swallowing has been completed and the gullet is released from tension, the larynx can be clearly seen to sink down again. This is because the inner coat of the stomach, which has the longitudinal fibres and which also lines the gullet and the mouth, extends to the interior of the larynx, and it is thus impossible for it to be drawn down by the stomach without the larynx being involved in the traction.

Further, it will be found acknowledged in Erasistratus's own writings that the circular fibres (by which the stomach as well as other parts performs its contractions) do not curtail its length, but contract and lessen its breadth. For he says that the stomach contracts peristaltically round the food during the whole period of digestion. But if it contracts, without in any way being diminished in length, this is because downward traction of the gullet is not a property of the movement of circular peristalsis. For what alone happens, as Erasistratus himself said, is that when the upper parts contract the lower ones dilate.<sup>1</sup> And everyone knows that this can be plainly seen happening even in a dead man, if water be poured down his throat; this symptom<sup>2</sup> results from the passage of matter through a narrow

<sup>1</sup> For "symptom," cf. p. 13, and p. 12, note 3. "Transitum namque materiae per angustum corpus id accidens consequitur" (Linacre). Less a "result" or "consequence" than an "accompaniment."

σώματος ὁδοιπορίαις ἀκόλουθόν ἐστι τὸ σύμπτωμα· θαυμαστὸν γάρ, εἰ διερχομένου τινὸς αὐτὸν ὅγκου μὴ διασταλήσεται. οὐκοῦν τὸ μὲν τῶν ἄνω συστελλομένων διαστέλλεσθαι τὰ κάτω κοινόν ἐστι καὶ τοῖς νεκροῖς σώμασι, δι’ ὧν ὅπωσοῦν τι διεξέρχεται, καὶ τοῖς ζῶσιν, εἴτε περιστέλλοιτο τοῖς διερχομένοις εἴθ’ ἔλκοιτο.

Τὸ δὲ τῆς τοῦ μήκους συναιρέσεως ἴδιον τῶν τὰς εὐθείας ἵνας ἔχοντων ὄργάνων, ἵν’ ἐπισπάσωνται τι. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐδείχθη κατασπώμενος ὁ στόμαχος, οὐ γάρ ἀν εἶλκε τὸν λάρυγγα· δῆλον οὖν, ὡς ἡ γαστὴρ ἔλκει τὰ σιτία διὰ τοῦ στομάχου.

Καὶ ἡ κατὰ τὸν ἔμετον δὲ τῶν ἐμουμένων ἄχρι τοῦ στόματος φορὰ πάντως μέν που καὶ αὐτὴ τὰ μὲν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀναφερομένων διατεινόμενα μέρη τοῦ στομάχου διεστῶτα κέκτηται, τῶν πρόσω δ’ ὅ τι ἀν ἐκάστοτ’ ἐπιλαμβάνηται, τοῦτ’ ἀρχόμενον 172 διαστέλλεται, τὸ δ’ || ὅπισθεν καταλείπει δῆλονότι συστελλόμενον, ὥσθ’ ὄμοίαν εἰναι πάντη τὴν διάθεσιν τοῦ στομάχου κατά γε τοῦτο τῇ τῶν καταπινόντων· ἀλλὰ τῆς ὀλκῆς μὴ παρούσης τὸ μῆκος ὅλον ἵσον ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις συμπτώμασι διαφυλάττεται.

Διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ καταπίνειν ῥᾶόν ἐστιν ἡ ἐμεῖν, ὅτι καταπίνεται μὲν ἀμφοῖν τῆς γαστρὸς τῶν χιτώνων ἐνεργούντων, τοῦ μὲν ἐντὸς ἔλκοντος, τοῦ δὲ ἕκτὸς περιστελλομένου τε καὶ συνεπωθούντος, ἐμεῖται δὲ θατέρου μόνου τοῦ ἔξωθεν ἐνεργούντος,

<sup>1</sup> i.e. this is a purely mechanical process.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

channel ; it would be extraordinary if the channel did not dilate when a mass was passing through it.<sup>1</sup> Obviously then the dilatation of the lower parts along with the contraction of the upper is common both to dead bodies, when anything whatsoever is passing through them, and to living ones, whether they contract peristaltically round their contents or attract them.<sup>2</sup>

Curtailment of length, on the other hand, is peculiar to organs which possess longitudinal fibres for the purpose of attraction. But the gullet was shown to be pulled down ; for otherwise it would not have drawn upon the larynx. It is therefore clear that the stomach attracts food by the gullet.

Further, in *vomiting*, the mere passive conveyance of rejected matter up to the mouth will certainly itself suffice to keep open those parts of the oesophagus which are distended by the returned food ; as it occupies each part in front [above], it first dilates this, and of course leaves the part behind [below] contracted. Thus, in this respect at least, the condition of the gullet is precisely similar to what it is in the act of swallowing.<sup>3</sup> But there being no *traction*, the whole length remains equal in such cases.

And for this reason it is easier to swallow than to vomit, for deglutition results from *both* coats of the stomach being brought into action, the inner one exerting a pull and the outer one helping by peristalsis and propulsion, whereas emesis occurs from the outer coat alone functioning, without there

<sup>1</sup> i.e. this phenomenon is a proof neither of *peristole* nor of attraction. cf. p. 97, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> Contraction and dilatation of course being reversed.

οὐδενὸς ἔλκουντος εἰς τὸ στόμα. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ὥσπερ  
 ἡ τῆς γαστρὸς ὄρεξις προηγεῖτο τοῦ καταπίνειν  
 τὰ σιτία, τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καν τοῦς ἐμέτοις  
 ἐπιθυμεῖ τι τῶν κατὰ τὸ στόμα μορίων τοῦ γιγνο-  
 μένου παθήματος, ἀλλ' ἅμφω τῆς γαστρὸς αὐτῆς  
 εἰσιν ἐναντίαι διαθέσεις, ὄρεγομένης μὲν καὶ  
 προσιεμένης τὰ χρήσιμά τε καὶ οἰκεῖα, δυσχεραι-  
 νούστης δὲ καὶ ἀποτριβομένης τὰ ἀλλότρια. διὸ  
 καὶ τὸ καταπίνειν αὐτὸ τοῖς μὲν ἵκανῷς ὄρεγο-  
 μένοις τῶν οἰκείων ἐδεσμάτων τῇ γαστρὶ τάχιστα  
 γίγνεται, σαφῶς ἔλκουντης αὐτὰ καὶ κατασπώσης  
 πρὶν ἡ μασθῆναι, τοῖς δ' ἦτοι φάρμακόν τι κατ'  
 173 ἀνάγκην πίνουσιν ἡ σιτίον ἐν χώρᾳ φαρμάκου  
 προσφερομένοις ἀνιαρὰ καὶ μόγις ἡ κατάποσις  
 αὐτῶν ἐπιτελεῖται.

Δῆλος οὖν ἐστιν ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων ὁ μὲν ἔνδον  
 χιτῶν τῆς γαστρὸς ὁ τὰς εὐθείας ἔχων ἴνας τῆς  
 ἐκ τοῦ στόματος εἰς αὐτὴν ὄλκῆς ἔνεκα γεγονὼς  
 καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἐν ταῖς καταπόσεσι μόναις ἐνεργῶν,  
 ὁ δ' ἔξωθεν ὁ τὰς ἐγκαρσίας ἔχων ἔνεκα μὲν τοῦ  
 περιστέλλεσθαι τοῖς ἐνυπάρχουσι καὶ προωθεῖν  
 αὐτὰ τοιοῦτος ἀποτελεσθείς, ἐνεργῶν δ' οὐδὲν  
 ἤττον ἐν τοῖς ἐμέτοις ἡ ταῖς καταπόσεσιν. ἐναρ-  
 γέστατα δὲ μαρτυρεῖ τῷ λεγομένῳ καὶ τὸ κατὰ  
 τὰς χάννας τε καὶ τοὺς συνόδοντας γιγνόμενον·  
 εὑρίσκεται γὰρ ἐνίστε τούτων ἡ γαστὴρ ἐν τῷ  
 στόματι καθάπερ καὶ ὁ Ἀριστοτέλης ἐν ταῖς περὶ

<sup>1</sup> The *channa* is a kind of sea-perch; “a species of *Serranus*, either *S. scriba* or *S. cabrilla*” (D’Arcy W. Thompson). Cf. Aristotle’s *Nat. Hist.* (D’Arcy Thompson’s edition, Oxford, 1910), IV., xi., 538 A, 20. The *synodont* “is not to be identified with certainty, but is supposed to be *Dentex vul-*

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

being any kind of pull towards the mouth. For, although the swallowing of food is ordinarily preceded by a feeling of desire on the part of the stomach, there is in the case of vomiting no corresponding desire from the mouth-parts for the experience ; the two are opposite dispositions of the stomach itself ; it yearns after and tends towards what is advantageous and proper to it, it loathes and rids itself of what is foreign. Thus the actual process of swallowing occurs very quickly in those who have a good appetite for such foods as are proper to the stomach ; this organ obviously draws them in and down before they are masticated ; whereas in the case of those who are forced to take a medicinal draught or who take food as medicine, the swallowing of these articles is accomplished with distress and difficulty.

From what has been said, then, it is clear that the inner coat of the stomach (that containing longitudinal fibres) exists for the purpose of exerting a pull from mouth to stomach, and that it is only in deglutition that it is active, whereas the external coat, which contains transverse fibres, has been so constituted in order that it may contract upon its contents and propel them forward ; this coat furthermore, functions in vomiting no less than in swallowing. The truth of my statement is also borne out by what happens in the case of the *channae* and *synodontis*<sup>1</sup> ; the stomachs of these animals are sometimes found in their mouths, as also Aristotle writes in his *History garis*, " that is, an edible Mediterranean perch. " It is not the stomach," adds Prof. Thompson, " but the air-bladder that gets everted and hangs out of the mouth in fishes, especially when they are hauled in from a considerable depth." cf. *H. A.*, VIII., ii., 591 b, 5.

ζώων ἔγραψεν ἴστορίαις καὶ προστίθησί γε τὴν αἰτίαν ὑπὸ λαιμαργίας αὐτοῖς τοῦτο συμβαίνειν φάσκων.

"Εχει γὰρ ὡδε· κατὰ τὰς σφοδροτέρας ὄρέξεις ἄνω προστρέχει πᾶσι τοῖς ζῷοις ἡ γαστήρ, ὥστε τινὲς τοῦ πάθους αἴσθησιν ἐναργῆ σχόντες ἔξερπειν αὐτοῖς φασι τὴν κοιλίαν, ἐνίων δὲ μασω-  
174 μένων ἔτι καὶ μήπω || καλῶς ἐν τῷ στόματι τὰ σιτία κατεργασαμένων ἔξαρπάζει φανερῶς ἀκόντων. ἐφ' ὧν οὖν ζώων φύσει λαιμάργων ὑπαρχόντων ἡ τ' εὔρυχωρία τοῦ στόματός ἐστι δαψιλῆς ἡ τε τῆς γαστρὸς θέσις ἐγγύς, ὡς ἐπὶ συνόδοντός τε καὶ χάνυης, οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, δταν ἵκανῶς πεινάσαντα διώκῃ τι τῶν μικροτέρων ζώων, εἰτ' ἡδη πλησίον ἡ τοῦ συλλαβεῖν, ἀνα- τρέχειν ἐπειγούσης τῆς ἐπιθυμίας εἰς τὸ στόμα τὴν γαστέρα. γενέσθαι δ' ἄλλως ἀμήχανον τοῦτο μὴ οὐχ ὥσπερ διὰ χειρὸς τοῦ στομάχου τῆς γαστρὸς ἐπισπωμένης εἰς ἑαυτὴν τὰ σιτία. καθά- περ γὰρ καὶ ἡμεῖς ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐνίστε τῇ χειρὶ συνεπεκτείνομεν ὅλους ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἔνεκα τοῦ θάττου ἐπιδράξασθαι τοῦ προκειμένου σώματος, οὗτω καὶ ἡ γαστήρ οἶον χειρὶ τῷ στομάχῳ συνεπεκτείνεται. καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἐφ' ὧν ζώων ἄμα τὰ τρία ταυτὶ συνέπεσεν, ἔφεσίς τε σφοδρὰ τῆς τροφῆς δ τε στόμαχος μικρὸς ἡ τ' εὔρυχωρία τοῦ στόματος δαψιλῆς, ἐπὶ τούτων ὀλίγη ρόπη τῆς ἐπεκτάσεως εἰς τὸ στόμα τὴν κοιλίαν ὅλην ἀνα- φέρει.

"Ηρκει μὲν οὖν ἵσως ἀνδρὶ φυσικῷ παρ' αὐτῆς  
175 μόνης τῆς κατασκευῆς τῶν ὄργανων τὴν ἔνδειξιν τῆς ἐνεργείας λαμβάνειν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ μάτην γ'

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

*of Animals*; he also adds the cause of this: he says that it is owing to their voracity.

The facts are as follows. In all animals, when the appetite is very intense, the stomach rises up, so that some people who have a clear perception of this condition say that their stomach "creeps out" of them; in others, who are still masticating their food and have not yet worked it up properly in the mouth, the stomach obviously snatches away the food from them against their will. In those animals, therefore, which are naturally voracious, in whom the mouth cavity is of generous proportions, and the stomach situated close to it (as in the case of the synodont and channa), it is in no way surprising that, when they are sufficiently hungry and are pursuing one of the smaller animals, and are just on the point of catching it, the stomach should, under the impulse of desire, spring into the mouth. And this cannot possibly take place in any other way than by the stomach drawing the food to itself by means of the gullet, as though by a hand. In fact, just as we ourselves, in our eagerness to grasp more quickly something lying before us, sometimes stretch out our whole bodies along with our hands, so also the stomach stretches itself forward along with the gullet, which is, as it were, its hand. And thus, in these animals in whom those three factors co-exist—an excessive propensity for food, a small gullet, and ample mouth proportions—in these, any slight tendency to movement forwards brings the whole stomach into the mouth.

Now the constitution of the organs might itself suffice to give a naturalist an indication of their functions. For Nature would never have purpose-

ἀν ἡ φύσις ἐκ δυοῖν χιτώνων ἐναντίως ἀλλήλοις  
 ἔχόντων ἀπειργάσατο τὸν οἰσοφάγον, εἰ μὴ καὶ  
 διαφόρως ἐκάτερος αὐτῶν ἐνεργεῖν ἔμελλεν. ἀλλ'  
 ἐπεὶ πάντα μᾶλλον ἡ τὰ τῆς φύσεως ἕργα δια-  
 γιγνώσκειν οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἐρασίστρατόν εἰσιν  
 ἴκανοί, φέρε κακ τῆς τῶν ζώων ἀνατομῆς ἐπι-  
 δείξωμεν αὐτοῖς, ώς ἐκάτερος τῶν χιτώνων ἐνεργεῖ  
 τὴν εἰρημένην ἐνέργειαν. εἰ δή τι λαβὼν ζῷον,  
 εἴτα γυμνώσας αὐτοῦ τὰ περικείμενα τῷ στομάχῳ  
 σώματα χωρὶς τοῦ διατεμεῖν τινα τῶν νεύρων ἡ  
 τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἡ τῶν φλεβῶν τῶν αὐτόθι τεταγ-  
 μένων ἐθέλοις ἀπὸ τῆς γένυος ἔως τοῦ θώρακος  
 εὐθείας τομαῖς διελεῖν τὸν ἔξω χιτῶνα τὸν τὰς  
 ἐγκαρσίας ἵνας ἔχοντα κάπειτα τῷ ζῷῳ τροφὴν  
 προσενέγκοις, δύψει καταπίνον αὐτὸν καίτοι τῆς  
 περισταλτικῆς ἐνεργείας ἀπολαμψίας. εἰ δὲ αὖ  
 πάλιν ἐφ' ἑτέρου ζώου διατέμοις ἀμφοτέρους τοὺς  
 χιτῶνας τομαῖς ἐγκαρσίας, θεάσῃ καὶ τοῦτο  
 καταπίνον οὐκέτ' ἐνεργοῦντος τοῦ ἐντός. φέδηλον,  
 ὅτι καὶ διὰ θατέρου μὲν αὐτῶν καταπίνειν οἷόν  
 176 τ' ἔστιν, || ἀλλὰ χεῖρον ἡ δι' ἀμφοτέρων. πρὸς  
 γάρ αὖ τοὺς ἄλλοις καὶ τοῦτ' ἔστι θεάσασθαι  
 σαφῶς ἐπὶ τῆς εἰρημένης ἀνατομῆς, ώς ἐν τῷ  
 καταπίνειν ὑποπίμπλαται πνεύματος ὁ στόμαχος  
 τοῦ συγκαταπινομένου τοῖς σιτίοις, ὃ περιστελλο-  
 μένου μὲν τοῦ ἔξωθεν χιτῶνος ὥθεῖται ῥαδίως  
 εἰς τὴν γαστέρα σὺν τοῖς ἐδέσμασι, μόνου δὲ τοῦ  
 ἔνδον ὑπάρχοντος ἐμποδὼν ἵσταται τῇ φορᾷ τῶν

<sup>1</sup> Under the term "neura," tendons were often included as well as nerves. Similarly in modern Dutch the word *zenuw* ("sinew") means both a tendon and a nerve; *zenuwachtig* = "nervous."

lessly constructed the oesophagus of two coats with contrary dispositions ; they must also have each been meant to have a different action. The Erasistratean school, however, are capable of anything rather than of recognizing the effects of Nature. Come, therefore, let us demonstrate to them by animal dissection as well that each of the two coats does exercise the activity which I have stated. Take an animal, then ; lay bare the structures surrounding the gullet, without severing any of the nerves,<sup>1</sup> arteries, or veins which are there situated ; next divide with vertical incisions, from the lower jaw to the thorax, the outer coat of the oesophagus (that containing transverse fibres) ; then give the animal food and you will see that it still swallows although the peristaltic function has been abolished. If, again, in another animal, you cut through both coats<sup>2</sup> with transverse incisions, you will observe that this animal also swallows although the inner coat is no longer functioning. From this it is clear that the animal can also swallow by either of the two coats, although not so well as by both. For the following also, in addition to other points, may be distinctly observed in the dissection which I have described—that during deglutition the gullet becomes slightly filled with air which is swallowed along with the food, and that, when the outer coat is contracting, this air is easily forced with the food into the stomach, but that, when there only exists an inner coat, the air impedes the conveyance of

<sup>2</sup> Rather than the alternative reading, *τὸν ἔσωθεν χιτῶνα*. Galen apparently supposes that the outer coat will not be damaged, as the cuts will pass *between* its fibres. These cuts would be, presumably, short ones, at various levels, no single one of them involving the whole circumference of the gullet.

σιτίων διατεῖνόν τ' αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν ἐνέργειαν  
ἐμποδίζον.

Αλλ' οὕτε τούτων οὐδὲν Ἐρασίστρατος εἰπεν  
οὐθ' ὡς ἡ σκολιὰ θέσις τοῦ στομάχου διαβάλλει  
σαφῶς τὸ δόγμα τῶν νομιζόντων ὑπὸ τῆς ἄνωθεν  
βολῆς μόνης ποδηγούμενα μέχρι τῆς γαστρὸς  
ἴέναι τὰ καταπινόμενα. μόνον δ' ὅτι πολλὰ τῶν  
μακροτραχήλων ζῷων ἐπικεκυφότα καταπίνει,  
καλῶς εἰπεν. φ δῆλον, ὅτι τὸ φαινόμενον οὐ  
τὸ πῶς καταπίνομεν ἀποδείκνυσιν, ἀλλὰ τὸ πῶς  
οὐ καταπίνομεν· ὅτι γάρ μὴ διὰ μόνης τῆς ἄνωθεν  
βολῆς, ἐκ τούτου δῆλον· οὐ μὴν εἴθ' ἐλκούσης  
τῆς κοιλίας εἴτε παράγοντος αὐτὰ τοῦ στομάχου,  
177 δῆλον ἡδη πω. ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς γε || πάντας τοὺς  
λογισμοὺς εἰπόντες τούς τ' ἐκ τῆς κατασκευῆς  
τῶν ὄργάνων ὄρμωμένους καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων  
συμπτωμάτων τῶν τε πρὸ τοῦ γυμνωθῆναι τὸν  
στόμαχον καὶ γυμνωθέντος, ὡς ὀλύγῳ πρόσθεν  
ἐλέγομεν, ἵκανῶς ἐνεδειξάμεθα τοῦ μὲν ἔλκειν  
ἔνεκα τὸν ἐντὸς χιτῶνα, τοῦ δ' ἀπωθεῖν τὸν ἐκτὸς  
γεγονέναι.

Προύθέμεθα μὲν οὖν ἀποδεῖξαι τὴν καθεκτικὴν  
δύναμιν ἐν ἑκάστῳ τῶν ὄργάνων οὖσαν, ὥσπερ  
ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ τὴν ἐλκτικήν τε καὶ προσέτι  
τὴν ἀλλοιωτικήν. ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς ἀκολουθίας τοῦ  
λόγου τὰς τέτταρας ἀπεδείξαμεν ὑπαρχούσας τῇ  
γαστρί, τὴν ἐλκτικὴν μὲν ἐν τῷ καταπίνειν, τὴν  
καθεκτικὴν δ' ἐν τῷ πέττειν, τὴν ἀπωστικὴν δ' ἐν  
τοῖς ἐμέτοις καὶ ταῖς τῶν πεπεμμένων σιτίων εἰς  
τὸ λεπτὸν ἔντερον ὑποχωρήσειν, αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν  
πέψιν ἀλλοιώσιν ὑπάρχειν.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. VIII

food, by distending this coat and hindering its action.

But Erasistratus said nothing about this, nor did he point out that the oblique situation of the gullet clearly confutes the teaching of those who hold that it is simply by virtue of the impulse from above that food which is swallowed reaches the stomach. The only correct thing he said was that many of the long-necked animals bend down to swallow. Hence, clearly, the observed fact does not show how we swallow but how we do not swallow. For from this observation it is clear that swallowing is not due merely to the impulse from above; it is yet, however, not clear whether it results from the food being attracted by the stomach, or conducted by the gullet. For our part, however, having enumerated all the different considerations—those based on the constitution of the organs, as well as those based on the other symptoms which, as just mentioned, occur both before and after the gullet has been exposed—we have thus sufficiently proved that the inner coat exists for the purpose of attraction and the outer for the purpose of propulsion.

Now the original task we set before ourselves was to demonstrate that the *retentive* faculty exists in every one of the organs, just as in the previous book we proved the existence of the *attractive*, and, over and above this, the *alterative* faculty. Thus, in the natural course of our argument, we have demonstrated these four faculties existing in the stomach—the attractive faculty in connection with swallowing, the retentive with digestion, the expulsive with vomiting and with the descent of digested food into the small intestine—and digestion itself we have shown to be a process of *alteration*.

## IX

Ούκουν ἔτ' ἀπορήσομεν οὐδὲ περὶ τοῦ σπληνός,  
εἰ ἔλκει μὲν τὸ οἰκεῖον, ἀποκρίνει δὲ τὸ ἀλλότριον,  
ἀλλοιοῦν δὲ καὶ κατέχειν, ὅσον ἀν ἐπισπάσηται;  
πέφυκεν, οὐδὲ περὶ ἥπατος ἡ φλεβὸς ἡ ἀρτηρίας  
178 ἡ καρδίας ἡ τῶν || ἄλλων τινός· ἀναγκαῖαι γὰρ  
ἔδειχθησαν αἱ τέτταρες αὗται δυνάμεις ἅπαντι<sup>1</sup>  
μορίῳ τῷ μέλλοντι θρέψεσθαι καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' αὐτὰς  
ὑπηρέτιδας εἶναι θρέψεως ἔφαμεν· ώς γὰρ τὸ τῶν  
ἀνθρώπων ἀποπάτημα τοῖς κυσὶν ἥδιστον, οὕτω  
καὶ τὰ τοῦ ἥπατος περιττώματα τὸ μὲν τῷ  
σπληνί, τὸ δὲ τῇ χοληδόχῳ κύστει, τὸ δὲ τοῖς  
νεφροῖς οἰκεῖον.

## X

Καὶ λέγειν ἔτι περὶ τῆς τούτων γενέσεως οὐκ  
ἀν ἐθέλοιμι μεθ' Ἰπποκράτην καὶ Πλάτωνα καὶ  
Ἀριστοτέλην καὶ Διοκλέα καὶ Πραξαγόραν καὶ  
Φιλότιμον· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν δυνάμεων  
εἴπον ἄν, εἴ τις τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἀκριβῶς ἔξειργά-  
σατο τὸν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν λόγον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ μὲν παλαιοὶ καλῶς ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν  
ἀποφηνάμενοι παρέλιπον ἀγωνίσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ,  
μηδὲ ὑπονοήσαντες ἔσεσθαι τινας εἰς τοσοῦτον  
ἀναισχύντους σοφιστάς, ώς ἀντιλέγειν ἐπιχειρῆ-  
σαι τοῖς ἐναργέσιν, οἱ νεώτεροι δὲ τὸ μέν τι

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 205.

## IX

CONCERNING the spleen, also, we shall therefore have no further doubts<sup>1</sup> as to whether it attracts what is proper to it, rejects what is foreign, and has a natural power of altering and retaining all that it attracts ; nor shall we be in any doubt as to the liver, veins, arteries, heart, or any other organ. For these four faculties have been shown to be necessary for every part which is to be nourished ; this is why we have called these faculties the *handmaids of nutrition*. For just as human faeces are most pleasing to dogs, so the residual matters from the liver are, some of them, proper to the spleen,<sup>2</sup> others to the gall-bladder, and others to the kidneys.

## X

I SHOULD not have cared to say anything further as to the origin of these [surplus substances] after Hippocrates, Plato, Aristotle, Diocles, Praxagoras, and Philotimus, nor indeed should I even have said anything about the *faculties*, if any of our predecessors had worked out this subject thoroughly.

While, however, the statements which the Ancients made on these points were correct, they yet omitted to defend their arguments with logical proofs ; of course they never suspected that there could be sophists so shameless as to try to contradict obvious facts. More recent physicians, again, have been

<sup>1</sup> Thus Galen elsewhere calls the spleen a mere *emunctory* (*ἐκμαγεῖον*) of the liver. cf. p. 214, note 1.

νικηθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν σοφισμάτων ἐπείσθησαν  
αὐτοῖς, τὸ δέ τι καὶ ἀντιλέγειν ἐπιχειρήσαντες  
ἀποδεῖν μοι πολὺ τῆς τῶν παλαιῶν ἔδοξαν δυνά-  
179 μεως, || διὰ τοῦθ', ὡς ἀν ἐκείνων αὐτῶν, εἴπερ ἔτ'  
ἥν τις, ἀγωνίσασθαι μοι δοκεῖ πρὸς τοὺς ἀνατρέ-  
ποντας τῆς τέχνης τὰ κάλλιστα, καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως  
ἐπειράθην συνθεῖναι τοὺς λόγους.

"Οτι δ' ἡ οὐδὲν ἡ παντάπασιν ἀνύσω τι σμικ-  
ρόν, οὐκ ἀγνοῶ· πάμπολλα γὰρ εὐρίσκω τελέως  
μὲν ἀποδεδειγμένα τοῖς παλαιοῖς, οὗτε δὲ συνετὰ  
τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν νῦν δι' ἀμαθίαν ἀλλ' οὐδ'  
ἐπιχειρούμενα γνωσκεσθαι διὰ ῥᾳθυμίαν, οὗτ',  
εἰ καὶ γνωσθείη τινί, δικαίως ἔξεταζόμενα.

Χρὴ γὰρ τὸν μέλλοντα γνώσεσθαι τι τῶν πολ-  
λῶν ἄμεινον εὐθὺς μὲν καὶ τῇ φύσει καὶ τῇ πρώτῃ  
διδασκαλίᾳ πολὺ τῶν ἄλλων διενεγκεῖν· ἐπειδὰν  
δὲ γένηται μειράκιον, ἀληθείας τινὰ σχεῖν ἐρω-  
τικὴν μανίαν, ὥσπερ ἐνθουσιῶντα καὶ μήθ' ἡμέρας  
μήτε νυκτὸς διαλείπειν σπεύδοντά τε καὶ συντε-  
ταμένον ἐκμαθεῖν, ὅσα τοῖς ἐνδοξοτάτοις εἴρηται  
τῶν παλαιῶν· ἐπειδὰν δ' ἐκμάθη, κρίνειν αὐτὰ  
καὶ βασανίζειν χρόνῳ παμπόλλῳ καὶ σκοπεῖν,  
πόσα μὲν ὁμολογεῖ τοῖς ἐναργώς φαινομένοις,  
180 πόσα δὲ διαφέρεται, || καὶ οὕτω τὰ μὲν αἱρεῖσθαι,  
τὰ δ' ἀποστρέφεσθαι. τῷ μὲν δὴ τοιούτῳ πάνυ  
σφόδρα χρησίμους ἥλπικα τοὺς ἡμετέρους ἔσε-



### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. x

partly conquered by the sophistries of these fellows and have given credence to them ; whilst others who attempted to argue with them appear to me to lack to a great extent the power of the Ancients. For this reason I have attempted to put together my arguments in the way in which it seems to me the Ancients, had any of them been still alive, would have done, in opposition to those who would overturn the finest doctrines of our art.

I am not, however, unaware that I shall achieve either nothing at all or else very little. For I find that a great many things which have been conclusively demonstrated by the Ancients are unintelligible to the bulk of the Moderns owing to their ignorance—nay, that, by reason of their laziness, they will not even make an attempt to comprehend them ; and even if any of them have understood them, they have not given them impartial examination.

The fact is that he whose purpose is to know anything better than the multitude do must far surpass all others both as regards his nature and his early training. And when he reaches early adolescence he must become possessed with an ardent love for truth, like one inspired ; neither day nor night may he cease to urge and strain himself in order to learn thoroughly all that has been said by the most illustrious of the Ancients. And when he has learnt this, then for a prolonged period he must test and prove it, observing what part of it is in agreement, and what in disagreement with obvious fact ; thus he will choose this and turn away from that. To such an one my hope has been that my treatise would prove of the very greatest assistance. . . .

*σθαι λόγους· εἰεν δ' ἀν δλίγοι παντάπασιν οὗτοι· τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις οὕτω γενήσεται τὸ γράμμα περιττόι, ώς εὶ καὶ μῦθον ὅνῳ τις λέγοι.*

## XI

Συμπεραντέον οὖν ἡμῖν τὸν λόγον ἔνεκα τῶν τῆς ἀληθείας ἐφιεμένων ὅσα λείπει κατ' αὐτὸν ἔτι προσθεῖσιν. ώς γὰρ ἡ γαστὴρ ἔλκει μὲν ἐναργῶς καὶ κατασπᾶ τὰ σιτία τοῖς σφόδρα πεινώδεσι, πρὶν ἀκριβῶς ἐν τῷ στόματι λειωθῆναι, δυσχεραίνει δὲ καὶ ἀπωθεῖται τοῖς ἀποστοις τε καὶ πρὸς ἀνάγκην ἐσθίουσιν, οὕτω καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὄργανων ἔκαστον ἀμφοτέρας ἔχει τὰς δυνάμεις, τὴν τε τῶν οἰκείων ἐλκτικὴν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀποκριτικὴν. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο, κανένας ἐνὸς ἢ χιτῶνος ὄργανον τι συνεστώσ, ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ κύστεις ἀμφοτεραι καὶ αἱ μῆτραι καὶ αἱ φλέβες, ἀμφοτερα τῶν ἵνων ἔχει τὰ γένη, τῶν εὐθειῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἐγκαρσίων.

181 Καὶ μέν γε καὶ τρίτον τι || γένος ἵνων ἔστι <τῶν> λοξῶν, ἔλαττον πολὺ τῷ πλήθει τῶν προειρημένων δύο γενῶν. εὑρίσκεται δ' ἐν μὲν τοῖς ἐκ δυοῖν χιτῶνων συνεστηκόσιν ὄργανοις ἐν θατέρῳ μόνῳ ταῖς εὐθείαις ἵστηται ἀναμεμιγμένον, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐξ ἐνὸς ἄμα τοῖς ἄλλοις δύο γένεσι. συνεπιλαμβάνουσι δ' αὐταὶ μέγιστον τῇ τῆς καθεκτικῆς ὄνομασθείσης δυνάμεως ἐνεργείᾳ· δεῖται γὰρ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ πανταχόθεν ἐσφίγχθαι καὶ περιτετάσθαι τοῖς ἐνυπάρχουσι τὸ μόριον, ἡ

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 269.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. x.-xi

Still, such people may be expected to be quite few in number, while, as for the others, this book will be as superfluous to them as a tale told to an ass.

### XI

FOR the sake, then, of those who are aiming at truth, we must complete this treatise by adding what is still wanting in it. Now, in people who are very hungry, the stomach obviously attracts or draws down the food before it has been thoroughly softened in the mouth, whilst in those who have no appetite or who are being forced to eat, the stomach is displeased and rejects the food.<sup>1</sup> And in a similar way each of the other organs possesses both faculties—that of attracting what is proper to it, and that of rejecting what is foreign. Thus, even if there be any organ which consists of only one coat (such as the two bladders,<sup>2</sup> the uterus, and the veins), it yet possesses both kinds of fibres, the longitudinal and the transverse.

But further, there are fibres of a third kind—the *oblique*—which are much fewer in number than the two kinds already spoken of. In the organs consisting of two coats this kind of fibre is found in the one coat only, mixed with the longitudinal fibres; but in the organs composed of one coat it is found along with the other two kinds. Now, these are of the greatest help to the action of the faculty which we have named *retentive*. For during this period the part needs to be tightly contracted and stretched over its contents at every point—the

<sup>2</sup> The urinary bladders of pigs (such as Galen dissected) are thin, and appear to have only one coat.

μὲν γαστὴρ ἐν τῷ τῆς πέψεως, αἱ μῆτραι δ' ἐν τῷ τῆς κυησεως χρόνῳ παντί.

Ταῦτ' ἄρα καὶ ὁ τῆς φλεβὸς χιτὼν εἰς ὧν ἐκ πολυειδῶν ἵνων ἐγένετο καὶ τῶν τῆς ἀρτηρίας ὁ μὲν ἔξωθεν ἐκ τῶν στρογγύλων, ὁ δὲ ἕσωθεν ἐκ μὲν τῶν εὐθειῶν πλείστων, ὀλίγων δέ τινων σὺν αὐταῖς καὶ τῶν λοξῶν, ὥστε τὰς μὲν φλέβας ταῖς μῆτραις καὶ ταῖς κύστεσιν ἐοικέναι κατά γε τὴν τῶν ἵνων σύνθεσιν, εἰ καὶ τῷ πάχει λείπονται, τὰς δὲ ἀρτηρίας τῇ γαστρί. μόνα δὲ πάντων ὄργάνων ἐκ δυοῖν θ<sup>ρ</sup> ἄμα καὶ ἀμφοτέρων ἐγκαρσίας ἔχόντων τὰς ἴνας ἐγένετο τὰ ἔντερα. τὸ δὲ ὅτι  
 182 βέλτιον ἦν || τῶν τ'<sup>ρ</sup> ἄλλων ἑκάστῳ τοιούτῳ τὴν φύσιν ὑπάρχειν, οἰόνπερ καὶ νῦν ἐστι, τοῖς τ'<sup>ρ</sup> ἔντέροις ἐκ δυοῖν ὁμοίων χιτώνων συγκείσθαι, τῆς περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας ἐστίν. οὕκουν νῦν χρή ποθεῖν ἀκούειν περὶ τῶν τοιούτων, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ διὰ τί περὶ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν χιτώνων ἑκάστου τῶν ὄργάνων διαπεφώνηται τοῖς ἀνατομικοῖς ἀνδράσιν. ὑπὲρ μὲν γὰρ τούτων αὐτάρκως ἐν τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀνατομικῆς διαφωνίας εἴρηται περὶ δὲ τοῦ διότι τοιούτον ἔκαστον ἐγένετο τῶν ὄργάνων, ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται.

## XII

Νυνὶ δὲ οὐδέτερον τούτων πρόκειται λέγειν, ἀλλὰ τὰς φυσικὰς δυνάμεις μόνας ἀποδεικνύειν ἐν ἑκάστῳ τῶν ὄργάνων τέτταρας ὑπαρχούσας. ἐπὶ τοῦτ' οὖν πάλιν ἐπανελθόντες ἀναμνήσωμέν τε

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 243.

<sup>2</sup> My suggestion is that Galen refers to (1) the mucous

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xi.-xii

stomach during the whole period of digestion,<sup>1</sup> and the uterus during that of gestation.

Thus too, the coat of a vein, being single, consists of various kinds of fibres; whilst the outer coat of an artery consists of circular fibres, and its inner coat mostly of longitudinal fibres, but with a few oblique ones also amongst them. Veins thus resemble the uterus or the bladder as regards the arrangement of their fibres, even though they are deficient in thickness; similarly arteries resemble the stomach. Alone of all organs the intestines consist of two coats of which both have their fibres transverse.<sup>2</sup> Now the proof that it was *for the best* that all the organs should be naturally such as they are (that, for instance, the intestines should be composed of two coats) belongs to the subject of the *use of parts*<sup>3</sup>; thus we must not now desire to hear about matters of this kind nor why the anatomists are at variance regarding the number of coats in each organ. For these questions have been sufficiently discussed in the treatise "On Disagreement in Anatomy." And the problem as to why each organ has such and such a character will be discussed in the treatise "On the Use of Parts."

### XII

IT is not, however, our business to discuss either of these questions here, but to consider duly the *natural faculties*, which, to the number of four, exist in each organ. Returning then, to this point, let us coat, with its *valvulae conniventes*, and (2) the *muscular coat*, of which the chief layer is made up of circular fibres. *cf.* p. 262, note 1.      <sup>3</sup> Or *utility*.

τῶν ἔμπροσθεν εἰρημένων ἐπιθῶμέν τε κεφαλὴν  
 ἥδη τῷ λόγῳ παντὶ τὸ λεῖπον ἔτι προσθέντες.  
 ἐπειδὴ γὰρ ἔκαστον τῶν ἐν τῷ ζῷῳ μορίων ἔλκειν  
 εἰς ἑαυτὸν οἰκεῖον χυμὸν ἀποδέδεικται καὶ  
 πρώτη σχεδὸν αὕτη τῶν φυσικῶν ἔστι δυνάμεων,  
 183 ἐφεξῆς || ἔκεινῳ γνωστέον, ὡς οὐ πρότερον ἀπο-  
 τρίβεται τὴν ἐλχθεῖσαν <τροφὴν> ἦτοι σύμπασαν  
 ἥ καὶ τι περίττωμα αὐτῆς, πρὶν ἂν εἰς ἐναντίαν  
 μεταπέσῃ διάθεσιν ἥ αὐτὸν τὸ ὅργανον ἥ καὶ τῶν  
 περιεχομένων ἐν αὐτῷ τὰ πλεῖστα. ἥ μὲν οὖν  
 γαστήρ, ἐπειδὰν μὲν ἴκανῷς ἐμπλησθῆ τῶν σιτίων  
 καὶ τὸ χρηστότατον αὐτῶν εἰς τοὺς ἑαυτῆς χιτῶ-  
 νας ἐναπόθηται βδάλλουσα, τηνικαῦτ' ἥδη τὸ  
 λοιπὸν ἀποτρίβεται καθάπερ ἄχθος ἀλλότριον·  
 αἱ κύστεις δ', ἐπειδὰν ἔκαστον τῶν ἐλχθέντων ἥ  
 τῷ πλήθει διατείνον ἥ τῇ ποιότητι δάκνον ἀνιαρὸν  
 γένεται.

Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ αἱ μῆτραι· ἦτοι γάρ,  
 ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι φέρωσι διατεινόμεναι, τὸ λυποῦν  
 ἀποθέσθαι σπεύδοντες τῇ ποιότητι δακνόμεναι  
 τῶν ἐκχυθέντων εἰς αὐτὰς ὑγρῶν. ἐκάτερον δὲ  
 τῶν εἰρημένων γίγνεται μὲν καὶ βιαίως ἔστιν ὅτε  
 καὶ ἀμβλώσκουσι τηνικαῦτα, γίγνεται δὲ ὡς τὰ  
 πολλὰ καὶ προσηκόντως, ὅπερ οὐκ ἀμβλώσκειν  
 ἀλλ' ἀποκυῖσκειν τε καὶ τίκτειν ὀνομάζεται. τοῖς  
 μὲν οὖν ἀμβλωθριδίοις φαρμάκοις ἥ τισιν ἄλλοις  
 184 παθήμασι διαφθεῖ||ρουσι τὸ ἐμβρύον ἥ τινας τῶν  
 ὑμένων αὐτοῦ ῥηγνύοντες αἱ ἀμβλώσεις ἔπονται,  
 οὕτω δὲ κάπειδὰν ἀνιαθῶσί ποθ' αἱ μῆτραι κακῶς  
 ἔχουσαι τῇ διατάσει, ταῖς δὲ τῶν ἐμβρύων αὐτῶν  
 κινήσεις ταῖς σφοδροτάταις οἱ τόκοι, καθάπερ  
 καὶ τοῦθ' Ἰπποκράτει καλῶς εἴρηται. κοινὸν δ'



### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xii

recall what has already been said, and set a crown to the whole subject by adding what is still wanting. For when every part of the animal has been shewn to draw into itself the juice which is proper to it (this being practically *the first of the natural faculties*), the next point to realise is that the part does not get rid either of this attracted nutriment as a whole, or even of any superfluous portion of it, until either the organ itself, or the major part of its contents also have their condition reversed. Thus, when the stomach is sufficiently filled with the food and has absorbed and stored away the most useful part of it in its own coats, it then rejects the rest like an alien burden. The same happens to the bladders, when the matter attracted into them begins to give trouble either because it distends them through its quantity or irritates them by its quality.

And this also happens in the case of the uterus ; for it is either because it can no longer bear to be stretched that it strives to relieve itself of its annoyance, or else because it is irritated by the quality of the fluids poured out into it. Now both of these conditions sometimes occur with actual violence, and then *miscarriage* takes place. But for the most part they happen in a normal way, this being then called not miscarriage but *delivery* or *parturition*. Now abortifacient drugs or certain other conditions which destroy the embryo or rupture certain of its membranes are followed by abortion, and similarly also when the uterus is in pain from being in a bad state of tension ; and, as has been well said by Hippocrates, excessive movement on the part of the embryo itself brings on labour. Now

ἀπασῶν τῶν διαθέσεων ἡ ἀνία καὶ ταύτης αἴτιον τριττὸν ἡ ὅγκος περιττὸς ἡ τι βάρος ἡ δῆξις· ὅγκος μέν, ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι φέρωσι διατεινόμεναι, βάρος δ', ἐπειδὰν ὑπὲρ τὴν ρώμην αὐτῶν ἡ τὸ περιεχόμενον, δῆξις δ', ἐπειδὰν ἡτοι τὰ πρότερον ἐν τοῖς ὑμέσιν ὑγρὰ στεγόμενα ῥαγέντων αὐτῶν εἰς αὐτὰς ἐκχυθῆ τὰς μήτρας ἡ καὶ σύμπαν ἀποφθαρὲν τὸ κύμα σηπόμενόν τε καὶ διαλυόμενον εἰς μοχθηροὺς ἵχωρας οὕτως ἐρεθίζῃ τε καὶ δάκνη τὸν χιτῶνα τῶν ὑστερῶν.

'Ανάλογον οὖν ἐν ἄπασι τοῖς ὄργανοις ἔκαστα τῶν τ' ἔργων αὐτῶν τῶν φυσικῶν καὶ μέντοι τῶν παθημάτων τε καὶ νοσημάτων φαίνεται γιγνόμενα, τὰ μὲν ἐναργῶς καὶ σαφῶς οὕτως, ὡς ἀποδείξεως δεῖσθαι μηδέν, τὰ δ' ἡττον μὲν ἐναρ-  
185 γῶς, οὐ μὴν ἄγνωστά γε παντάπασι τοῖς || ἐθέ-  
λουσι προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν.

'Επὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς γαστρὸς αἱ τε δῆξεις ἐναργεῖς, διότι πλείστης αἰσθήσεως μετέχει, τά τ' ἄλλα παθήματα τά τε ναυτίαν ἐμποιοῦντα καὶ οἱ καλούμενοι καρδιωγμὸι σαφῶς ἐνδείκνυνται τὴν ἀποκριτικήν τε καὶ ἀπωστικήν τῶν ἀλλοτρίων δύναμιν, οὕτω δὲ κάππι τῶν ὑστερῶν τε καὶ τῆς κύστεως τῆς τὸ οὔρον ὑποδεχομένης· ἐναργῶς γὰρ οὖν καὶ αὕτη φαίνεται μέχρι τοσούτου τὸ ὑγρὸν ὑποδεχομένη τε καὶ ἀθροίζουσα, ἄχρις ἀν ἡτοι πρὸς τοῦ πλήθους αὐτοῦ διατεινομένη μηκέτι φέρῃ τὴν ἀνίαν ἡ πρὸς τῆς ποιότητος δακνομένη· χρονίζουν γὰρ ἔκαστον τῶν περιττωμάτων ἐν τῷ σώματι σήπεται δηλονότι, τὸ μὲν ἐλάττονι, τὸ δὲ πλείονι χρόνῳ· καὶ οὕτω δακνῶδες τε καὶ δριμὺ καὶ ἀνιαρὸν τοῖς περιέχουσι γίγνεται. οὐ μὴν

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. XII

*pain* is common to all these conditions, and of this there are three possible causes—either excessive bulk, or weight, or irritation ; bulk when the uterus can no longer support the stretching, weight when the contents surpass its strength, and irritation when the fluids which had previously been pent up in the membranes, flow out, on the rupture of these, into the uterus itself, or else when the whole foetus perishes, putrefies, and is resolved into pernicious ichors, and so irritates and bites the coat of the uterus.

In all organs, then, both their natural effects and their disorders and maladies plainly take place on analogous lines,<sup>1</sup> some so clearly and manifestly as to need no demonstration, and others less plainly, although not entirely unrecognizable to those who are willing to pay attention.

Thus, to take the case of the stomach : the irritation is evident here because this organ possesses most sensibility, and among its other affections those producing nausea and the so-called heartburn clearly demonstrate the eliminative faculty which expels foreign matter. So also in the case of the uterus and the urinary bladder ; this latter also may be plainly observed to receive and accumulate fluid until it is so stretched by the amount of this as to be incapable of enduring the pain ; or it may be the quality of the urine which irritates it; for every superfluous substance which lingers in the body must obviously putrefy, some in a shorter, and some in a longer time, and thus it becomes pungent, acrid, and burdensome to the organ which contains it. This

<sup>1</sup> Relationship between physiology and pathology again emphasized. cf. p. 188, note 2.

ἐπί γε τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ ἥπατι κύστεως ὁμοίως ἔχει·  
 φ δῆλον, ὅτι νεύρων ἥκιστα μετέχει. χρὴ δὲ  
 κάνταῦθα τόν γε φυσικὸν ἄνδρα τὸ ἀνάλογον  
 ἔξευρίσκειν. εἰ γὰρ ἔλκειν τε τὸν οἰκεῖον ἀπε-  
 δείχθη χυμόν, ὡς φαίνεσθαι πολλάκις μεστήν,  
 186 ἀποκρίνειν τε τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον οὐκ εἰς μακράν,  
 ἀναγκαῖόν ἐστιν αὐτὴν ἡ διὰ τὸ πλῆθος βαρυνο-  
 μένην ἡ τῆς ποιότητος μεταβαλλούσης ἐπὶ τὸ  
 δακνῶδες τε καὶ δριμὺ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἐφίεσθαι.  
 οὐ γὰρ δὴ τὰ μὲν σιτία τὴν ἀρχαίαν ὑπαλλάττει  
 ποιότητα ταχέως οὕτως, ὥστε, ἐπειδὰν ἐμπέσῃ  
 τοῖς λεπτοῖς ἐντέροις, εὐθὺς είναι κόπρον, ἡ χολὴ  
 δὲ οὐ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἡ τὸ οὔρον, ἐπειδὰν ἄπαξ  
 ἐκπέσῃ τῶν φλεβῶν, ἔξαλλάττει τὴν ποιότητα,  
 τάχιστα μεταβύλλοντα καὶ σηπόμενα. καὶ μὴν  
 εἴπερ ἐπί τε τῶν κατὰ τὰς ὑστέρας καὶ τὴν  
 κοιλίαν καὶ τὰ ἔντερα καὶ προσέτι τὴν τὸ οὔρον  
 ὑποδεχομένην κύστιν ἐναργῶς φαίνεται διάτασίς  
 τις ἡ δῆξις ἡ ἄχθος ἐπεγεῖρον ἔκαστον τῶν  
 ὄργάνων εἰς ἀπόκρισιν, οὐδὲν χαλεπὸν κάπι  
 τῆς χοληδόχου κύστεως ταύτῳ τοῦτον ἐννοεῖν ἐπί<sup>1</sup>  
 τε τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ὄργάνων, ἐξ ὧν δηλονότι  
 καὶ αἱ ἀρτηρίαι καὶ αἱ φλέβες εἰσίν.

## XIII

Οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τὸ διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πόρου τήν θ'  
 ὀλκὴν γίγνεσθαι καὶ τὴν ἀπόκρισιν ἐν διαφέ-  
 187 ρουσι || χρόνοις οὐδὲν ἔτι χαλεπὸν ἔξευρεῖν, εἴ γε  
 καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς ὁ στόμαχος οὐ μόνον ἐδέσματα

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. XII.—XIII

does not apply, however, in the case of the bladder alongside the liver, whence it is clear that it possesses fewer nerves than do the other organs. Here too, however, at least the physiologist<sup>1</sup> must discover an analogy. For since it was shown that the gall-bladder attracts its own special juice, so as to be often found full, and that it discharges it soon after, this desire to discharge must be either due to the fact that it is burdened by the quantity or that the bile has changed in quality to pungent and acrid. For while food does not change its original quality so fast that it is already ordure as soon as it falls into the small intestine, on the other hand the bile even more readily than the urine becomes altered in quality as soon as ever it leaves the veins, and rapidly undergoes change and putrefaction. Now, if there be clear evidence in relation to the uterus, stomach, and intestines, as well as to the urinary bladder, that there is either some distention, irritation, or burden inciting each of these organs to elimination, there is no difficulty in imagining this in the case of the gall-bladder also, as well as in the other organs,—to which obviously the arteries and veins also belong.

### XIII

NOR is there any further difficulty in ascertaining that it is through the same channel that both attraction and discharge take place at different times. For obviously the inlet to the stomach does not merely

<sup>1</sup> Or physicist—the investigator of the Physis or Nature.  
cf. p. 196, note 2. Note here the use of analogical reasoning.  
cf. p. 113, note 2.

καὶ πόματα παράγων εἰς αὐτήν, ἀλλὰ κὰν ταῖς ναυτίαις τὴν ἐναντίαν ὑπηρεσίαν ὑπηρετῶν ἐναργῶς φαίνεται, καὶ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ ἥπατι κύστεως ὁ αὐχὴν εἰς ὧν ἄμα μὲν πληροῦ δι' αὐτοῦ τὴν κύστιν, ἄμα δὲ ἐκκενοῦ, καὶ τῶν μητρῶν ὁ στόμαχος ὡσαύτως ὁδός ἔστιν εἴσω μὲν τοῦ σπέρματος, ἔξω δὲ τοῦ κυήματος.

'Αλλὰ κάνταῦθα πάλιν ἡ μὲν ἐκκριτικὴ δύναμις ἐναργής, οὐ μὴν ὁμοίως γ' αὐτῇ σαφῆς τοῖς πολλοῖς ἡ ἐλκτική· ἀλλ' Ἰπποκράτης μὲν ἀρρώστου μήτρας αἰτιώμενος αὐχένα φησί· "Οὐ γὰρ δύναται αὐτέντης ὁ στόμαχος εἰρύσαι τὴν γονήν."

'Ερασίστρατος δὲ καὶ Ἀσκληπιάδης εἰς τοσούτον ἥκουσι σοφίας, ὥστ' οὐ μόνον τὴν κοιλίαν καὶ τὰς μήτρας ἀποστεροῦσι τῆς τοιαύτης δυνάμεως ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ ἥπατι κύστιν ἄμα τοῖς νεφροῖς. καίτοι γ' ὅτι μηδὲ εἰπεῖν δυνατὸν ἔτερον αἴτιον ἡ οὔρων ἡ χολῆς διακρίσεως, ἐν τῷ πρωτῷ δέδεικται λόγῳ.

Καὶ μήτραν οὖν καὶ γαστέρα καὶ τὴν ἐπὶ 188 τῷ ἥπατι κύστιν δι' ἐνὸς καὶ ταύτοῦ στομάχου. τὴν θ' ὀλκὴν καὶ τὴν ἀπόκρισιν εὑρίσκουντες ποιουμένας μηκέτι θαυμάζωμεν, εἰ καὶ διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν ἡ φύσις ἐκκρίνει πολλάκις εἰς τὴν γαστέρα περιττώματα. τούτου δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον οὐ χρὴ θαυμάζειν, εἰ, δι' ὧν εἰς ἥπαρ ἀνεδόθη φλεβῶν ἐκ γαστρός, αὐθις εἰς αὐτὴν ἔξ ἥπατος ἐν ταῖς μακροτέραις ἀστίαις ἐλκεσθαί τις δύναται τροφή. τὸ γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀπιστεῖν

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 95.

<sup>2</sup> I. xiii. ; II. ii.

<sup>3</sup> Galen's idea is that if reversal of the direction of flow

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. XIII

conduct food and drink into this organ, but in the condition of nausea it performs the opposite service. Further, the neck of the bladder which is beside the liver, albeit single, both fills and empties the bladder. Similarly the canal of the uterus affords an entrance to the semen and an exit to the foetus.

But in this latter case, again, whilst the eliminative faculty is evident, the attractive faculty is not so obvious to most people. It is, however, the cervix which Hippocrates blames for inertia of the uterus when he says :—"Its orifice has no power of attracting semen."<sup>1</sup>

Erasistratus, however, and Asclepiades reached such heights of wisdom that they deprived not merely the stomach and the womb of this faculty but also the bladder by the liver, and the kidneys as well. I have, however, pointed out in the first book that it is impossible to assign any other cause for the secretion of urine or bile.<sup>2</sup>

Now, when we find that the uterus, the stomach and the bladder by the liver carry out attraction and expulsion through one and the same duct, we need no longer feel surprised that Nature should also frequently discharge waste-substances into the stomach through the veins. Still less need we be astonished if a certain amount of the food should, during long fasts, be drawn back from the liver into the stomach through the same veins<sup>3</sup> by which it was yielded up to the liver during absorption of nutriment.<sup>4</sup> To disbelieve such things

can occur in the *prima viae* (in vomiting), it may also be expected to occur in the *secundae viae* or absorptive channels.

<sup>1</sup> For this "delivery," "up-yield," or *anadosis*, v. p. 13, note 5.

δομοιόν ἔστι δήπου τῷ μηκέτι πιστεύειν μηδ' ὅτι τὰ καθαίροντα φάρμακα διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν στομάτων ἔξ ὅλου τοῦ σώματος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπισπᾶται χυμούς, δι' ὧν ἐμπροσθεν ἡ ἀνάδοσις ἐγένετο, ἀλλ' ἔτερα μὲν ζητεῖν ἀναδόσεως, ἔτερα δὲ καθάρσεως στόματα. καὶ μὴν εἴπερ ἐν καὶ ταύτῳ στόμα διτταῖς ὑπηρετεῖ δυνάμεσιν, ἐν διαφόροις χρόνοις εἰς τάνατία τὴν ὄλκὴν ποιουμέναις, ἐμπροσθεν μὲν τῇ κατὰ τὸ ἥπαρ, ἐν δὲ τῷ τῆς καθάρσεως καιρῷ τῇ τοῦ φαρμάκου, τί θαυμαστόν ἔστι διττὴν ὑπηρεσίαν τε καὶ χρείαν εἶναι ταῖς φλεψὶ ταῖς ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τεταγμέναις ἥπατός τε καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν, ὥσθ', ὅπότε μὲν ἐν τούτοις ἀφθονος εἴη περιεχομένη τροφή, διὰ τῶν εἰρη-  
189 μένων εἰς || ἥπαρ ἀναφέρεσθαι φλεβῶν, ὅπότε δ' εἴη κενὰ καὶ δεόμενα τρέφεσθαι, διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν αὐθις ἔξ ἥπατος ἔλκεσθαι;

Πᾶν γὰρ ἐκ παντὸς ἔλκειν φαίνεται καὶ παντὶ μεταδιδόναι καὶ μία τις εἶναι σύρροια καὶ σύμπνοια πάντων, καθάπερ καὶ τοῦθ' ὁ θειότατος Ἰπποκράτης εἶπεν. ἔλκει μὲν οὖν τὸ ἴσχυρότερον, ἐκκενοῦται δὲ τὸ ἀσθενέστερον.

'Ισχυρότερον δὲ καὶ ἀσθενέστερον ἔτερον ἐτέρου μόριον ἡ ἀπλῶς καὶ φύσει καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσιν ἔστιν ἡ ἴδιας τῷδέ τινι γίγνεται. φύσει μὲν καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις θ' ἄμα καὶ ζῷοις ἡ μὲν καρδία τοῦ ἥπατος, τὸ δ' ἥπαρ τῶν ἐντέρων τε καὶ τῆς γαστρός, αἱ δὲ ἀρτηρίαι τῶν φλεβῶν ἐλκύσαι τε τὸ χρήσιμον ἔαυταῖς ἀποκρῖναι τε τὸ μὴ τοιοῦτον

<sup>1</sup> The mesenteric veins.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

would of course be like refusing to believe that purgative drugs draw their appropriate humours from all over the body by the same stomata through which absorption previously takes place, and to look for separate stomata for absorption and purgation respectively. As a matter of fact one and the same stoma subserves two distinct faculties, and these exercise their pull at different times in opposite directions—first it subserves the pull of the liver and, during catharsis, that of the drug. What is there surprising, then, in the fact that the veins situated between the liver and the region of the stomach<sup>1</sup> fulfil a double service or purpose? Thus, when there is abundance of nutriment contained in the food-canal, it is carried up to the liver by the veins mentioned; and when the canal is empty and in need of nutriment, this is again attracted from the liver by the same veins.

For everything appears to attract from and to go shares with everything else, and, as the most divine Hippocrates has said, there would seem to be a consensus in the movements of fluids and vapours.<sup>2</sup> Thus the stronger draws and the weaker is evacuated.

Now, one part is weaker or stronger than another either absolutely, by nature, and in all cases, or else it becomes so in such and such a particular instance. Thus, by nature and in all men alike, the heart is stronger than the liver at attracting what is serviceable to it and rejecting what is not so; similarly the liver is stronger than the intestines and stomach, and

<sup>2</sup> Linacre renders: “*Una omnium confluxio ac conspiratio*”; and he adds the marginal note “*Totum corpus nostrum est conspirabile et confluxile per meatus communes.*” cf. p. 48.

## GALEN

ἰσχυρότεραι. καθ' ἔκαστον δ' ἡμῶν ἵδιως ἐν μὲν τῷδε τῷ καιρῷ τὸ ἡπαρ ἰσχυρότερον ἔλκειν, ἡ γαστὴρ δ' ἐν τῷδε. πολλῆς μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῇ κοιλίᾳ περιεχομένης τροφῆς καὶ σφοδρῶς ὀρεγομένου τε καὶ χρήζοντος τοῦ ἡπατος, πάντως ἰσχυρότερον ἔλκει τὸ σπλάγχνον· ἔμπαλιν δὲ τοῦ μὲν ἡπατος 190 ἐμπεπλησμένου τε καὶ διατεταμένου, τῆς γαστρὸς δ' ὀρεγομένης καὶ κενῆς ὑπαρχούσης ἡ τῆς ὄλκῆς ἰσχὺς εἰς ἐκείνην μεθίσταται.

Ως γάρ, εἰ κἀν ταῖς χερσὶ τινα σιτία κατέχοντες ἀλλήλων ἀρπάζοιμεν, εἰ μὲν ὅμοιῶς εἴημεν δεόμενοι, περιγίγνεσθαι τὸν ἰσχυρότερον εἰκός, εἰ δ' οὐτος μὲν ἐμπεπλησμένος εἴη καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἀμελῶς κατέχων τὰ περιττὰ ἡ καὶ τινι μεταδοῦναι ποθῶν, δ' δ' ἀσθενέστερος ὀρέγοιτο δεινῶς, οὐδὲν ἀν εἴη κώλυμα τοῦ μὴ πάντα λαβεῖν αὐτόν, οὕτω καὶ ἡ γαστὴρ ἐκ τοῦ ἡπατος ἐπισπάται ράδίως, ὅταν αὐτὴ μὲν ἴκανῶς ὀρέγηται τροφῆς, ἐμπεπλησμένον δ' ἡ τὸ σπλάγχνον. καὶ τοῦ γε μὴ πεινῆν ἐνίστε τὸ ζῷον ἡ περιουσία τῆς ἐν ἡπατι τροφῆς αἰτία· κρείττονα γὰρ ἔχουσα καὶ ἐτοιμοτέραν ἡ γαστὴρ τροφὴν οὐδὲν δεῖται τῆς ἔξωθεν· εἰ δέ γέ ποτε δέοιτο μέν, ἀποροίη δέ, πληροῦται περιττωμάτων. ἴχωρες δέ τινές εἰσι ταῦτα χολώδεις τε καὶ φλεγματώδεις καὶ ὥρρωδεις, οὓς μόνους ἐλκούσῃ μεθίστιν αὐτῇ τὸ ἡπαρ, ὅταν ποτὲ καὶ αὐτὴ δέηται τροφῆς.

"Οσπερ οὖν ἔξ ἀλλήλων ἔλκει τὰ μόρια || 191 τροφήν, οὕτω καὶ ἀποτίθεται ποτ' εἰς ἄλληλα

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. XIII

the arteries than the veins. In each of us personally, however, the liver has stronger drawing power at one time, and the stomach at another. For when there is much nutriment contained in the alimentary canal and the appetite and craving of the liver is violent, then the viscus<sup>1</sup> exerts far the strongest traction. Again, when the liver is full and distended and the stomach empty and in need, then the force of the traction shifts to the latter.

Suppose we had some food in our hands and were snatching it from one another; if we were equally in want, the stronger would be likely to prevail, but if he had satisfied his appetite, and was holding what was over carelessly, or was anxious to share it with somebody, and if the weaker was excessively desirous of it, there would be nothing to prevent the latter from getting it all. In a similar manner the stomach easily attracts nutriment from the liver when it [the stomach] has a sufficiently strong craving for it, and the appetite of the viscus is satisfied. And sometimes the surplusage of nutriment in the liver is a reason why the animal is not hungry; for when the stomach has better and more available food it requires nothing from extraneous sources, but if ever it is in need and is at a loss how to supply the need, it becomes filled with waste-matters; these are certain biliary, phlegmatic [mucous] and serous fluids, and are the only substances that the liver yields in response to the traction of the stomach, on the occasions when the latter too is in want of nutriment.

Now, just as the parts draw food from each other, so also they sometimes deposit their excess substances

<sup>1</sup> The alimentary canal, as not being edible, is not considered a *splanchnon* or viscus.

τὸ περιττὸν καὶ ὥσπερ ἐλκόντων ἐπλεονέκτει τὸ  
ἰσχυρότερον, οὕτω καὶ ἀποτιθεμένων καὶ τῶν γε  
καλουμένων ῥευμάτων ἦδε ἡ πρόφασις. ἔκαστον  
γὰρ τῶν μορίων ἔχει τινὰ τόνου σύμφυτον, ω̄  
διωθεῖται τὸ περιττόν. ὅταν οὖν ἐν ἐξ αὐτῶν  
ἀρρωστότερον γένηται κατὰ δή τινα διάθεσιν, ἐξ  
ἀπάντων εἰς ἐκεῦνο συρρεῖν ἀνάγκη τὰ περιττώ-  
ματα. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἰσχυρότατον ἐναποτίθεται  
τοῖς πλησίον ἀπασιν, ἐκείνων δ' αὖ πάλιν  
ἔκαστον εἰς ἔτερ' ἄττα τῶν ἀσθενεστέρων, εἰτ'  
αὐθις ἐκείνων ἔκαστον εἰς ἄλλα καὶ τοῦτ' ἐπὶ  
πλεῖστον γίγνεται, μέχρι περ ἀν ἐξ ἀπάντων  
ἐλαυνόμενον τὸ περίττωμα καθ' ἐν τι μείνη τῶν  
ἀσθενεστάτων ἐντεῦθεν γὰρ οὐκέτ' εἰς ἄλλο  
δύναται μεταρρέν, ώς ἀν μήτε δεχομένου τινὸς  
αὐτὸ τῶν ἰσχυροτέρων μήτ' ἀπώσασθαι δυναμένου  
τοῦ πεπονθότος.

’Αλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν παθῶν τῆς γενέσεως καὶ  
τῆς ίάσεως αὐθις ἡμῶν ἐπιδεικνύντων ἵκανὰ καξ  
ἐκείνων ἔσται λαβεῖν μαρτύρια τῶν ἐν τῷδε τῷ  
192 λόγῳ παντὶ || δεδειγμένων ὄρθως. ὃ δ' ἐν τῷ  
παρόντι δεῖξαι προῦκειτο, πάλιν ἀναλάβωμεν, ώς  
οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἐξ ἥπατος ἥκειν τινὰ τροφὴν  
ἐντέροις τε καὶ γαστρὶ διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν φλεβῶν,  
δι' ω̄ν ἔμπροσθεν ἐξ ἐκείνων εἰς ἥπαρ ἀνεδίδοτο.  
καὶ πολλοῖς ἀθρόως τε καὶ τελέως ἀποστᾶσιν  
ἰσχυρῶν γυμνασίων ἡ τι κῶλον ἀποκοπεῖσιν  
αἷματος διὰ τῶν ἐντέρων γίγνεται κένωσις ἔκ  
τινων περιόδων, ώς που καὶ Ἰπποκράτης ἔλεγεν,  
οὐδὲν μὲν ἄλλο λυποῦσα, καθαίρουσα δ' ὀξέως τὸ  
πᾶν σῶμα καὶ τὰς πλησμονὰς ἐκκενοῦσα, διὰ τῶν

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

in each other, and just as the stronger prevailed when the two were exercising traction, so it is also when they are depositing ; this is the cause of the so-called fluxions,<sup>1</sup> for every part has a definite inborn tension, by virtue of which it expels its superfluities, and, therefore, when one of these parts,—owing, of course, to some special condition—becomes weaker, there will necessarily be a confluence into it of the superfluities from all the other parts. The strongest part deposits its surplus matter in all the parts near it ; these again in other parts which are weaker ; these next into yet others ; and this goes on for a long time, until the superfluity, being driven from one part into another, comes to rest in one of the weakest of all ; it cannot flow from this into another part, because none of the stronger ones will receive it, while the affected part is unable to drive it away.

When, however, we come to deal again with the origin and cure of disease, it will be possible to find there also abundant proofs of all that we have correctly indicated in this book. For the present, however, let us resume again the task that lay before us, *i.e.* to show that there is nothing surprising in nutriment coming from the liver to the intestines and stomach by way of the very veins through which it had previously been yielded up from these organs into the liver. And in many people who have suddenly and completely given up active exercise, or who have had a limb cut off, there occurs at certain periods an evacuation of blood by way of the intestines—as Hippocrates has also pointed out somewhere. This causes no further trouble but sharply purges the whole body and evacuates the plethoras ;

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *rheums* ; hence our term *rheumatism*.

αὐτῶν δήπου φλεβῶν τῆς φορᾶς τῶν περιττῶν ἐπιτελουμένης, δι' ὧν ἔμπροσθεν ἡ ἀνάδοσις ἐγίγνετο.

Πολλάκις δὲ ἐν νόσοις ἡ φύσις διὰ μὲν τῶν αὐτῶν δήπου φλεβῶν τὸ πᾶν ἐκκαθαίρει ζῷον, οὐ μὴν αἴματώδης γ' ἡ κένωσις αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὸν λυποῦντα γύγνεται χυμόν. οὕτω δὲ κάν ταῖς χολέραις ἐκκενοῦται τὸ πᾶν σῶμα διὰ τῶν εἰς ἔντερά τε καὶ γαστέρα καθηκουσῶν φλεβῶν.

Τὸ δὲ οἰεσθαι μίαν εἶναι ταῖς ὕλαις φορὰν 193 τελέως ἀγνοοῦντός ἐστι τὰς φυσικὰς || δυνάμεις τάς τ' ἄλλας καὶ τὴν ἐκκριτικὴν ἐναντίαν οὖσαν τῇ ἐλκτικῇ ταῖς γὰρ ἐναντίαις δυνάμεσιν ἐναντίας κινήσεις τε καὶ φορᾶς τῶν ὑλῶν ἀναγκαῖον ἀκολουθεῖν. ἔκαστον γὰρ τῶν μορίων, ὅταν ἐλκύσῃ τὸν οἰκεῖον χυμόν, ἐπειτα κατάσχῃ καὶ ἀπολαύσῃ, τὸ περιττὸν ἄπαν ἀποθέσθαι σπεύδει, καθότι μάλιστα δύναται τάχιστά θ' ἄμα καὶ κάλλιστα, κατὰ τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ ῥοπήν.

"Οθεν ἡ γαστὴρ τὰ μὲν ἐπιπολάζοντα τῶν περιττωμάτων ἐμέτοις ἐκκαθαίρει, τὰ δὲ ὑφιστάμενα διαρροίαις. καὶ τό γε ναυτιώδες γίγνεσθαι τὸ ζῷον τοῦτ' ἔστιν ὄρμῆσαι τὴν γαστέρα κενωθῆναι δι' ἐμέτου. οὕτω δὲ δή τι βίαιον καὶ σφοδρὸν ἡ ἐκκριτικὴ δύναμις ἔχει, ὥστ' ἐν τοῖς εἰλεοῖς, ὅταν ἀποκλεισθῇ τελέως ἡ κάτω διέξοδος, ἐμεῖται κόπρος. καίτοι πρὸν διελθεῖν τό τε λεπτὸν ἔντερον ἄπαν καὶ τὴν μῆστιν καὶ τὸν πυλωρὸν καὶ τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὸν οἰσοφάγον οὐχ οἷόν τε διὰ τοῦ στόματος ἐκπεσεῖν οὐδενὶ τοιούτῳ περιττώματι. τί δὴ θαυμαστόν, εἰ κάκ τῆς ἐσχάτης

<sup>1</sup> Here Galen apparently indicates that vital functions are

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

the passage of the superfluities is effected, of course, through the same veins by which absorption took place.

Frequently also in disease Nature purges the animal through these same veins—although in this case the discharge is not sanguineous, but corresponds to the humour which is at fault. Thus in *cholera* the entire body is evacuated by way of the veins leading to the intestines and stomach.

To imagine that matter of different kinds is carried in one direction only would characterise a man who was entirely ignorant of all the natural faculties, and particularly of the eliminative faculty, which is the opposite of the attractive. For opposite movements of matter, active and passive, must necessarily follow opposite faculties ; that is to say, every part, after it has attracted its special nutrient juice and has retained and taken the benefit of it hastens to get rid of all the surplusage as quickly and effectively as possible, and this it does in accordance with the mechanical tendency of this surplus matter.<sup>1</sup>

Hence the stomach clears away by vomiting those superfluities which come to the surface of its contents,<sup>2</sup> whilst the sediment it clears away by diarrhoea. And when the animal becomes sick, this means that the stomach is striving to be evacuated by vomiting. And the expulsive faculty has in it so violent and forcible an element that in cases of *ileus* [volvulus], when the lower exit is completely closed, vomiting of faeces occurs ; yet such surplus matter could not be emitted from the mouth without having first traversed the whole of the small intestine, the jejunum, the pylorus, the stomach, and the oesophagus. What is there to wonder at, then, if something at least partly explicable in terms of mechanical law. cf. Introduction, p. xxviii.      <sup>2</sup> cf. pp. 211, 247.

έπιφανείας τῆς κατὰ τὸ δέρμα μέχρι τῶν ἐντέρων  
 194 τε καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς ἀφικνοῦτό τι || μεταλαμβανό-  
 μενον, ώς καὶ τοῦθ' Ἰπποκράτης ἡμᾶς ἐδίδαξεν,  
 οὐ πνεῦμα μόνον ἢ περίτωμα φάσκων ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 τὴν τροφὴν αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας  
 αὐθις ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν, ὅθεν ἀνηγνέχθη, καταφέρε-  
 σθαι. ἐλάχισται γὰρ ὅποιαὶ κινήσεων τὴν  
 ἐκκριτικὴν ταύτην οἰακίζουσι δύναμιν, ώς ἀν διὰ  
 τῶν ἐγκαρσίων μὲν ἵνων γιγνομένην, ὥκυτατα δὲ  
 διαδιδομένην ἀπὸ τῆς κινησάσης ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ τὰ  
 καταντικρὺ πέρατα. οὔκουν ἀπεικὸς οὐδὲ ἀδύ-  
 νατον ἀήθει ποτὲ ψύξει τὸ πρὸς τῷ δέρματι  
 μόριον ἔξαιφνης πιληθὲν ἄμα μὲν ἀρρωστότερον  
 αὐτὸ γενόμενον, ἄμα δὲ οἷον ἄχθος τι μᾶλλον ἡ  
 παρασκευὴν θρέψεως ἔχον τὴν ἔμπροσθεν ἀλύπως  
 αὐτῷ παρεσπαρμένην ὑγρότητα καὶ διὰ τοῦτ'  
 ἀπωθεῖσθαι σπεῦδον, ἄμα δὲ τῆς ἔξω φορᾶς  
 ἀποκεκλεισμένης τῇ πυκνώσει, πρὸς τὴν λοιπὴν  
 ἐπιστραφῆναι καὶ οὕτω βιασάμενον εἰς τὸ  
 παρακείμενον αὐτῷ μόριον ἀθρόως ἀπώσασθαι  
 τὸ περιττόν, ἐκεῦνο δὲ αὖ πάλιν εἰς τὸ μετ' αὐτό, ||  
 195 καὶ τοῦτο μὴ παύσασθαι γιγνόμενον, ἄχρις ἀν ἡ  
 μετάληψις ἐπὶ τὰ ἐντὸς πέρατα τῶν φλεβῶν  
 τελευτήσῃ.

Αἱ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦται κινήσεις θâττον ἀπο-  
 παύονται, αἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνδοθεν διερεθιζόντων,  
 ώς ἐν τε τοῖς καθαίρουσι φαρμάκοις καὶ ταῖς  
 χολέραις ἴσχυρότεραι τε πολὺ καὶ μονιμώτεραι  
 γίγνονται καὶ διαμένουσιν, ἔστ' ἀν καὶ ἡ περὶ  
 τοῖς στόμασι τῶν ἀγγείων διάθεσις, ἡ τὸ πλησίον

<sup>1</sup> See p. 298, note 1.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

should also be transferred from the extreme skin-surface and so reach the intestines and stomach? This also was pointed out to us by Hippocrates, who maintained that not merely *pneuma* or excess-matter, but actual nutriment is brought down from the outer surface to the original place from which it was taken up. For the slightest mechanical movements<sup>1</sup> determine this expulsive faculty, which apparently acts through the transverse fibres, and which is very rapidly transmitted from the source of motion to the opposite extremities. It is, therefore, neither unlikely nor impossible that, when the part adjoining the skin becomes suddenly oppressed by an unwonted cold, it should at once be weakened and should find that the liquid previously deposited beside it without discomfort had now become more of a burden than a source of nutrition, and should therefore strive to put it away. Finally, seeing that the passage outwards was shut off by the condensation [of tissue], it would turn to the remaining exit and would thus forcibly expel all the waste-matter at once into the adjacent part; this would do the same to the part following it; and the process would not cease until the transference finally terminated at the inner ends of the veins.<sup>2</sup>

Now, movements like these come to an end fairly soon, but those resulting from internal irritants (e.g., in the administration of purgative drugs or in cholera) become much stronger and more lasting; they persist as long as the condition of things<sup>3</sup> about the mouths of the veins continues, that is, so long as

<sup>2</sup> The ends of the veins in the alimentary canal from which absorption or *anadosis* had originally taken place.

<sup>3</sup> *Diathesis*.

έλκουσα, παραμένη. αὗτη μὲν γὰρ τὸ συνεχὲς ἐκκενοῦ μόριον, ἐκεῖνο δὲ αὐτὸν μετ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοῦτο οὐ παύεται μέχρι τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας, ὥστε διαδιδόντων τῶν ἐφεξῆς ἀεὶ μορίων ἑτέρων ἑτέροις τὸ πρῶτον πάθος ὡκύτατα δικνεῖσθαι μέχρι τῶν ἐσχάτων. οὕτως οὖν ἔχει κάπι τῶν εἰλεῶν. αὐτὸν μὲν γὰρ τὸ φλεγμαῖνον ἔντερον οὔτε τοῦ βάρους οὔτε τῆς δριμύτητος ἀνέχεται τῶν περιττωμάτων καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐκκρίνειν αὐτὰ σπεύδει καὶ ἀπωθεῖσθαι πορρωτάτῳ. κωλυόμενον δὲ κάτω ποιεῖσθαι τὴν δίωσιν, ὅταν ἔνταυθοῖ ποτε τὸ σφοδρότατον ἡ τῆς φλεγμονῆς, εἰς τὰ πλησιάζοντα τῶν ὑπερκειμένων ἑντέρων ἀπωθεῖται. καὶ οὕτως ἡδη 196 κατὰ || τὸ συνεχὲς τὴν ρόπην τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἄνω ποιησαμένης ἄχρι τοῦ στόματος ἐπανέρχεται τὰ περιττώματα.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν δὴ κάν τοῖς τῶν νοσημάτων λογισμοῖς ἐπὶ πλέον εἰρήσεται. τὸ δὲ ἐκ παντὸς εἰς πᾶν φέρεσθαι τι καὶ μεταλαμβάνεσθαι καὶ μίαν ἀπάντων εἶναι σύμπνοιάν τε καὶ σύρροιαν, ὡς Ἰπποκράτης ἔλεγεν, ἡδη μοι δοκῶ δεδεῖχθαι σαφῶς καὶ μηκέτ' ἄν τινα, μηδὲ εἰ βραδὺς αὐτῷ νοῦς ἐνείη, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἀπορῆσαι μηδενός, οἷον ὅπως ἡ γαστὴρ ἡ τὰ ἔντερα τρέφεται καὶ τίνα τρόπον ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας εἴσω τι δικνεῖται. πάντων γὰρ τῶν μορίων ἔλκειν μὲν τὸ προσῆκόν τε καὶ φίλιον, ἀποκρίνειν δὲ τὸ βαρύνον ἡ δάκνον ἔχόντων δύναμιν οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἐναντίας συνεχῶς γίγνεσθαι κινήσεις ἐν

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

these continue to attract what is adjacent. For this condition<sup>1</sup> causes evacuation of the contiguous part, and that again of the part next to it, and this never stops until the extreme surface is reached ; thus, as each part keeps passing on matter to its neighbour, the original affection<sup>2</sup> very quickly arrives at the extreme termination. Now this is also the case in *ileus* ; the inflamed intestine is unable to support either the weight or the acridity of the waste substances and so does its best to excrete them, in fact to drive them as far away as possible. And, being prevented from effecting an expulsion downwards when the severest part of the inflammation is there, it expels the matter into the adjoining part of the intestines situated above. Thus the tendency of the eliminative faculty is step by step upwards, until the superfluities reach the mouth.

Now this will be also spoken of at greater length in my treatise on disease. For the present, however, I think I have shewn clearly that there is a universal conveyance or transference from one thing into another, and that, as Hippocrates used to say, there exists in everything a consensus in the movement of air and fluids. And I do not think that anyone, however slow his intellect, will now be at a loss to understand any of these points,—how, for instance, the stomach or intestines get nourished, or in what manner anything makes its way inwards from the outer surface of the body. Seeing that all parts have the faculty of attracting what is suitable or well-disposed and of eliminating what is troublesome or irritating, it is not surprising that opposite movements should occur in them consecutively—as may

<sup>1</sup> *Diathesis.*

<sup>2</sup> *Pathos.*

αύτοῖς, ὥσπερ ἐπί τε τῆς καρδίας ὁρᾶται σαφῶς  
 καὶ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἀπασῶν καὶ τοῦ θώρακος καὶ  
 τοῦ πνεύμονος. ἐπὶ μὲν γε τούτων ἀπάντων  
 μόνον οὐ καθ' ἕκαστην καιροῦ ροπὴν τὰς ἐναντίας  
 κινήσεις θ' ἄμα τῶν ὄργανων καὶ φορᾶς τῶν  
 197 ὑλῶν || ἐναργῶς ἔστιν ἵδεν γιγνομένας. εἰτ' ἐπὶ  
 μὲν τῆς τραχείας ἀρτηρίας οὐκ ἀπορεῖς ἐναλλὰξ  
 ποτὲ μὲν εἴσω παραγούσης εἰς τὸν πνεύμονα τὸ  
 πνεῦμα, ποτὲ δ' ἔξω, καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰς ῥῖνας  
 πόρων καὶ δλου τοῦ στόματος ὡσαύτως οὐδὲ εἶναι  
 σοι δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν οὐδὲ παράδοξον, εἰ, δι' οὗ  
 μικρῷ πρόσθεν εἴσω παρεκομίζετο τὸ πνεῦμα, διὰ  
 τούτου μὲν ἐκπέμπεται, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἔξηπατος  
 εἰς ἔντερά τε καὶ γαστέρα καθηκουσῶν φλεβῶν  
 ἀπορεῖς καί σοι θαυμαστὸν εἶναι φαίνεται, διὰ  
 τῶν αὐτῶν ἀναδίδοσθαι θ' ἄμα τὴν τροφὴν εἰς  
 ἡπαρ ἐλκεσθαί τ' ἔξι ἐκείνου πάλιν εἰς γαστέρα;  
 διόρισαι δὴ τὸ ἄμα τοῦτο ποτέρως λέγεις. εἰ μὲν  
 γάρ κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον, οὐδὲν ἡμεῖς τοῦτο γέ  
 φαμεν. ὥσπερ γάρ εἰσπνέομεν ἐν ἐτέρῳ χρόνῳ  
 καὶ αὐθις πάλιν ἐν ἐτέρῳ ἀντεκπνέομεν, οὕτω καὶ  
 τροφὴν ἐν ἐτέρῳ μὲν χρόνῳ τὸ ἡπαρ ἐκ τῆς  
 γαστρός, ἐν ἐτέρῳ δὲ ἡ γαστὴρ ἐκ τοῦ ἡπατος  
 ἐπισπάται. εἰ δὲ ὅτι καθ' ἐν καὶ ταῦτὸ ζῷον ἐν  
 ὄργανον ἐναντίαις φοραῖς ὑλῶν ὑπηρετεῖ, τοῦτό  
 σοι βούλεται δηλοῦν τὸ ἄμα καὶ τοῦτο σε ταράτ-  
 198 τει, τὴν τ' || εἰσπνοήν ἵδε καὶ τὴν ἐκπνοήν. πάν-  
 τως που καὶ αὐται διὰ μὲν τῶν αὐτῶν ὄργανων  
 γίγνονται, τρόπῳ δὲ κινήσεώς τε καὶ φορᾶς τῶν  
 ὑλῶν διαφέρουσιν.

<sup>1</sup> He means, not only under the stress of special circumstances, but also normally.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

be clearly seen in the case of the heart, in the various arteries, in the thorax, and lungs. In all these<sup>1</sup> the active movements of the organs and therewith the passive movements of [their contained] matters may be seen taking place almost every second in opposite directions. Now, you are not astonished when the trachea-artery<sup>2</sup> alternately draws air into the lungs and gives it out, and when the nostrils and the whole mouth act similarly; nor do you think it strange or paradoxical that the air is dismissed through the very channel by which it was admitted just before. Do you, then, feel a difficulty in the case of the veins which pass down from the liver into the stomach and intestines, and do you think it strange that nutriment should at once be yielded up to the liver and drawn back from it into the stomach by the same veins? You must define what you mean by this expression "at once." If you mean "at the same time" this is not what we ourselves say; for just as we take in a breath at one moment and give it out again at another, so at one time the liver draws nutriment from the stomach, and at another the stomach from the liver. But if your expression "at once" means that in one and the same animal a single organ subserves the transport of matter in opposite directions, and if it is this which disturbs you, consider inspiration and expiration. For of course these also take place through the same organs, albeit they differ in their manner of movement, and in the way in which the matter is conveyed through them.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. "rough artery." The air-passages as well as the arteries proper were supposed by the Greeks to carry air (*pneuma*); diastole of arteries was, like expansion of the chest, a movement for drawing in air. cf. p. 317, note 1.

## GALEN

‘Ο πνεύμων μὲν οὖν καὶ ὁ θώραξ καὶ ἀρτηρίαι αἱ τραχεῖαι καὶ αἱ λεῖαι καὶ καρδία καὶ στόμα καὶ ρήνες ἐν ἐλαχίσταις χρόνου ροπαῖς εἰς ἐναντίας κινήσεις αὐτά τε μεταβάλλει καὶ τὰς ὕλας μεθίστησιν. αἱ δὲ ἔξι ἡπατος εἰς ἔντερα καὶ γαστέρα καθήκουσαι φλέβες οὐκ ἐν οὕτω βραχέσι χρόνου μορίοις ἀλλ’ ἐν πολλαῖς ἡμέραις ἅπαξ ἐνίστηται τὴν ἐναντίαν κινοῦνται κίνησιν.

Ἐχει γὰρ ὥδε τὸ σύμπαν. ἔκαστον τῶν ὄργάνων εἰς ἑαυτὸν τὴν πλησιάζουσαν ἐπισπάται τροφὴν ἐκβοσκόμενον αὐτῆς ἅπασαν τὴν χρηστὴν νοτίδα, μέχρις ἂν ἵκανως κορεσθῇ, καὶ ταύτην, ὡς καὶ προσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν, ἐναποτίθεται ἑαυτῷ καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα προσφύει τε καὶ ὄμοιοῦ, τουτέστι τρέφεται. διώρισται γὰρ ἵκανως ἔμπροσθεν ἔτερόν τι τῆς θρέψεως ἔξι ἀνάγκης αὐτῆς προηγούμενον ἡ πρόσφυσις ὑπάρχειν, ἐκείνης δὲ 199 ἔτι πρότερον ἡ πρόσθεσις. ὥσπερ οὖν || τοῖς ζώοις αὐτοῖς ὅρος ἔστι τῆς ἐδωδῆς τὸ πληρῶσαι τὴν γαστέρα, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἐκάστῳ τῶν δορίων ὅρος ἔστι τῆς προσθέσεως ἡ πλήρωσις τῆς οἰκείας ὑγρότητος. ἐπεὶ τοίνυν ἅπαν μόριον τῇ γαστρὶ ὄμοιώς ὀρέγεται τρέφεσθαι, καὶ περιπτύσσεται τῇ τροφῇ καὶ οὕτω σφίγγει πανταχόθεν αὐτὴν ὡς ἡ γαστήρ. ἔπειται δὲ ἔξι ἀνάγκης τούτῳ, καθάπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐρρέθη, τὸ πέττεσθαι τοῖς σιτίοις, τῆς γαστρὸς οὐ διὰ τοῦτο περιστελλομένης αὐτοῖς, ἵν’ ἐπιτήδεια τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐργάσηται μορίοις· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν οὐκέτι φυσικὸν

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 39, chap. xi.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *orexis*.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

Now the lungs, the thorax, the arteries rough and smooth, the heart, the mouth, and the nostrils reverse their movements at very short intervals and change the direction of the matters they contain. On the other hand, the veins which pass down from the liver to the intestines and stomach reverse the direction of their movements not at such short intervals, but sometimes once in many days.

The whole matter, in fact, is as follows :—Each of the organs draws into itself the nutriment alongside it, and devours all the useful fluid in it, until it is thoroughly satisfied ; this nutriment, as I have already shown, it stores up in itself, afterwards making it adhere and then assimilating it—that is, it becomes nourished by it. For it has been demonstrated with sufficient clearness already<sup>1</sup> that there is something which necessarily precedes actual nutrition, namely *adhesion*, and that before this again comes *presentation*. Thus as in the case of the *animals* themselves the end of eating is that the stomach should be filled, similarly in the case of each of the *parts*, the end of presentation is the filling of this part with its appropriate liquid. Since, therefore, every part has, like the stomach, a *craving*<sup>2</sup> to be nourished, it too envelops its nutriment and clasps it all round as the stomach does. And this [action of the stomach], as has been already said, is necessarily followed by the digestion of the food, although it is not to make it suitable for the other parts that the stomach contracts upon it ; if it did so, it would no longer be a physiological organ,<sup>3</sup> but an animal possessing reason

<sup>1</sup> Lit. a “physical” organ ; that is, a mere instrument or organon of the Physis,—not one of the Psyche or conscious personality. cf. *semen*, p. 132, note 1.

## GALEN

δργανον ἀλλὰ ζῷόν τι γένυνοιτο λογισμόν τε καὶ νοῦν ἔχον, ως αἱρεῖσθαι τὸ βέλτιον.

Ἄλλ' αὕτη μὲν περιστέλλεται τῷ τὸ πᾶν σῶμα δύναμιν ἐλκτικήν τινα καὶ ἀπολαυστικὴν κεκτῆσθαι τῶν οἰκείων ποιοτήτων, ως ἔμπροσθεν ἐδείκνυτο· συμβαίνει δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τοῖς σιτίοις ἀλλοιοῦσθαι. καὶ μέντοι καὶ πληρωθεῖσα τῆς ἐξ αὐτῶν ὑγρότητος καὶ κορεσθεῖσα βάρος ἡγεῖται τὸ λοιπὸν αὐτά. τὸ περιττὸν οὖν εὐθὺς ἀπο-  
200 τρίβεται τε καὶ ὥθει κάτω πρὸς || ἔτερον ἕργον αὐτὴ τρεπομένη, τὴν πρόσφυσιν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ διερχομένη τὸ ἔντερον ἄπαν ἡ τροφὴ διὰ τῶν εἰς αὐτὸν καθηκόντων ἀγγείων ἀναρπάζεται, πλείστη μὲν εἰς τὰς φλέβας, ὀλίγη δέ τις εἰς τὰς ἀρτηρίας, ως μικρὸν ὕστερον ἀποδείξομεν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ αὖ τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τοῖς τῶν ἐντέρων χιτῶσι προστίθεται.

Καὶ μοι τεμὼν ἥδη τῷ λογισμῷ τὴν τροφῆς οἰκονομίαν ἄπασαν εἰς τρεῖς μοῖρας χρόνων, ἐν μὲν τῇ πρώτῃ νόει μένουσάν θ' ἀμα κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν αὐτὴν καὶ πεττομένην καὶ προστιθεμένην εἰς κόρον τῇ γαστρὶ καί τι καὶ τῷ ἥπατι παρ' αὐτῆς ἀναφερόμενον.

'Ἐν δὲ τῇ δευτέρᾳ διερχομένην τά τ' ἔντερα καὶ προστιθεμένην εἰς κόρον αὐτοῖς τε τούτοις καὶ τῷ ἥπατι καί τι βραχὺ μέρος αὐτῆς πάντη τοῦ σώματος φερόμενον. ἐν δὲ δὴ τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ προστεθὲν ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ χρόνῳ προσφύεσθαι νόει τῇ γαστρί.

Κατὰ δὲ τὴν τρίτην μοῖραν τοῦ χρόνου τρέ-

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 317, note 2; p. 319, chap. xv.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. XIII

and intelligence, with the power of choosing the better [of two alternatives].

But while the stomach contracts for the reason that the whole body possesses a power of attracting and of utilising appropriate qualities, as has already been explained, it also happens that, in this process, the food undergoes alteration; further, when filled and saturated with the fluid pabulum from the food, it thereafter looks on the food as a burden; thus it at once gets rid of the excess—that is to say, drives it downwards—itself turning to another task, namely that of causing adhesion. And during this time, while the nutriment is passing along the whole length of the *intestine*, it is caught up by the vessels which pass into the intestine; as we shall shortly demonstrate,<sup>1</sup> most of it is seized by the veins, but a little also by the arteries; at this stage also it becomes *presented* to the coats of the intestines.

Now imagine the whole economy of nutrition divided into three periods. Suppose that in the first period the nutriment remains in the stomach and is digested and presented to the stomach until satiety is reached, also that some of it is taken up from the stomach to the liver.<sup>2</sup>

During the second period it passes along the intestines and becomes presented both to them and to the liver—again until the stage of satiety—while a small part of it is carried all over the body.<sup>2</sup> During this period, also imagine that what was presented to the stomach in the first period becomes now adherent to it.

During the third period the stomach has reached

<sup>2</sup> Note that absorption takes place from the stomach as well as the intestines. *c.f.* p. 118, note 1.

φεσθαι μὲν ἥδη τὴν κοιλίαν ὁμοιώσασαν ἑαυτῇ τελέως τὰ προσφύντα, πρόσφυσιν δὲ τοῖς ἐντέροις καὶ τῷ ἥπατι γίγνεσθαι τῶν προστεθέντων,  
 201 ἀνάδοσιν δὲ πάντη τοῦ σώματος καὶ πρόσθεσιν. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ τούτοις εὐθέως τὸ ζῷον λαμβάνοι τροφήν, ἐν φάσιν ἡ γαστὴρ χρόνῳ πέττει τε ταύτην καὶ ἀπολαύει προστιθεῖσα πᾶν ἐξ αὐτῆς τὸ χρηστὸν τοῖς ἑαυτῆς χιτῶσι, τὰ μὲν ἔντερα τελέως ὁμοιώσει τὸν προσφύντα χυμόν, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ τὸ ἥπαρ. ἐν δλῳ δὲ τῷ σώματι πρόσφυσις τῶν προστεθέντων τῆς τροφῆς ἔσται μορίων. εἰ δ' ἄσιτος ἀναγκάζοιτο μένειν ἡ γαστὴρ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, παρὰ τῶν ἐν μεσεντερίῳ τε καὶ ἥπατι φλεβῶν ἔλξει τὴν τροφήν οὐ γὰρ ἐξ αὐτοῦ γε τοῦ σώματος τοῦ ἥπατος. λέγω δὲ σώμα τοῦ ἥπατος αὐτήν τε τὴν ἰδίαν αὐτοῦ σάρκα πρώτην καὶ μάλιστα, μετὰ δὲ τήνδε καὶ τῶν ἀγγείων ἔκαστον τῶν κατ' αὐτό. τὸν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν μορίων ἥδη περιεχόμενον χυμὸν οὐκέτ<sup>1</sup> εὐλογον ἀντισπάν ἐτέρῳ μορίῳ καὶ μάλισθ<sup>1</sup> ὅταν ἥδη πρόσφυσις ἡ ἐξομοίωσις αὐτοῦ γίγνηται. τὸν δ' ἐν ταῖς εὐρυχωρίαις τῶν φλεβῶν τὸ μᾶλλον ἴσχύον θ' ἄμα καὶ δεόμενον ἀντισπά μόριον.

202 Οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡ γαστὴρ ἐν φάσι χρόνῳ δεῖται μὲν αὐτὴ τροφῆς, ἐσθίει δ' οὐδέπω τὸ ζῷον, ἐν τούτῳ τῶν κατὰ τὸ ἥπαρ ἐξαρπάζει φλεβῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸν σπλῆνα διὰ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν ὅσον ἐν ἥπατι παχύτερον ἔλκοντα

<sup>1</sup> That is, among the ultimate tissues or cells.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

the stage of receiving nourishment ; it now entirely assimilates everything that had become adherent to it : at the same time in the intestines and liver there takes place adhesion of what had been before presented, while dispersal [anadosis] is taking place to all parts of the body,<sup>1</sup> as also presentation. Now, if the animal takes food immediately after these [three stages] then, during the time that the stomach is again digesting and getting the benefit of this by presenting all the useful part of it to its own coats, the intestines will be engaged in final assimilation of the juices which have adhered to them, and so also will the liver : while in the various parts of the body there will be taking place adhesion of the portions of nutriment presented. And if the stomach is forced to remain without food during this time, it will draw its nutriment from the veins in the mesentery and liver ; for it will not do so from the actual body of the liver (by *body of the liver* I mean first and foremost its flesh proper, and after this all the vessels contained in it), for it is irrational to suppose that one part would draw away from another part the juice already contained in it, especially when adhesion and final assimilation of that juice were already taking place ; the juice, however, that is in the cavity of the veins will be abstracted by the part which is stronger and more in need.

It is in this way, therefore, that the stomach, when it is in need of nourishment and the animal has nothing to eat, seizes it from the veins in the liver. Also in the case of the spleen we have shown in a former passage<sup>2</sup> how it draws all material from

<sup>2</sup> Pp. 205-9.

κατεργάζεσθαι τε καὶ μεταβάλλειν ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστότερον, οὐδὲν οὐδὲ ἔνταῦθα θαυμαστὸν ἔλκεσθαι τι κάκ τοῦ σπληνὸς εἰς ἔκαστον τῶν κοινωνούντων αὐτῷ κατὰ τὰς φλέβας ὀργάνων, οἷον εἰς ἐπίπλοον καὶ μεσεντέριον καὶ λεπτὸν ἔντερον καὶ κῶλον καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν γαστέρα· κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἔξερεύγεσθαι μὲν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τὸ περίττωμα καθ' ἔτερον χρόνον, αὐτὸν δὲ αὐθις ἐκ τῆς γαστρὸς ἔλκειν τι τῆς οἰκείας τροφῆς ἐν ἑτέρῳ καιρῷ.

Καθόλου δὲ εἰπεῖν, δὲ καὶ πρόσθειν ἥδη λέλεκται, πᾶν ἐκ παντὸς ἔλκειν τε καὶ πέμπειν ἐγχωρεῖ κατὰ διαφέροντας χρόνους, ὅμοιοτάτου γιγνομένου τοῦ συμβαίνοντος, ώς εἰ καὶ ζῷα νοήσαις πολλὰ τροφὴν ἄφθονον ἐν κοινῷ κατακειμένην, εἰς ὅσου βούλεται, προσφερόμενα. καθ' δὲ γὰρ ἥδη πέπαυται χρόνον ἔτερα, κατὰ τοῦτον εἰκὸς ἐσθίειν 203 ἔτερα, καὶ μέλλειν γε τὰ μὲν παύεσθαι, τὰ δὲ ἄρχεσθαι, καὶ τινα μὲν συνεσθίοντα, τὰ δὲ ἀνὰ μέρος ἐσθίοντα καὶ ναὶ μὰ Δία γε τὸ ἔτερον ἀρπάζειν θατέρου πολλάκις, εἰ τὸ μὲν ἔτερον ἐπιδέοιτο, τῷ δὲ ἄφθονως παρακέοιτο. καὶ οὕτως οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν οὔτ' ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας εἴσω τι πάλιν ὑποστρέφειν οὔτε διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν ἀγγείων ἐξ ἥπατός τε καὶ σπληνὸς εἰς κοιλίαν ἀνενεχθῆναι τι, δι' ὧν ἐκ ταύτης εἰς ἐκεῖνα πρότερον ἀνηνέχθη.

Κατὰ μὲν γὰρ τὰς ἀρτηρίας ἴκανῶς ἐναργὲς τὸ τοιοῦτον, ὥσπερ καὶ κατὰ τὴν καρδίαν τε καὶ τὸν θώρακα καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα. τούτων γὰρ ἀπάντων διαστελλομένων τε καὶ συστελλομένων ἐναλλὰξ ἀναγκαιον, ἐξ ὧν εἰλκύσθη τι πρότερον, εἰς ταῦθι

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

the liver that tends to be thick, and by working it up converts it into more useful matter. There is nothing surprising, therefore, if, in the present instance also, some of this should be drawn from the spleen into such organs as communicate with it by veins, *e.g.* the omentum, mesentery, small intestine, colon, and the stomach itself. Nor is it surprising that the spleen should disgorge its surplus matters into the stomach at one time, while at another time it should draw some of its appropriate nutriment from the stomach.

For, as has already been said, speaking generally, everything has the power at different times of attracting from and of adding to everything else. What happens is just as if you might imagine a number of animals helping themselves at will to a plentiful common stock of food ; some will naturally be eating when others have stopped, some will be on the point of stopping when others are beginning, some eating together, and others in succession. Yes, by Zeus ! and one will often be plundering another, if he be in need while the other has an abundant supply ready to hand. Thus it is in no way surprising that matter should make its way back from the outer surface of the body to the interior, or should be carried from the liver and spleen into the stomach by the same vessels by which it was carried in the reverse direction.

In the case of the arteries<sup>1</sup> this is clear enough, as also in the case of heart, thorax, and lungs ; for, since all of these dilate and contract alternately, it must needs be that matter is subsequently discharged back into the parts from which it was

<sup>1</sup> By this term, of course, the air-passages are also meant ; cf. p. 305.

## GALEN

ῦστερον ἐκπέμπεσθαι. καὶ ταύτην ἄρα τὴν ἀνάγκην ἡ φύσις προγιγνώσκουσα τοῖς ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ στόμασι τῶν ἀγγείων ὑμένας ἐπέφυσε κωλύσοντας εἰς τούπισω φέρεσθαι τὰς ὕλας. ἀλλ' ὅπως μὲν τοῦτο γίγνεται καὶ καθ' ὄντινα τρόπου, ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται δεικνύντων ἡμῶν τά τ' ἄλλα καὶ ὡς ἀδύνατον οὔτως ἀκριβῶς 204 κλείεσθαι τὰ στόματα τῶν ἀγγείων, ὡς || μηδὲν παλινδρομεῖν. εἰς μὲν γὰρ τὴν ἀρτηρίαν τὴν φλεβώδη, καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτ' ἐν ἐκείνοις δειχθῆσται, πολὺ πλέον ἡ διὰ τῶν ἄλλων στομάτων εἰς τούπισω πάλιν ἀναγκαῖον ἐπανέρχεσθαι. τὸ δ' εἰς τὰ παρόντα χρήσιμον, ὡς οὐκ ἐνδέχεται τι τῶν αἰσθητὴν καὶ μεγάλην ἔχόντων εὐρύτητα μὴ οὐκ ἥτοι διαστελλόμενον ἔλκειν ἐξ ἀπάντων τῶν πλησίον ἡ ἐκθλίβειν αὐθις εἰς ταῦτα συστελλόμενον ἔκ τε τῶν ἥδη προειρημένων ἐν τῷδε τῷ λόγῳ σαφὲς ἀν εἴη κάξ ὡν Ἐρασίστρατός τε καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐτέρωθι περὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας ἐδείξαμεν.

## XIV

Ἄλλὰ μὴν καὶ ὡς ἐν ἑκάστῃ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἔστι τις δύναμις ἐκ τῆς καρδίας ἐπιρρέουσα, καθ' ἣν διαστέλλονται τε καὶ συστέλλονται, δέδεικται δι' ἐτέρων.

Εἴπερ οὖν συνθείης ἄμφω τό τε ταύτην εἶναι τὴν κίνησιν αὐταῖς τό τε πᾶν τὸ διαστελλόμενον

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 34, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 121, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> Pulmonary vein, or rather, left auricle. Galen means a reflux through the mitral orifice; the left auricle was looked

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii.-xiv

previously drawn. Now Nature foresaw this necessity,<sup>1</sup> and provided the cardiac openings of the vessels with membranous attachments,<sup>2</sup> to prevent their contents from being carried backwards. How and in what manner this takes place will be stated in my work "On the Use of Parts," where among other things I show that it is impossible for the openings of the vessels to be closed so accurately that nothing at all can run back. Thus it is inevitable that the reflux into the *venous artery*<sup>3</sup> (as will also be made clear in the work mentioned) should be much greater than through the other openings. But what it is important for our present purpose to recognise is that every thing possessing a large and appreciable cavity must, when it dilates, abstract matter from all its neighbours, and, when it contracts, must squeeze matter back into them. This should all be clear from what has already been said in this treatise and from what Erasistratus and I myself have demonstrated elsewhere respecting the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled.<sup>4</sup>

### XIV

AND further, it has been shown in other treatises that all the arteries possess a power which derives from the heart, and by virtue of which they dilate and contract.

Put together, therefore, the two facts—that the arteries have this motion, and that everything, when on rather as the termination of the pulmonary veins than as a part of the heart. *cf.* p. 323, note 4. He speaks here of a kind of "physiological" mitral incompetence.

\* *Horror vacui.*

έλκειν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον εἰς ἑαυτό, θαυμαστὸν οὐδέν σοι φανεῖται τὰς ἀρτηρίας, ὅσαι μὲν εἰς τὸ δέρμα περαίνουσιν αὐτῶν, ἐπισπάσθαι τὸν ἔξωθεν ἀέρα διαστελλομένας, ὅσαι δὲ κατά τι πρὸς τὰς ||

205 φλέβας ἀνεστόμωνται, τὸ λεπτότατον ἐν αὐταῖς καὶ ἀτμωδέστατον ἐπισπάσθαι τοῦ αἷματος, ὅσαι δὲ ἐγγὺς τῆς καρδίας εἰσίν, ἐξ αὐτῆς ἐκείνης ποιεῖσθαι τὴν ὄλκήν. ἐν γὰρ τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ τὸ κουφότατόν τε καὶ λεπτότατον ἐπεται πρώτον τοῦ βαρυτέρου τε καὶ παχυτέρου· κουφότατον δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ λεπτότατον ἀπάντων τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα πρώτον μὲν τὸ πνεῦμα, δεύτερον δὲ ὁ ἀτμός, ἐπὶ τούτῳ δὲ τρίτον, ὅσον ἀν ἀκριβῶς ἦ κατειργασμένον τε καὶ λελεπτυσμένον αἷμα.

Ταῦτ' οὖν εἰς ἑαυτὰς ἔλκουσιν αἱ ἀρτηρίαι πανταχόθεν, αἱ μὲν εἰς τὸ δέρμα καθήκουσαι τὸν ἔξωθεν ἀέρα· πλησίον τε γὰρ αὐταῖς οὐτός ἐστι καὶ κουφότατος ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα· τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸν τράχηλον ἐκ τῆς καρδίας ἀνιοῦσα καὶ ἡ κατὰ ράχιν, ἥδη δὲ καὶ ὅσαι τούτων ἐγγὺς ἐξ αὐτῆς μάλιστα τῆς καρδίας· ὅσαι δὲ καὶ τῆς καρδίας πορρωτέρω καὶ τοῦ δέρματος, ἔλκειν ταύταις ἀναγκαῖον ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν τὸ κουφότατον τοῦ αἵματος· ὥστε καὶ τῶν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τε καὶ τὰ ἔντερα καθηκουσῶν ἀρτηριῶν τὴν ὄλκὴν ἐν τῷ διαστέλλεσθαι γίγνεσθαι παρά τε 206 τῆς || καρδίας αὐτῆς καὶ τῶν παρακειμένων αὐτῇ φλεβῶν παμπόλλων οὐσῶν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ γε τῶν ἔντερων καὶ τῆς κοιλίας τροφὴν οὕτω παχεῖάν τε καὶ βαρεῖαν ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ἐχόντων δύνανται τι μεταλαμβάνειν, ὅ τι καὶ ἄξιον λόγου, φθάνουσαι πληροῦσθαι τοῖς κουφοτέροις. οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ καθεὶς

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiv

it dilates, draws neighbouring matter into itself—and you will find nothing strange in the fact that those arteries which reach the skin draw in the outer air when they dilate, while those which anastomose at any point with the veins attract the thinnest and most vaporous part of the blood which these contain, and as for those arteries which are near the heart, it is on the heart itself that they exert their traction. For, by virtue of the tendency by which a vacuum becomes refilled, the lightest and thinnest part obeys the tendency before that which is heavier and thicker. Now the lightest and thinnest of anything in the body is firstly *pneuma*, secondly *vapour*, and in the third place that part of the blood which has been accurately elaborated and refined.

These, then, are what the arteries draw into themselves on every side; those arteries which reach the skin draw in the outer air<sup>1</sup> (this being near them and one of the lightest of things); as to the other arteries, those which pass up from the heart into the neck, and that which lies along the spine, as also such arteries as are near these—draw mostly from the heart itself; and those which are further from the heart and skin necessarily draw the lightest part of the blood out of the veins. So also the traction exercised by the diastole of the arteries which go to the stomach and intestines takes place at the expense of the heart itself and the numerous veins in its neighbourhood; for these arteries cannot get anything worth speaking of from the thick heavy nutriment contained in the intestines and stomach,<sup>2</sup> since they first become filled with lighter elements. For if you let down a tube into a vessel

<sup>1</sup> cf. p. 305, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 308, note 1.

## GALEN

αὐλίσκον εἰς ἀγγεῖον ὕδατός τε καὶ ψάμμου πλῆρες ἐπισπάσαι τῷ στόματι τὸν ἐκ τοῦ αὐλίσκου ἀέρα, δύναιτ' ἀν ἀκολουθῆσαι σοι πρὸ τοῦ ὕδατος ἡ ψάμμος· ἀεὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ τὸ κουφότερον ἔπειται πρότερον.

## XV

Οὕκουν χρὴ θαυμάζειν, εἰ παντελῶς ὄλιγον ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας, ὅσον ἀν ἀκριβῶς ἡ κατειργασμένον, εἰς τὰς ἀρτηρίας παραγίγνεται φθανούσας πληροῦσθαι τῶν κουφοτέρων, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνο γιγνώσκειν, ώς δύ τὸ στὸν ὄλκῆς εἴδη, τὸ μὲν τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ, τὸ δ' οἰκειότητι ποιότητος γιγνόμενον· ἔτέρως μὲν γὰρ εἰς τὰς φύσας ὁ ἀήρ, ἔτέρως δ' ὁ σίδηρος ὑπὸ τῆς ἡρακλείας ἐπισπάται λίθου· καὶ ώς ἡ μὲν πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκο-  
207 λουθία || τὸ κουφότερον ἔλκει πρότερον, ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὴν τῆς ποιότητος οἰκειότητα πολλάκις, εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, τὸ βαρύτερον, ἀν τῇ φύσει συγγενέστερον ὑπάρχῃ. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ ταῖς ἀρτηρίαις τε καὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ, ώς μὲν κοίλοις τε καὶ διαστέλλεσθαι δυναμένοις ὄργάνοις, ἀεὶ τὸ κουφότερον ἀκολουθεῖν πρότερον, ώς δὲ τρέφεσθαι δεομένοις, εἰς αὐτοὺς τοὺς χιτῶνας, οἱ δὴ τὰ σώματα τῶν ὄργάνων εἰσίν, ἔλκεται τὸ οἰκεῖον. ὅσον ἀν οὖν εἰς τὴν κοιλότητα διαστελλομένων αὐτῶν αἴματος μεταληφθῆ, τούτου τὸ οἰκειότατόν

<sup>1</sup> The “mechanical” principle of *horror vacui* contrasted with the “physical” or semi-physiological principle of specific attraction. Appropriateness here might almost be rendered *affinity* or *kinship*. cf. note 2, *infra*.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiv.—xv

full of water and sand, and suck the air out of the tube with your mouth, the sand cannot come up to you before the water, for in accordance with the principle of the refilling of a vacuum the lighter matter is always the first to succeed to the evacuation.

### XV

IT is not to be wondered at, therefore, that only a very little [nutritive matter] such, namely, as has been accurately elaborated—gets from the stomach into the arteries, since these first become filled with lighter matter. We must understand that *there are two kinds of attraction*, that by which a vacuum becomes refilled and that caused by appropriateness of quality;<sup>1</sup> air is drawn into bellows in one way, and iron by the lodestone in another. And we must also understand that the traction which results from evacuation acts primarily on what is light, whilst that from appropriateness of quality acts frequently, it may be, on what is heavier (if this should be naturally more nearly related<sup>2</sup>). Therefore, in the case of the heart and the arteries, it is in so far as they are hollow organs, capable of diastole, that they always attract the lighter matter first, while, in so far as they require nourishment, it is actually into their coats (which are the real bodies of these organs) that the appropriate matter is drawn.<sup>3</sup> Of the blood, then, which is taken into their cavities when they dilate, that part which is most proper to them and

<sup>2</sup> "Related," "akin." cf. p. 36, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> The coats exercise the *vital* traction, the cavities the merely *mechanical*. cf. p. 165, note 2.

τε καὶ μάλιστα τρέφειν δυνάμενον οἱ χιτῶνες αὐτοὶ τῶν ἀγγείων ἐπισπῶνται.

Τοῦ δ' ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν εἰς τὰς ἀρτηρίας μεταλαμβάνεσθαι τι πρὸς τοὺς εἰρημένους ἵκανὸν καὶ τοῦτό γε τεκμήριον. εἰ πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἀρτηρίας διατεμῶν ἀποκτεῖναι τὸ ζῷον βουληθείης, εύρήσεις αὐτοῦ τὰς φλέβας ὁμοίως ταῖς ἀρτηρίαις ἐκκενουμένας, οὐκ ἀν τούτου ποτὲ γενομένου χωρὶς τῶν πρὸς ἀλλήλας αὐταῖς ἀναστομώσεων. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν καρδίαν ἐκ τῆς δεξιᾶς κοιλίας εἰς τὴν ἀριστερὰν 208 ἔλκεται τὸ λεπτό<sup>1</sup> πτατον ἔχοντός τινα τρήματα τοῦ μέσου διαφράγματος αὐτῶν, ἢ μέχρι μὲν πλείστου δυνατού ἔστιν ἴδειν, οἷον βοθύνους τινὰς ἐξ εὐρυτέρου στόματος ἀεὶ καὶ μᾶλλον εἰς στενότερον προϊόντας. οὐ μὴν αὐτά γε τὰ ἔσχατα πέρατα δυνατὸν ἔτι θεάσασθαι διά τε σμικροτητα καὶ ὅτι τεθνεώτος ἥδη τοῦ ζώου κατέψυκται τε καὶ πεπύκνωται πάντα. ἀλλ' ὁ λόγος κάνταυθα πρώτον μὲν ἐκ τοῦ μηδὲν ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως γίγνεσθαι μάτην ὄρμώμενος ἐξευρίσκει τὰς ἀναστομώσεις ταύτας τῶν κοιλιῶν τῆς καρδίας· οὐ γὰρ δὴ εἰκῇ γε καὶ ὡς ἔτυχεν οἱ ἐς στενὸν οὔτω τελευτῶντες ἐγένοντο βόθυνοι.

Δεύτερον δὲ κάκ τοῦ δυοῖν δοντοιν στομάτοιν ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ τῆς καρδίας κοιλίᾳ τοῦ μὲν εἰσάγοντος τὸ αἷμα, τοῦ δ' ἐξάγοντος πολὺ μεῖζον εἶναι τὸ εἰσάγον. ὡς γὰρ οὐ παντὸς τοῦ αἵματος, ὅσον ἡ κοίλη φλὲψ δίδωσι τῇ καρδίᾳ, πάλιν ἐξ ἐκείνης

<sup>1</sup> Chap. xiv.

<sup>2</sup> These *fossae* were probably the recesses between the *columnae carneae*.      <sup>3</sup> On *logos* cf. p. 226, note 2.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xv

most able to afford nourishment is attracted by their actual coats.

Now, apart from what has been said,<sup>1</sup> the following is sufficient proof that something is taken over from the veins into the arteries. If you will kill an animal by cutting through a number of its large arteries, you will find the veins becoming empty along with the arteries: now, this could never occur if there were not anastomoses between them. Similarly, also, in the heart itself, the thinnest portion of the blood is drawn from the right ventricle into the left, owing to there being perforations in the septum between them: these can be seen for a great part [of their length]; they are like a kind of fossae [pits] with wide mouths, and they get constantly narrower; it is not possible, however, actually to observe their extreme terminations, owing both to the smallness of these and to the fact that when the animal is dead all the parts are chilled and shrunken.<sup>2</sup> Here, too, however, our argument,<sup>3</sup> starting from the principle that nothing is done by Nature in vain, discovers these anastomoses between the ventricles of the heart; for it could not be at random and by chance that there occurred fossae ending thus in narrow terminations.

And secondly [the presence of these anastomoses has been assumed] from the fact that, of the two orifices in the right ventricle, the one conducting blood in and the other out, the former<sup>4</sup> is much the larger. For, the fact that the insertion of the vena cava into the heart<sup>5</sup> is larger than the

<sup>1</sup> He means the tricuspid orifice. *cf.* p. 121, note 4.

<sup>2</sup> The right auricle was looked on less as a part of the heart than as an expansion or "insertion" of the vena cava.

έκπεμπομένου τῷ πνεύμονι, μείζων ἔστιν ἡ ἀπὸ τῆς κοίλης εἰς αὐτὴν ἔμφυσις τῆς ἔμφυομένης εἰς 209 τὸν πνεύμονα φλεβός. οὐδὲ || γάρ τοῦτ' ἔστιν εἰπεῖν, ώς ἐδαπανήθη τι τοῦ αἵματος εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ τοῦ σώματος τῆς καρδίας θρέψιν. ἑτέρα γάρ ἔστι φλεψὶς ἡ εἰς ἐκεῖνο κατασχιζομένη μήτε τὴν γένεσιν ἐκ τῆς καρδίας αὐτῆς μήτε τὴν τοῦ αἵματος ἔχουσα μετάληψιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ δαπανᾶται τι, ἀλλ' οὐ τοσοῦτόν γε μείων ἔστιν ἡ εἰς τὸν πνεύμονα φλεψὶς ἄγουσα τῆς εἰς τὴν καρδίαν ἔμφυομένης, ὅσον εἰκὸς εἰς τὴν τροφὴν ἀνηλῶσθαι τῆς καρδίας, ἀλλὰ πλέον πολλῷ. δῆλον οὖν, ώς εἰς τὴν ἀριστεράν τι μεταλαμβάνεται κοιλίαν.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ τῶν κατ' ἐκείνην ἀγγείων δυοῖν ὅντων ἔλαττόν ἔστι πολλῷ τὸ ἐκ τοῦ πνεύμονος εἰς αὐτὴν εἰσάγον τὸ πνεῦμα τῆς ἐκφυομένης ἀρτηρίας τῆς μεγάλης, ἀφ' ἣς αἱ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα σύμπασαι πεφύκασιν, ώς ἀν μὴ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ πνεύμονος πνεῦμα μεταλαμβανούσης αὐτῆς, ἀλλὰ κακ τῆς δεξιᾶς κοιλίας αἷμα διὰ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀναστομώσεων.

“Οτι δ’ ἄμεινον ἦν τοῖς τοῦ σώματος μορίοις τοῖς μὲν ὑπὸ καθαροῦ καὶ λεπτοῦ καὶ ἀτμωδούς αἵματος τρέφεσθαι, τοῖς δ’ ὑπὸ παχέος καὶ θολεροῦ καὶ ως οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα τι παρεωραται τῇ 210 φύσει, τῆς || περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας ἔστιν, ὥστ’ οὐ χρὴ νῦν ὑπὲρ τούτων ἔτι λέγειν,

---

<sup>1</sup> This “vein” (really the pulmonary artery) was supposed to be the channel by which the lungs received nutriment from the right heart. cf. p. 121, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> The coronary vein.

<sup>3</sup> Galen's conclusion, of course, is, so far, correct, but he has substituted an imaginary direct communication between the ventricles for the actual and more roundabout pulmonary

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xv

vein which is inserted into the lungs<sup>1</sup> suggests that not all the blood which the vena cava gives to the heart is driven away again from the heart to the lungs. Nor can it be said that any of the blood is expended in the nourishment of the actual body of the heart, since there is another vein<sup>2</sup> which breaks up in it and which does not take its origin nor get its share of blood from the heart itself. And even if a certain amount is so expended, still the vein leading to the lungs is not to such a slight extent smaller than that inserted into the heart as to make it likely that the blood is used as nutriment for the heart: the disparity is much too great for such an explanation. It is, therefore, clear that something is taken over into the left ventricle.<sup>3</sup>

Moreover, of the two vessels connected with it, that which brings pneuma into it from the lungs<sup>4</sup> is much smaller than the great outgrowing artery<sup>5</sup> from which the arteries all over the body originate; this would suggest that it not merely gets pneuma from the lungs, but that it also gets blood from the right ventricle through the anastomoses mentioned.

Now it belongs to the treatise "On the Use of Parts" to show that it was best that some parts of the body should be nourished by pure, thin, and vaporous blood, and others by thick, turbid blood, and that in this matter also Nature has overlooked nothing. Thus it is not desirable that these matters should be further discussed. Having mentioned, circulation, of whose existence he apparently had no idea. His views were eventually corrected by the Renascence anatomists. cf. Introduction, pp. xxii.-xxiii.

<sup>1</sup> He means the left auricle, considered as the termination of the pulmonary "arteries"; cf. p. 314, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> The aorta, its orifice being circular, appears bigger than the slit-like mitral orifice.

ἀλλ' ὑπομνήσαντας, ώς δύο ἐστὸν ὄλκῆς εἴδη, τῶν μὲν εὐρείαις ὁδοῖς ἐν τῷ διαστέλλεσθαι τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ τὴν ἔλξιν ποιουμένων, τῶν δ' οἰκειότητι ποιότητος, ἐφεξῆς λέγειν, ώς τὰ μὲν πρότερα καὶ πόρρωθεν ἔλκειν τι δύναται, τὰ δὲ δεύτερα ἐκ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω μόνων. αὐλίσκουν μὲν γὰρ ὅτι μῆκιστον εἰς ὕδωρ ἔνεστι καθέντα ράδίως ἀνασπᾶν εἰς τὸ στόμα δι' αὐτοῦ τὸ ὑγρόν· οὐ μὴν εἴ γ' ἐπὶ πλέον ἀπαγάγοις τῆς ἡρακλείας λίθου τὸν σίδηρον ἢ τοὺς πυροὺς τοῦ κεφαλίου— καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοιοῦτόν τι πρόσθεν ἐλέγετο παράδειγμα—δύναιτ' ἀν ἔτι γενέσθαι τις ὄλκή.

Σαφέστατα δ' ἀν αὐτὸν μάθοις ἐπὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς κήποις ὄχετῶν· ἐκ τούτων γὰρ εἰς μὲν τὰ παρακείμενα καὶ πλησίον ἅπαντα διαδίδοται τις ἴκμας, εἰς δὲ τὰ πορρωτέρω προσελθεῖν οὐκέτι δύναται, καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἀναγκάζονται πολλοῖς ὄχετοῖς μικροῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγάλου τετμημένοις εἰς ἔκαστον μέρος τοῦ κήπου τὴν ἐπίρρυσιν τοῦ ὕδατος ἐπι-  
211 τεχνᾶσθαι· καὶ τηλικαῦτά γε τὰ || μεταξὺ διαστήματα τούτων τῶν μικρῶν ὄχετῶν ποιοῦσιν, ἥλικα μάλιστα νομίζουσιν ἀρκεῖν εἰς τὸ ἴκανῶς ἀπολαύειν ἔλκοντα τῆς ἐκατέρωθεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιρρεούσης ὑγρότητος. οὕτως οὖν ἔχει κάν τοῖς τῶν ζώων σώμασιν. ὄχετοι πολλοὶ κατὰ πάντα τὰ μέλη διεσπαρμένοι παράγουσιν αὐτοῖς αἷμα καθάπερ ἐν κήποις ὑδρείαν τινά. καὶ τούτων τῶν ὄχετῶν τὰ μεταξὺ διαστήματα θαυμαστῶς ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς διατέτακται πρὸς τὸ μήτ' ἐνδεῶς χορηγεῖσθαι τοῖς μεταξὺ μορίοις ἔλκουσιν εἰς ἑαυτὰ τὸ αἷμα μήτε κατακλύζεσθαι

however, that there are two kinds of attraction, certain bodies exerting attraction along wide channels during diastole (by virtue of the principle by which a vacuum becomes refilled) and others exerting it by virtue of their appropriateness of quality, we must next remark that the former bodies can attract even from a distance, while the latter can only do so from among things which are quite close to them ; the very longest tube let down into water can easily draw up the liquid into the mouth, but if you withdraw iron to a distance from the lodestone or corn from the jar (an instance of this kind has in fact been already given<sup>1</sup>) no further attraction can take place.

This you can observe most clearly in connection with *garden conduits*. For a certain amount of moisture is distributed from these into every part lying close at hand but it cannot reach those lying further off: therefore one has to arrange the flow of water into all parts of the garden by cutting a number of small channels leading from the large one. The intervening spaces between these small channels are made of such a size as will, presumably, best allow them [the spaces] to satisfy their needs by drawing from the liquid which flows to them from every side. So also is it in the bodies of animals. Numerous conduits distributed through the various limbs bring them pure blood, much like the garden water-supply, and, further, the intervals between these conduits have been wonderfully arranged by Nature from the outset so that the intervening parts should be plentifully provided for when absorbing blood, and that they should never

<sup>1</sup> p. 87.

## GALEN

ποτ' αὐτὰ πλήθει περιττῆς ὑγρότητος ἀκαίρως ἐπιρρεούσης.

‘Ο γὰρ δὴ τρόπος τῆς θρέψεως αὐτῶν τοιόσδε τίς ἔστι. τοῦ συνεχοῦν ἑαυτῷ σώματος, οἰόνπερ τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἀγγεῖον Ἐρασίστρατος ὑποτίθεται, τὰ μὲν ἐπιπολῆς μέρη πρῶτα τῆς ὁμιλούσης ἀπολαύει τροφῆς· ἐκ δὲ τούτων αὖ μεταλαμβάνει κατὰ τὸ συνεχές ἔλκοντα τὰ τούτων ἔξῆς, εἰτ’ ἐξ ἐκείνων αὐθις ἔτερα καὶ τοῦτ’ οὐ παύεται γιγνόμενον, ἄχρις ἂν εἰς ἅπαντ’ αὐτοῦ διαδοθῆ τὰ μόρια τῆς τρεφούσης οὐσίας ἡ ποιότης. ὅσα δὲ 212 τῶν μορίων ἐπὶ πλέον || ἀλλοιουμένου δεῖται τοῦ μέλλοντος αὐτὰ θρέψειν χυμοῦ, τούτοις ὥσπερ τι ταμιεῖον ἡ φύσις παρεσκεύασεν ἡτοι κοιλίας ἡ σήραγγας ἡ τι ταῖς σήραγξιν ἀνάλογον. αἱ μὲν γὰρ σάρκες αἱ τε τῶν σπλάγχνων ἀπάντων αἱ τε τῶν μυῶν ἐξ αἵματος αὐτοῦ τρέφονται βραχεῖαν ἀλλοιώσιν δεξαμένου. τὰ δὲ ὄστα παμπόλλης ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ δεῖται τῆς μεταβολῆς, ἵνα τραφῆ, καὶ ἔστιν οἰόνπερ τὸ αἷμα ταῖς σαρξί, τοιοῦτος ὁ μυελὸς τοῖς ὄστοις ἐν μὲν τοῖς μικροῖς τε καὶ ἀκοιλίοις κατὰ τὰς σήραγγας αὐτῶν διεσπαρμένος, ἐν δὲ τοῖς μείζοσί τε καὶ κοιλίας ἔχουσιν ἐν ἐκείναις ἡθροισμένος.

‘Ως γὰρ καὶ διὰ τοῦ πρώτου γράμματος ἐδείκνυτο, τοῖς μὲν ὁμοίαιν ἔχουσι τὴν οὐσίαν εἰς ἄλληλα μεταβάλλειν ἐγχωρεῖ, τοῖς δὲ πάμπολυ διεστῶσιν ἀμήχανον ἀλλήλοις ὁμοιωθῆναι χωρὶς τῶν ἐν μέσῳ μεταβολῶν. τοιοῦτον τι καὶ τοῖς

---

<sup>1</sup> Or we may render it “corpuscle”; Galen practically means the *cell*. cf. p. 153, note 2.

## ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xv

be deluged by a quantity of superfluous fluid running in at unsuitable times.

For the way in which they obtain nourishment is somewhat as follows. In the body<sup>1</sup> which is continuous throughout, such as Erasistratus supposes his *simple vessel* to be, it is the superficial parts which are the first to make use of the nutriment with which they are brought into contact; then the parts coming next draw their share from these by virtue of their contiguity; and again others from these; and this does not stop until the quality of the nutrient substance has been distributed among all parts of the corpuscle in question. And for such parts as need the humour which is destined to nourish them to be altered still further, Nature has provided a kind of storehouse, either in the form of a central cavity or else as separate caverns,<sup>2</sup> or something analogous to caverns. Thus the flesh of the viscera and of the muscles is nourished from the blood directly, this having undergone merely a slight alteration; the bones, however, in order to be nourished, require very great change, and what blood is to flesh marrow is to bone; in the case of the small bones, which do not possess central cavities, this marrow is distributed in their caverns, whereas in the larger bones which do contain central cavities the marrow is all concentrated in these.

For, as was pointed out in the first book,<sup>3</sup> things having a similar substance can easily change into one another, whereas it is impossible for those which are very different to be assimilated to one another without intermediate stages. Such a one in respect to

<sup>2</sup> cf. the term "cavernous tissue."

<sup>3</sup> I. x.

χόνδροις ἔστι τὸ περικεχυμένον μυξῶδες καὶ τοῖς συνδέσμοις καὶ τοῖς ύμέσι καὶ τοῖς νεύροις τὸ παρεσπαρμένον ἐν αὐτοῖς ύγρὸν γλίσχρον· ἔκα-  
213 στον γὰρ || τούτων ἔξ ἰνῶν σύγκειται πολλῶν,  
αἴπερ ὁμοιομερεῖς τ' εἰσὶ καὶ ὅντως αἰσθητὰ  
στοιχεῖα. κατὰ δὲ τὰς μεταξὺ χώρας αὐτῶν ὁ  
οἰκειότατος εἰς θρέψιν παρέσπαρται χυμός, δὲν  
εἶλκυσαν μὲν ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν τοῦ αἷματος, δοσον  
οἱόν τ' ἦν ἐκλεξάμεναι τὸν ἐπιτηδειότατον, ἔξ-  
ομοιοῦσι δὲ κατὰ βραχὺν καὶ μεταβάλλουσιν εἰς  
τὴν ἑαυτῶν οὐσίαν.

"Απαντ' οὖν ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλήλοις ὁμολογεῖ καὶ  
τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν ἀποδεδειγμένοις ἵκανῶς μαρτυρεῖ  
καὶ οὐ χρὴ μηκύνειν ἔτι τὸν λόγον· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν  
εἰρημένων ἔνεστιν ἐκάστῳ τὰ κατὰ μέρος ἀπαντα-  
καθ' ὅντινα γίγνεται τρόπον ἔξευρίσκειν ἐτοίμως,  
ῶσπερ καὶ διὰ τί πολλοῖς κωθωνιζομένοις πάμ-  
πολυ τάχιστα μὲν ἀναδίδοται τὸ ποθέν, οὐρεῖται  
δ' ὀλίγου δεῦν ἀπαν ἐντὸς οὐ πολλοῦ χρόνου. καὶ  
γὰρ κάνταῦθα τῇ τε τῆς ποιότητος οἰκειότητι καὶ  
τῇ τῆς ύγρότητος λεπτότητι καὶ τῇ τῶν ἀγγείων  
τε καὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὰ στομάτων εύρυτητι καὶ τῇ  
τῆς ἐλκτικῆς δυνάμεως εύρωστίᾳ τὸ τάχος συν-  
τελεῖται τῆς ἀναδόσεως, τῶν μὲν πλησίου τῆς  
κοιλίας τεταγμένων μορίων οἰκειότητι ποιότη-  
214 τος || ἑαυτῶν ἔνεκα ἐλκόντων τὸ πόμα, τῶν δ'

cartilage is the myxoid substance which surrounds it, and in respect to ligaments, membranes, and nerves the viscous liquid dispersed inside them ; for each of these consists of numerous fibres, which are homogeneous<sup>1</sup>—in fact, actual *sensible elements*; and in the intervals between these fibres is dispersed the humour most suited for nutrition ; this they have drawn from the blood in the veins, choosing the most appropriate possible, and now they are assimilating it step by step and changing it into their own substance.

All these considerations, then, agree with one another, and bear sufficient witness to the truth of what has been already demonstrated ; there is thus no need to prolong the discussion further. For, from what has been said, anyone can readily discover in what way all the particular [vital activities] come about. For instance, we could in this way ascertain why it is that in the case of many people who are partaking freely of wine, the fluid which they have drunk is rapidly absorbed<sup>2</sup> through the body and almost the whole of it is passed by the kidneys within a very short time. For here, too, the rapidity with which the fluid is absorbed depends on appropriateness of quality, on the thinness of the fluid, on the width of the vessels and their mouths, and on the efficiency of the attractive faculty. The parts situated near the alimentary canal, by virtue of their appropriateness of quality, draw in the imbibed food for their own purposes, then the parts next to them

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *homoeomerous*, i.e. “the same all through,” of similar structure throughout, the *elements* of living matter. cf. p. 20, note 3, and cf. also the “cell” of Erasistratus, p. 153.

<sup>2</sup> “Delivered,” “dispersed”; cf. p. 13, note 5.

## GALEN

έξῆς τούτοις ἔξαρπαζόντων καὶ αὐτῶν εἰς ἑαυτὰ κάπειτα τῶν ἐφεξῆς πάλιν ἐκ τούτων μεταλαμβανόντων, ἄχρις ἀν εἰς τὴν κοίλην ἀφίκηται φλέβα, τούντεῦθεν δὲ ηδη τῶν νεφρῶν τὸ οἰκεῖον ἐπισπωμένων. ὥστ' οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν οἶνον μὲν ὕδατος ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι θâττον οἰκειότητι ποιότητος, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν οἶνον τὸν μὲν λευκὸν καὶ καθαρὸν ἐτοίμως ἀναδίδοσθαι διὰ λεπτότητα, τὸν δὲ αὖ μέλανα καὶ θολερὸν ἵσχεσθαι τε κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ βραδύνειν ὑπὸ πάχους.

Εἴη δὲ ἀν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἔμπροσθεν εἰρημένων οὐ σμικρὰ μαρτύρια. πανταχοῦ γὰρ ὅσον οἰκεῖόν τε καὶ λεπτὸν αἷμα τοῦ μὴ τοιούτου ράσον ἔπεται τοῖς ἔλκουσιν. ἀτμὸν οὖν ἔλκουσαι καὶ πνεῦμα καὶ λεπτὸν αἷμα κατὰ τὰς διαστάσεις αἱ ἀρτηρίαι τῶν κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν καὶ τὰ ἔντερα περιεχομένων χυμῶν ἡ οὐδὲ ὅλως ἡ παντάπασιν ἐπισπῶνται βραχὺ.

### ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xv

in their turn snatch it away, then those next again take it from these, until it reaches the vena cava, whence finally the kidneys attract that part of it which is proper to them. Thus it is in no way surprising that wine is taken up more rapidly than water, owing to its appropriateness of quality, and, further, that the white clear kind of wine is absorbed more rapidly owing to its thinness, while black turbid wine is checked on the way and retarded because of its thickness.

These facts, also, will afford abundant proof of what has already been said about the arteries; everywhere, in fact, such blood as is both specifically appropriate and at the same time thin in consistency answers more readily to their traction than does blood which is not so; this is why the arteries which, in their diastole, absorb vapour, pneuma, and thin blood attract either none at all or very little of the juices contained in the stomach and intestines.



## **INDEX AND GLOSSARY**



# INDEX AND GLOSSARY

(The numbers refer to the pages of the present edition; fuller references will be found in the footnotes.)

- Abortifacient drugs, 285  
Abortion, 231, 285  
Absorption from digestive tract (*v. Anadosis*)  
Acidity of urine, 245, 287  
Activity (function), 13  
Adhesion (prophysis) of nutriment to tissues, 39  
Affinity, 33  
Alimentary canal, 119, 309  
— coats of, 23, 263  
Allopathic treatment, 199  
Alteration (qualitative change), 7, 9, 241, 251  
Anadosis (absorption from digestive tract), 63, 119  
Anaemia, 173  
Anasarca (dropsy), 41  
Anastomoses (communications between arteries and veins), 321  
Anaxagoras, "preformationist" doctrine of, 7  
Ancient writers, value of, 279  
Animal life, 3  
Animals (*v. also History, Natural*)  
— cold-blooded, 181  
— long-necked, 275  
Anorexia (want of appetite), 247  
Aorta (main artery of body), 143, 323  
Appetite, 249  
Aristotle, 9, *et passim* (*v. also Peripatetic School*)  
Arrows, drugs for extracting heads of, 83  
"Art" of Nature (*i.e.* of the living organism), 57  
Arteries, structure of, 283  
— to-and-fro motion in, 313  
— attraction of air by, through skin, 317  
Artery, pulmonary, 121, 323  
Artificer, 133  
Asclepiades, 49, *et passim*  
Asepsis (absence of corruption), 201  
Assimilation, 33  
Asthenia (weakness), 239  
Atomist School in Medicine, 45  
Atrabilary (melancholic) humour 209  
Attraction (*v. also Horror vacui*)  
— physiological, 45  
— magnetic, 73  
Auricle, left, of heart, 315  
— right, of heart, 321  
Authority, value of, 279  
Aversion, 249  
Baking, 259  
Beauty, 47  
Bile, yellow, 63, 123, 177, 191, 289  
— "vitelline," 209  
— black, 203 (*v. also Melancholic humour*)  
Bile-passages, mechanical blocking of, 171  
Billiousness, 193  
Biology, repudiation of, by Atomist School, 45  
Bladder, urinary, 51, 53, *et passim*  
— for bile (*v. Gall-bladder*)  
Blood-production, 17, 169, 183, 191, 201  
Boiling, 259  
Boils, 253  
Bone, structure of, 327  
Bone-marrow, 327  
Borborygmi (gurglings) in stomach, 237  
Bread, constitution of, 11  
Bubo (swollen lymphatic glands in groin), 185  
Butchers (as the primitive anatomists), 51

## INDEX AND GLOSSARY

- Cadaver (corpse), experiment on, 265  
Cartilage (gristle), 329  
Catarrh (mucous discharge), 215  
Cattle (as typifying "herd - morality"), 47  
"Cell," of animal tissues, 153  
— nutrition of, 327  
Change, qualitative (*v. Alteration*)  
Channels (*v. Morphological hypothesis*)  
Cheese-making, 91  
Childbirth, 231, 285  
Children's game, 28  
Chill, 171, 203 (*v. also Cold*)  
Cholagogues (drugs that draw off bile), 65  
Cholera, 299  
Chorion (membrane enclosing unborn child), 229  
Chrysippus, 9  
Chyle (emulsified contents of stomach), (*v. Emulsification*)  
Cirrhosis (induration) of liver, 171  
Coats (tunics), 23  
Cold, action of, on skin, 301  
Cold-in-the-head, 215 (*v. also Chill*)  
Colon (large intestine), 313  
Colour, 5  
Conception, of semen, 233  
Congius (measure), 111  
Contractions (*v. Peristalsis*)  
Cooking, 191  
Corn, attractive power of, 87  
Coryza (mucous discharge: now a "cold"), 215  
Crisis, 75  
Cyathus (measure), 65
- Decay, 7  
Deductive reasoning, 227  
Deglutition (swallowing), 95, 261, 265, 273  
Democritus, 153  
Deposits (in tissues), 297  
Desire (appetite), 249, 269  
Destruction (act of perishing), 7  
Diaphragm (midriff), 255  
Diarrhoea, 247, 299  
Diet, 35, 179, 255  
Digestion, cause of, 243  
— impairment of, 185, 217, 237  
Digestive tract, action on food, 251, *et seq.*  
— structure (*v. Alimentary Canal*)
- Diocles, 51  
Disease, definition of, 197  
Diseases, the four primary, 185  
Disjunctive argument, 167  
Distribution (diadoesis) of nutriment to tissues, 163  
Dropsey, 41, 67, 171  
Drugs, 65, 285, 293 (*v. also Poisons*)  
Dyscrasia (abnormal blending of the four qualities), 189  
Dysentery, 205  
Dyspepsia (*v. Indigestion*)
- Education, 279  
Effect (product, work done), 13  
Emaciation, 161  
Emanations, 77  
Embryo, 229  
Emesis (*v. Vomiting*)  
Empiricist physicians, 69, 193  
Emulsification, 239  
Epicurus, 71  
Epigastric muscles, 237  
Epispastic (attractive), 117  
Erasistratus, 95  
Erasistrateans, 105  
Etna, 259  
Eucrasia (proper blending of the four qualities), 189  
Evaporation, 51, 87, 251  
Experience (*v. Empiricist physicians*)  
Expulsive faculty, 281
- Faculty (potentially), 13  
Faeces (ordure from bowel), 255  
Fermentation, 209  
Fever as a cause of indigestion, 185  
Fibres, 329  
— of blood, 215  
— circular and longitudinal, 263  
— oblique, 281  
Filtration, 91  
Fish, voraciousness of, 269  
Flavour, 5  
Fluxions, 297  
Fœtus (unborn child), 233  
— death of, 287  
Forced-feeding, 247  
Forces, material, 127, 301  
Function (activity), cause of, 197
- Gall-bladder, 147, 245  
— absence of nerves in, 289  
Gardens, irrigation of, 325

## INDEX AND GLOSSARY

- Genesis (development of embryo), 19  
Germanander (drug), 67  
Gestation (carrying of embryo by mother), 229  
Give-and-take between organs, 295  
Gravity (explaining secretion of urine), 107  
Greediness, 271  
Growth, 27, 137  
Gullet, 263  
— use of, by stomach, 271  
— function of its two coats, 273  
Gurgling in stomach, 237
- Habit of body, 69  
Hæmorrhage, intestinal, 297  
Hæmorrhoids (*v. Piles*)  
Heartburn, 287  
Heat, innate, 41, 141, 185  
Hepatic veins (entering vena cava from liver), 147  
Herophilus, 233  
Hippocrates, 9, *et passim*  
Histogenesis (tissue-production), 21  
History, natural, 269  
Homeoemeries (similar parts), 169  
Homeopathy, 199, Note 1  
Honey, 179, 191  
Horror vacui ("Nature's abhorrence of a vacuum"), 99, 155  
Humours, the four, origin of, 167, 183, 209  
Hydragogues (drugs that draw water out of the system), 65
- Ileus volvulus (obstruction of bowels), 299, 303  
Illusions, sensory, 7  
Indigestion, 185, 217, 237  
Inductive reasoning, 227  
Inflammation, 85, 233  
Interaction of any two bodies, 251  
Intestine, small, 255  
Intestines, structure of, 288  
— movements of, 248
- Ionia, 29  
Iron, 71  
Irrigation of gardens and tissues, 325
- Jaundice, 179, 207  
Jejunum (part of small intestine), 299
- Kidneys, 49, 89
- Labour (*v. Childbirth*)  
Larynx (voice-box), involved in swallowing, 265  
Leprosy, 41  
Leucippus, 153  
Lichen (a skin-disease), 253  
Liver, proper tissue of, 311  
— transverse fissure of, 147  
— induration of, 171  
— give-and-take between it and stomach, 291  
Lodestone, 71  
Love, 47  
Lumen (internal cavity of a vessel), 119  
Lycus, 109
- Magnetism, 71  
Marrow of bones, 827  
Mastication, 253  
Material forces, 127  
Medicine, taking of, 269 (*v. also Drugs*)  
Melancholic (*v. Atrabilious*)  
Membranes, foetal, 281, 285 (*v. also Chorion*)  
Menander, 105  
Menodotus, 81  
Menstrual blood, 131, 171  
Metabolism, diseases of, 41  
Midwife, 235  
Miscarriage (*v. Abortion*)  
Molecules (of Asclepiades), 63  
Morphological hypothesis of bile-secretion, 125, 147  
Motion, active and passive, 57  
Mouth, lining of, 261  
— digestion in, 253  
Mucus, 203, 215  
Muscles, voluntary, 263
- "Nature," 2; its "Art," 57  
Nature-lore (*v. Physiology*)  
Nausea, 287  
"Nerve," 151, 272  
Nutriment, 41  
Nutrition, 31, 149
- Obstetric chair, 285  
Obstruction of bowels, 299, 303  
Oesophagus (*v. Gullet*)  
Omentum (an apron-like fold of fat, overlying the intestine), 143, 255, 318

337

Z

GALEN

## INDEX AND GLOSSARY

- Organism, unity of, 61  
Organs, nutrition of, 307  
Os uteri (mouth of womb), 229  
Ovum, human, 135  
Oxidation, 211  
Oxygen (*v. Pneuma*)
- Pain, 287  
Parturition, 231  
Pathology, relation to Physiology, 189, 287  
Peasants, 87  
Perch (*v. Fish*)  
Peripatetic (Aristotelian) School, 139  
Peristalsis (contraction and dilatation), 97, 243, 263  
Peritoneum, 53  
Phidias, 129  
Philistion, 173  
Philotimus, 183  
Phlegm, 67, 201, 215  
Phlegmatic temperament, 193  
" Physiology," 139  
Piles, 171  
Plant-life, 3  
Plato, 173, 203, 215  
Plethora (congestion), 119  
Pneuma (as a vital principle), 153;  
(as oxygen), 187  
Poisons, action of, 251  
Porch, the (Stoic School), 145  
" Pores " (*v. Channels*)  
Portal vein, 147  
Potter's earth, 213  
Practitioner, 197  
Praxagoras, 51  
Praxiteles, 129  
" Preformationist " doctrine of Anaxagoras  
Presentation (prosthesis) of nutriment to tissues, 39  
Prevention and Cure, 169  
Principles, the four fundamental (*v. Qualities*)  
Prodicus, 201  
Prolapse of uterus, 235  
Propulsive faculty, 231  
Prosphysis (*v. Adhesion*)  
Prosthesis (*v. Presentation*)  
Psyche, 3, 153  
Psychology, repudiation of, by Atomist School, 45  
Pulmonary artery, 121  
Pylorus (outlet of stomach), 239
- Pylorus, regurgitation through, 289  
Pyrrhonists (typical sceptics), 197
- Qualities, the four fundamental, 9, 183, 259  
— derivative, 21
- Relativity, 17  
Renal veins, 107  
Respiration, 175, 305  
Retentive faculty, 225  
Rhetoric, 97
- Safflower (drug), 67  
Saliva, action of, 253  
Scammony (drug), 67  
Schools, two contrasted, in Medicine, 45  
Scientist, 197  
Scorpions, 253  
Sculpture, 129  
Sectarianism, 55  
Sects, medical (*v. Schools*)  
Self-control, 47  
Self-education, 279  
Semen, 131, 233  
Sensation, 47  
Septum, perforated, between ventricles of heart, 321  
Serum (watery part of blood or milk), 91, 213  
Shaping (development of organs), 19  
Sieves, 91  
Skin-diseases, 253 (*v. also Leprosy and Lichens*)  
Slaves, 103  
Sociability, 47  
Sophistry, 219, 279  
Sophists, 7  
Soul, 45  
Specific selection of nutriment by tissues (*v. Attraction, physiological*)  
Spermatic ducts, 57  
Spirit (*v. Pneuma*)  
Spleen, function and diseases of, 205  
— "uselessness" of, 143  
— as an emunctory of the liver, 277  
Statues, 129  
Sting-ray (fish), bite of, 85  
Stoics, 15, 145  
Stomach, function of, 197, 237, 251, 255  
— coats of, 261

## INDEX AND GLOSSARY

- Stomach, independent habits of, 271  
— give-and-take between it and liver, 291  
Stone in bladder, 51  
Strength, relative, of different organs, 293  
Substance, 9  
Superfluities (waste-substances), 35, 291  
Swallowing (*v. Deglutition*)  
Symptoms, 13  
Synapse, 147  
  
Teeth, 253  
Temperament (crasis, mixture of elementary principles), 15, 139, 193  
Temperance, 47  
Theophrastus, 139  
Thorns, drugs for extracting, 83  
Tissues, development of, 21  
— their action in producing humours, 179, 195  
Trachea (windpipe), 305  
Transference (passive motion), 7  
Transpiration, 153  
Treatment, principles of, 199  
Tricuspid orifice of heart, 321  
Tubes, rigid, 119, 317, 325  
  
Unity of organism, 61  
Ureters, 23, 51  
Urine, 51  
"Useless" organs (*Erasistratus*), 143  
Uterus (womb), 227  
  
Vacuum, tendency to refill (*v. Horror vacui*)  
Valves of heart, 121, 315  
Vaporisation (*v. Evaporation*)  
Vegetable diet, 35, 179  
Vegetative life, 3  
Veins, structure of, 283  
— "arterial" (*v. Pulmonary artery*)  
— coronary, 323  
— hepatic, 147  
— mesenteric, 293, 305  
— portal, 147  
— renal, 107, 143  
— vena cava (chief vein of body), 91  
— collapse of, 119  
Ventricles of heart, communication between, 321  
Vipers, 85  
Vitalist School in Medicine, 45  
Vivisection, 59, 241, 273  
Voluntary motion, 3  
Volvulus (intestinal obstruction), 299, 303  
Vomiting, 241, 247, 267  
— faecal, 299  
  
Waste-products (*v. Superfluities*)  
Whey (*v. Serum*)  
Wine, 209, 329  
Womb (*v. Uterus*)  
Wounds, 185  
Wrestling, 125  
  
Zeno, of Citium, 9

**PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY  
RICHARD CLAY AND SONS, LIMITED,  
BRUNSWICK STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E.,  
AND BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.**

# THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

---

## VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED.

---

### *Latin Authors.*

- APULEIUS. *The Golden Ass. (Metamorphoses.)* Trans. by W. Adlington (1566). Revised by S. Gaselee. 1 Vol.
- CAESAR: CIVIL WARS. Trans. by A. G. Peskett. 1 Vol.
- CATULLUS. Trans. by F. W. Cornish; TIBULLUS. Trans. by J. P. Postgate; PERVIGILIUM VENERIS. Trans. by J. W. Mackail. 1 Vol.
- CICERO: DE FINIBUS. Trans. by H. Rackham. 1 Vol.
- CICERO: DE OFFICIIS. Trans. by Walter Miller. 1 Vol.
- CICERO: LETTERS TO ATTICUS. Trans. by E. O. Winstedt. Vols I and II.
- CONFessions OF ST. AUGUSTINE. Trans. by W. Watts (1631). 2 Vols.
- HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. Trans. by C. E. Bennett. 1 Vol.
- OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Trans. by Grant Showerman. 1 Vol.
- OVID: METAMORPHOSES. Trans. by F. J. Miller. 2 Vols.
- PETRONIUS. Trans. by M. Heseltine; SENECA: APOCOLYNTOSIS. Trans. by W. H. D. Rouse. 1 Vol.
- PLAUTUS. Trans. by Paul Nixon. Vol. I.
- PLINY: LETTERS. Melmoth's Translation revised by W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols.
- PROPERTIUS. Trans. by H. E. Butler. 1 Vol.
- SUETONIUS. Trans. by J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols.
- TACITUS: DIALOGUS. Trans. by Sir Wm. Peterson; AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Trans. by Maurice Hutton. 1 Vol.
- TERENCE. Trans. by John Sargeaunt. 2 Vols.

## Greek Authors.

- APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. Trans. by R. C. Seaton. 1 Vol.
- THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Trans. by Kirsopp Lake. 2 Vols.
- APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Trans. by Horace White. 4 Vols.
- DAPHNIS AND CHLOE. Thornley's Translation revised by J. M. Edmonds; PARTHENIUS. Trans. by S. Gaselee. 1 Vol.
- DIO CASSIUS: ROMAN HISTORY. Trans. by E. Cary. Vols. I, II, III, IV, and V.
- EURIPIDES. Trans. by A. S. Way. 4 Vols.
- THE GREEK ANTHOLOGY. Trans. by W. R. Paton. Vols. I, II, and III.
- THE GREEK BUCOLIC POETS (THEOCRITUS, BION, MOSCHUS). Trans. by J. M. Edmonds. 1 Vol.
- HESIOD AND THE HOMERIC HYMNS. Trans. by H. G. Evelyn White. 1 Vol.
- JULIAN. Trans. by Wilmer Cave Wright. Vols. I and II.
- LUCIAN. Trans. by A. M. Harmon. Vols. I and II.
- MARCUS AURELIUS. Trans. by C. R. Haines. 1 Vol.
- PHILOSTRATUS: THE LIFE OF APOLLONIUS OF TYANA. Trans. by F. C. Conybeare. 2 Vols.
- PINDAR. Trans. by Sir J. E. Sandys. 1 Vol.
- PLATO: EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, PHAEDO, PHAEDRUS. Trans. by H. N. Fowler. 1 Vol.
- PLUTARCH: THE PARALLEL LIVES. Trans. by B. Perrin. Vols. I, II, III, and IV.
- PROCOPIUS. Trans. by H. B. Dewing. Vols. I and II.
- QUINTUS SMYRNAEUS. Trans. by A. S. Way. 1 Vol.
- SOPHOCLES. Trans. by F. Storr. 2 Vols.
- ST. JOHN DAMASCENE: BARLAAM AND IOASAPH. Trans. by the Rev. G. R. Woodward and Harold Mattingly. 1 Vol.
- XENOPHON: CYROPAEDIA. Trans. by Walter Miller. 2 Vols.

---

## IN PREPARATION.

---

### *Greek Authors.*

- AESCHINES, C. D. Adams, of Dartmouth College.  
AESCHYLUS, H. W. Smyth, of Harvard University.  
ARISTOPHANES, J. W. White, of Harvard University.  
ARISTOTLE, THE NICOMACHEAN ETHICS, Michael Heseltine, of New College, Oxford.  
ARISTOTLE, THE POLITICS AND ATHENIAN CONSTITUTION, Edward Capps, of Princeton University.  
ARRIAN, W. K. Prentice, of Princeton University.  
ATHENAEUS, C. B. Gulick, of Harvard University.  
CALLIMACHUS, A. W. Mair, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh; ARATUS, G. R. Mair, of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.  
CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA, Rev. G. W. Butterworth, of the University of Leeds.  
DIO CHRYSOSTOM, W. E. Waters, New York University.  
EUSEBIUS, Kiropp Lake, of Harvard University.  
GREEK LYRICS, J. M. Edmonds, of Jesus College, Cambridge.  
HOMER, ILIAD, W. F. Harris, of Harvard University.  
HOMER, ODYSSEY, A. T. Murray, of Stanford University.  
IAMBIC AND ELEGiac POETS, E. D. Perry, of Columbia University.  
ISAEUS, R. J. Bonner, of the University of Chicago.  
ISOCRATES, G. Norlin, of the University of Colorado.  
MANETHO, S. de Ricci.  
MENANDER, F. G. Allinson, of Brown University.  
PAUSANIAS, W. H. S. Jones, of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge.  
PHILOSTRATUS, IMAGINES, Arthur Fairbanks, Boston Museum of Fine Arts.  
PLATO, LYSIS AND GORGIAS, W. R. Lamb, of Trinity College, Cambridge.  
PLATO, REPUBLIC, Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.  
PLUTARCH, MORALIA, F. C. Babbitt, of Trinity College, Hartford.  
POLYBIUS, W. R. Paton.  
THUCYDIDES, C. F. Smith, of the University of Wisconsin.  
XENOPHON, ANABASIS AND HELLENICA, C. W. Brownson, of the College of the City of New York.

*Latin Authors.*

- AMMIANUS**, C. U. Clark, of Yale University.  
**AULUS GELLIUS**, C. B. Platner, of Western Reserve University.  
**AUSONIUS**, H. G. Evelyn White, of Wadham College, Oxford.  
**CICERO, AD FAMILIARES**, E. O. Winstedt, of Magdalen College, Oxford.  
**CICERO, DE ORATORE, ORATOR, BRUTUS**, Charles Stuttaford.  
**FRONTINUS, DE AQUIS**, C. Herschel, of New York.  
**FRONTO**, C. R. Haines, of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge.  
**HORACE, EPISTLES AND SATIRES**, W. G. Hale, of the University of Chicago, and G. L. Hendrickson, of Yale University.  
**JUVENAL AND PERSIUS**, G. G. Ramsay, of Trinity College, Oxford, and late of Glasgow University.  
**LIVY**, B. O. Foster, of Stanford University.  
**LUCAN**, S. Reinach, Member of the Institute of France.  
**OVID, TRISTIA AND EX PONTO**, A. L. Wheeler, of Bryn Mawr College.  
**SALLUST**, J. C. Rolfe, of the University of Pennsylvania.  
**SENECA, EPISTULAE MORALES**, R. M. Gummere, of Haverford College.  
**SENECA, MORAL ESSAYS**, J. W. Basore, of Princeton University.  
**TACITUS, ANNALS**, John Jackson, of Queen's College, Oxford.  
**VALERIUS FLACCUS**, A. F. Scholfield, of King's College, Cambridge.  
**VELEIUS PATERCULUS**, F. W. Shipley, of Washington University.  
**VITRUVIUS**, F. W. Kelsey, of the University of Michigan.

*DESCRIPTIVE PROSPECTUS ON APPLICATION.*

---

**London - - - WILLIAM HEINEMANN.**  
**New York - - - G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS.**





ed c  
N.

REED

27 1953



3 6105 005 441 741

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES  
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY  
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004  
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

JUN 3 2000  
JUN 3 2000  
2002

